

# المحتويات

يشتمل كتيب ليلة الامتحان  
(للفصل الثالث الثانوي) علي:

مراجعة مختصرة وسريعة مقسمة علي ثمانية أجزاء تضمن تغطية أسئلة امتحان الثانوية العامة:

## 1. Part (Question) One: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- \* مراجعة وحدات المنهج الثمانية عشر ووحدات المراجعة الستة. (15 درجة)
- \* مراجعة أهم الكلمات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها وتمارين عليها.
- \* مراجعة أهم تعبيرات ومصطلحات المنهج وتمارين عليها.
- \* مراجعة أهم النقاط اللغوية والمتلازمات اللفظية بالمنهج وتمارين عليها.
- \* مراجعة أهم نقاط القواعد اللغوية بالمنهج وتمارين عليها.

## 2. Part (Question) Two: Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- \* مراجعة سريعة لطريقة التعامل مع سؤال القطعة. \* تمارين هامة علي سؤال القطعة. (10 درجات)

## 3. Part (Question) Three: (The Novel) (The Prisoner of Zenda)

A: Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

B: Answer TWO (2) of the following Questions:

- \* مراجعة سريعة لفصول القصة الثمانية تشمل:
- \* قائمة بأكثر كلمات القصة أهمية في صفحة واحدة.
- \* أهم أسئلة القصة (تفكير نقدي) بكتاب التدريبات (Workbook) وموقع لونجمان وامتحانات الثانوية العامة السابقة بإجاباتها.
- \* أهم الأسئلة (تفكير نقدي) الخاصة بالشخصيات والمواقف والأحداث الهامة بالقصة بإجاباتها النموذجية المختصرة المترجمة.
- \* أسئلة على القصة (اختيار من متعدد) من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات ودليل التقويم وموقع لونجمان وامتحانات الثانوية

## 4. Part (Question) Four: Finish the following dialogue:

- \* مراجعة سريعة لطريقة حل سؤال المحادثة.
- \* تمارين هامة علي سؤال المحادثة. (6 درجات)

## 5. Part (Question) Five: Write a paragraph (an e-mail):

- \* مراجعة سريعة لطريقة كتابة موضوع الانشاء (البريد الالكتروني).
- \* موضوعات مكتوبة مسابقة للأحداث الجارية. (7 درجات)

## 6. Part (Question) Six: Translation:

- \* مراجعة سريعة لطريقة حل سؤال الترجمة.
- \* قطع ترجمة محلولة مسابقة للأحداث الجارية. (5 درجات)

## 7. Al-Azhar Al-Sharif:

- \* ملزمة خاصة بالأزهر الشريف تشمل (مراجعة المختارات الإسلامية وتمارين عليها / امتحانات للأزهر للقسمين العلمي والأدبي).

## 8. General Exams (10 Exams):

- \* عشرة امتحانات قوية تضمن تغطية أهم النقاط وتدرب الطالب على التعامل الممتاز مع امتحان الثانوية العامة



## السؤال الأول

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(15 Marks)

\* هذا السؤال يتكون من ثلاثون جملة يتبع كل منها أربعة اختيارات يقوم الطالب باختيار الإجابة الصحيحة من بينها

\* تختبر خمسة عشر (15) جملة معرفة الطالب بكلمات المنهج وتعبيراته وحروف (Vocabulary).

\* تختبر خمسة عشر (15) جملة معرفة الطالب بالقواعد اللغوية (Grammar).

\* قم بمراجعة النقاط التالية حتى تستطيع التعامل بشكل جيد مع هذا السؤال

Main words and their derivatives  
الكلمات الرئيسية ومشتقاتها بالمنهج كله

## Units (1-6)/ Reviews (A/B)

average	متوسط	association	جمعية - اتحاد - رابطة	available	متاح - متوافر
confuse	يربك - يحير	cultural	ثقافى	unavailable	غير متوافر - مشغول
confused	مرتبك - متحير	ministry	وزارة	availability	توافر - اتاحة
confusion	ارتباك - تشويش	political science	علوم سياسية	button	زر
insist	يصر - يصمم	lecture	يحاضر - محاضرة	compare	يقارن
insistent	مصمم - مصر	importance	أهمية	comparable to	يمكن مقارنته بـ
district	حي - منطقة	intelligence	الذكاء	enthusiastic about	متحمس لـ
poetry	الشعر	confidence	الثقة	an enthusiast	أحد المتحمسين
poems	قصائد	difference	اختلاف	enthusiasm	الحماس - التحمس
poet	شاعر	influence	يؤثر - تأثير	gadget	آلة - أداة
routine	الروتين اليومي	influential	مؤثر	paperback	كتاب من الورق العادى
old-fashioned	ليس على الموضة	discipline	نظام - انضباط	reduce	يقلل
fashionable	مساير للموضة	layer	طبقة	reduction	تقليل
publish	ينشر	responsible	مسئول	replace	يستبدل - يحل محل
publisher	ناشر	semicircle	نصف دائرة	replacement	بديل
secretary	سكرتير	serious	جاد	reduce	يقلل
secretarial	خاص بالسكرتارية	silence	يسكت - صمت	download (from)	يحمل من
attach	يرفق	spoil	يفسد	upload (onto)	يرفع على الانترنت
attachment	مرفق	strict	صارم	online	على الإنترنت (صفة - ظرف)
believer	مؤمن	fatherly	حنون - عطوف - أبوى	offline	غير متصل بالانترنت
belief	إيمان - اعتقاد	motherly	حنون - أموى	bleach	يبيض
collection	مجموعة	argue for	يناصر - يؤيد	bleached	مبيض - أبيض اللون
custom	عادة	argument	جدال - نقاش	encyclopedia	موسوعة
disabled	معاق	press	يضغط	mix	يخلط
disability	إعاقة	pressure	الضغط	mixture	خليط
law	القانون	honour	شرف - يكرم شخص ما	remove	يزيل
lawyer	محامى	prove	يثبت	removal	إزالة
pioneer	رائد	goods	بضائع	roll	يلف - يتدحرج
style	أسلوب (كتابية)	especially (particularly)	خاصة	roller	بكرة - اسطوانة
appreciate	يقدر	access	يصل الى معلومات	trade	يتاجر - تجارة



appreciative	مقدر - ممتن	relevant	ذو صلة	trader	تاجر
appreciatively	بتقدير - بامتنان	update	يحدث - يحدد	soak	ينقع
search engine	محرك البحث	respect	يحترم - احترام	inaccurate	غير دقيق
award	يمنح جائزة رسمية	respected	محترم (يحترمه الناس)	recycle	يعيد تصنيع
govern (rule)	يحكم	respectable	جدير بالاحترام	recycling	إعادة التصنيع
government	حكومة	respectful	محترم (يحترم الناس)	recycled paper	ورق معاد تصنيعه
positive	إيجابي	role	دور	direct	يدير - يوجه - يخرج
positively	بإيجابية	career	حياة مهنية	director	مخرج
establish	يرفع شأن - يؤسس - ينشئ	in charge of	مسئول عن	impress	يبهر
aching	مؤلم - ألم	faint	يفقد الوعي	impression	انطباع - انطباع
moving	محرك للمشاعر	fainting	فقدان الوعي	impressive	مبهر
burdens	أعباء	in vain	بلا جدوى	license	يعطى ترخيص
task	مهمة	ease	يخفف - يريح	licence	رخصة
suffer	يعانى	alive	على قيد الحياة	nurse (v)	يقوم بالتمريض
stress	ضغط - توتر	challenge	يتحدى - تحدى	nursing	التمريض
stressful	مجهد للأعصاب	challenging	صعب	solo	فردى - بمفرده
regular	منتظم	awake	يقظ (صفة)	soloist	شخص يؤدي منفرداً
regularly	بانتظام	asleep	نائم (صفة)	suitable	مناسب - ملائم
separate	يفصل - منفصل	ashore	على الشاطئ (ظرف)	suitability	مناسبة - ملائمة
balance	يوازن بين - توازن	along	بطول - الى الامام (ظرف)	client	عميل
sociable	اجتماعى (شخص)	ahead	الى الامام (ظرف)	deadline	الموعد النهائي
unsociable	غير اجتماعى (شخص)	account	حساب	freelance	حر - مستقل
lack	ينقصه - نقص	limit	يحدد - حد	organisation	منظمة
remind	يذكر	occupation	مهنة	charitable	خيري
male / female	ذكر / أنثى	envy	يحسد - حسد	colleague	زميل عمل أو دراسة
loyal	وفى - مخلص	value	قيمة - يقدر	voluntary	تطوعى

Units (7-12) / Reviews (C/D)

weightless	عديم الوزن	spin (spun)	يدور حول نفسه	mission	مهمة - بعثة
weightlessness	انعدام الوزن	orbit (orbited)	يدور حول غيره	side effects	آثار جانبية
tourism	السياحة	representative	مندوب - ممثل	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية
giant	عملاق	gravity	الجاذبية	distance	مسافة
leak	تسريب - يتسرب	zero-gravity	انعدام الجاذبية	stand still	يقف ثابتاً
horrible	فظيع	launch	يطلق - انطلاق	space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء
treatment	علاج - معاملة	astronaut	راند فضاء	hopeful	متفائل - واعد
physics	الفيزياء	threaten	يهدد	hopeless	يائس
physicist	عالم فيزياء	threat	تهديد	painful	مؤلم
be about to	يوشك أن	threatened	واقع تحت تهديد	painless	غير مؤلم
pressure	الضغط	threatening	مُهدد	helpful	متعاون
pressurised	مضغوط	radar	جهاز الرادار	helpless	عاجز
technical	فنى (صفة للشيء)	interrupt	يقاطع	tasteful	حسن الذوق
technician	فنى (شخص)	interruption	مقاطعة	tasteless	بلا مذاق
found	يؤسس	horrify	يرعب - يخيف	powerful	قوى
foundation	مؤسسة	horrified	خائف - مرعوب	powerless	عاجز (غير قوى)
emergency	طوارئ	controls	أجهزة تحكم	useful	مفيد



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

emergent	طارئ - عاجل	consult	يستشير	useless	بلا فائدة
odyssey	ملحمة - رحلة طويلة	consultant	مستشار	fearful	مخيف
science fiction	خيال علمي	pros and cons	مميزات وعيوب	fearless	غير خائف
downside	عيب - جانب سلبي	space invasion	غزو الفضاء	homeless	مشرّد - بلا مأوى
signal	إشارة - يعطى إشارة	remove	يزيل	release	يطلق في الجو - اطلاق
link	رابط - علاقة - صلة	removal	إزالة	invisible	غير مرئي
mast	عمود لشبكة المحمول	process	عملية - يعالج	invisibility	خفاء
cancer	السرطان	processed	معالج تصنيعيا	gain	يكتسب
cause	سبب - يسبب	install	يركب - يوصل (جهاز)	illness	مرض
cure	علاج - يعالج	installation	تركيب - توصيل	diabetes	مرض السكر
stick	عصا	global warming	احتباس حرارى	diabetic	مريض بالسكر
disprove	يدحض	unintelligent	غير ذكى	rainforests	غابات مطيرة
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	uninfected	غير مصاب بالعدوى	smart car	السيارة الذكية
application	طلب الوظيفة	uninjured	غير مجروح	speed limit	حد السرعة
applicant	متقدم للوظيفة	impolite	غير مهذب	conscience	الضمير
candidate	مرشح (لوظيفة)	impatient	غير صبور	conscientious	ذو ضمير - مجتهد
appointment	موعد	inaccurate	غير دقيق	conscientiously	بضمير - بجد
choir	كورال (مجموعة مطربين)	informal	غير رسمى	daycare centre	مركز رعاية نهاري
CV/Curriculum Vitae	سيرة ذاتية	intolerant	غير متسامح	established	ذو مكانة
fluent	طليق - فصيح	grade	درجة - تقدير	establish	يؤسس - يرسخ
fluently	بطلاقة - بفصاحة	graded	متدرج	establishment	تأسيس - مؤسسة
fluency	الطلاقة - الفصاحة	neighbour	جار	pharmacy	صيدلية
sales	مبيعات	neighbourly	ودود	pharmacist	صيدلى
social	اجتماعى (شيء)	neighbourhood	الجيرة - الحى	marital status	الحالة الاجتماعية
staff	هينة عاملين	degree	شهادة - درجة علمية	well-organized	منظم في مواعيده
graduate	يتخرج	qualified in	مؤهل فى	interviewer	مدير الحوار
achieve	يحقق - ينجز	specialize in	يتخصص فى	trainee	متدرب
assist	يساعد	will	وصية - يوصى بـ	toil	يكدح - يمشى بصعوبة
ambassador	سفير	throughout	عبر - خلال	toiler	كادح - سائر بصعوبة
fellow	رجل - رفيق	grain	حبة قمح أو ذرة	president	رئيس دولة
Mandarin	اللغة الصينية	pour down	ينزل - يهبط (المطر)	downpour	مطر غزير
blow - blew - blown	تهب	non-stop	بلا توقف	gale	رياح قوية - اعصار
rise - rose - risen	تشرق	hostel	فندق - نزل شباب	aged	في عمر - في سن
fall - fell - fallen	يسقط	writing	كتابة	worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام
retrain	يعيد تدريب	redundant	مفصول من العمل	worthless	لا قيمة له
qualifications	مؤهلات	Open university	الجامعة المفتوحة	mature	ناضج - فوق 25 سنة
promote	يرقى	enroll in (on)	يسجل اسمه فى	maturity	النضج
promotion	ترقية	enrollment	تسجيل - ادراج	department	قسم
create	يخلق - يبدع	receptionist	موظف استقبال	rewarding	مجزى
creative	خلاق - مبدع	stimulated	متحمس	ideal	مثالى - نموذجى
creativity	الابداع	skills	مهارات	idealist	شخص مثالى
employer	صاحب عمل	skilful	ماهر	distance learning	التعلم عن بعد
employee	موظف	provide	يزود - يوفر	lifelong learning	التعلم مدى الحياة
employable	أهل للوظيفة	provider	مزود - موفر	sensible idea	فكرة حكيمة



employment	التوظيف	provision	تزويد - توفير	make up	يؤلف - يخترع
unemployment	البطالة	standard	مستوى	make up for	يعوض
unemployed	عاطل (صفة)	mass production	انتاج شامل	mechanised	يستخدم الماكينات
employed	موظف (صفة)	extraordinary	غير عادي	transform	يحول - يغير

Units (13-18)/ Reviews (E/F)

thanks to	بفضل - بسبب	community	مجتمع	depend on	يعتمد على
distinctive	مميز	entertainment	تسلية	evolve	يتطور
distinction	فرق - تمييز	fireworks	اللعاب نارية	evolution	تطور
folk	شعبي	harvest	حصاد - يحصد	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
landmarks	معالم أثرية	procession	موكب	region	إقليم - منطقة
sculpture	تمثال منحوت	responsible	مسئول	regional	إقليمي
celebrate	يحتفل	irresponsible	مستهتر	vary	يتنوع
celebration	احتفال	responsibility	المسئولية	various	عديد - متنوع
celebrated	صفة بمعنى مشهور	irresponsibility	الاستهتار	variety	تشكيلة - مجموعة
celebrity	الشهرة	festival	مهرجان	concerts	حفلات موسيقية
a celebrity	أحد المشاهير	get together	يتقابل	historical events	أحداث تاريخية
celebrities	المشاهير	oral tradition	تقليد شفهي	historical novels	روايات تاريخية
publicize	يروج لـ	make sure	يتأكد	influenced by	متأثر بـ
publicity	الشهرة - الذئوع	write down	يدون	get through	ينجز عمل
music therapy	العلاج بالموسيقى	transport	ينقل - نقل	clear ... up	يفسر غموض
concentrate	يركز	concern	اهتمام	evil	الشر
concentration	تركيز	defeat	يهزم / هزيمة	lecture	محاضرة
gap	فجوة	defeated	مهزوم	lecturer	محاضر
manage	يتمكن - ينجح	undefeated	لا يمكن هزيمته	non-fiction	واقعي
rule	يحكم - قاعدة	defeatist	انهزامي	fiction	الخيال
ruler	حاكم	mystery	غموض	fictional	خيالي
detective	مخبر سرى - محقق	mysterious	غامض	non-fictional	غير خيالي
overlook	يطل على	appropriate	ملائم - مناسب	wrinkles	تجاعيد
essential	اساسي - جوهري	tunnel	نفق - يحفر نفق	solar panel	لوح شمسي
power station	محطة طاقة (كهرباء)	tunneling	حفر الأنفاق	ray / beam	شعاع
power cut	انقطاع طاقة (كهرباء)	position	يضع في مكان - موقع	mass	كتلة
invest	يستثمر	illuminate	ينير - يضيء	massive	ضخم
investment	استثمار	emission	انبعاث في الجو	drill	يحف - ينقب
investor	مستثمر	base	أساس - قاعدة	carve into	ينحت في
commuter	مسافر للعمل	cliff	منحدر صخري	carve out of	ينحت من
commute	يسافر للعمل	diameter	قطر دائرة	consider	يعتبر
engineer	يهندس - يصمم	massiveness	الضخامة	consideration	اعتبار
engineering	هندسة - هندسي	drilling machine	آلة حفر	illumination	انارة - اضاءة
the rising sun	الشمس الساطعة	attached/ connected to	موصول بـ	combination	خليط - مزيج
raise (lift)	يرفع	keep ... out	يُبعد - يصد	maintain	يصون - يحفظ
appropriate	مناسب - ملائم	cooperation	التعاون	copy	نسخة - ينسخ
economic	اقتصادي	permit	تصريح	sign	يوقع (يقوم بالإمضاء)
widen	يوسع	valuable	قيم	treaty	معاهدة
width	اتساع	turpentine	مزيل دهان	tube	أنبوب - قناة
sap	عصارة داخل الشجر	rubber	المطاط	bark	لحاء الشجرة



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

calculate	يحسب	harden	يتصلب	trunk	جذع الشجرة
measure	يقيس	extract	يستخرج	branches	أفرع الشجرة
count	يعد - يحصى	cardboard	ورق مقوى	roots	جذور الشجرة
cut down	يقطع شجرة	seeds	البذور	ring	حلقة
badly damaged	مدمر بشدة	lengthen	يطول	soft cells	خلايا طرية
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	length	الطول	deepen	يعمق
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	including	شاملة - متضمنة	sports equipment	معدات رياضية
connected with	على صلة بـ	set rules	يضع القواعد	everyday use	الاستخدام اليومي
make shelter	يوفر مأوى	photosynthesis	البناء الضوئى	pearl	لؤلؤة
scorpion	عقرب	fire	يطلق النار	cave	كهف
greed	الطمع - الجشع	trickery	الخداع	merchant	تاجر
greedy	طماع	trick	يخدع	merchandise	بضائع
diver	غواص	throw ... into	يرمى فى	a private person	شخص انطوائى
persuasive	مقنع	throw away	يتخلص من	sting	يلدغ - لدغة
surroundings	البيئة	get rid of	يتخلص من	stinging	قاسى - لاذع
ancestors	الأجداد	correspond	يراسل	stingy	بخيل
ancestral	خاص بالسلف	correspondence	المراسلة	bite - bit - bitten	يعض
depress	يضعف الاقتصاد	correspondent	مراسل صحفى	violent	عنيف
depressed	راكد للاقتصاد	force	يجبر	violence	العنف
depression	ركود اقتصادى	forceful	قوى - فعال	absorb/soak up/take in	يمتص
depressive	مسبب للاكتئاب	directly	مباشرة	absorbent	قادر على الامتصاص
depressed	مكتئب	solar eclipse	كسوف الشمس	beneath	أسفل
heat	حرارة - يسخن	lunar eclipse	خسوف القمر	harm	يضر - ضرر
lightning	البرق	northern	شمالى	harmful	ضار
thunder	الرعد	occur	يحدث	harmless	بلا ضرر
port	ميناء	occurrence	حدث - حدوث	rainfall	سقوط المطر
phenomenon	ظاهرة	volcano	بركان	sunburn	حرق الشمس
phenomena	ظواهر	volcanic	بركانى	sunburned	مصاب بحرق الشمس
phenomenal	ظاهر - واضح	floods	فيضانات	ultraviolet rays	أشعة فوق بنفسجية
phenomenally	بشكل ظاهر	tides	المد والجزر	erupt	يثور للبركان
storm chasers	متتبعى العواصف	human beings	البشر	eruption	ثورة البركان
chase a storm	يتتبع عاصفة	high waves	أمواج مرتفعة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
extreme weather	طقس قاسى	violent storms	عواصف عنيفة	digest	يهضم
fertile	خصب	heavy rain	مطر غزير	end up	ينتهى به الحال
straw	أنبوب للشرب	strong winds	رياح قوية	centigrade	منوية
emit	يطلق - يبعث	biodegrade	يتحلل	drought	الجفاف

### Main Prepositions of the Syllabus حروف الجر الرئيسية فى المنهج

at midday	فى منتصف النهار	expert on/ in/ at	خبير فى	type onto	يكتب على آلة
at midnight	فى منتصف الليل	in a way/ in a style	بطريقة	graduate as	وظيفة + يتخرج كـ
be based on	معتمد على	natural with	متعامل بطبيعته مع	graduate in	مجال + يتخرج فى



take part <b>in</b>	يشارك في	responsible <b>for</b>	مسئول عن	graduate <b>from</b>	يتخرج من مكان
decide <b>on</b>	يختار - يحدد	consist <b>of</b>	يتكون من	a graduate <b>of</b>	خريج من مكان
replace ... <b>with</b> ....	يستبدل بـ	good <b>for</b>	مفيد لـ	associated <b>with</b>	مرتبط بـ
knock <b>down</b>	يهدم	keep <b>up with</b>	يساير - يجارى	set <b>up</b>	يقيم - ينشئ
soak <b>in</b>	ينقع في	made <b>of</b>	مصنوع من شيء لم يتغير	argue <b>with</b>	يتجادل مع شخص
a degree <b>in</b>	شهادة في	made <b>from</b>	مصنوع من شيء قد تغير	appreciative <b>of</b>	مقدر لـ
a course <b>in</b>	دورة دراسية في	unsuitable <b>for</b>	غير مناسب لـ	cure <b>for</b>	علاج لـ
live <b>on</b>	يتغذى على	rhyme <b>with</b>	يتناغم مع	cure ... <b>of</b>	يعالج ... من
remind ... <b>of</b>	يذكر ... بـ	carry <b>on</b>	يستمر	cause <b>of</b> / reason <b>for</b>	سبب لـ
ask <b>for</b>	يطلب	focus <b>on</b>	يركز على	<b>in</b> detail	بالتفصيل
<b>in</b> common	مشترك	according <b>to</b>	طبقاً لـ	<b>in</b> control <b>of</b>	متحكم في
an award <b>for</b>	جائزة في	look <b>like</b>	يشبه	break <b>down</b>	يتعطل
speak <b>for</b>	يتحدث نيابة عن	look <b>up</b>	يبحث في قاموس	<b>for</b> sure	بالتأكيد
land <b>on</b>	يهبط فوق	go <b>around</b>	يدور حول	sure <b>of</b>	متأكد من
name <b>after</b>	يسمى باسم	come <b>round</b>	يزور	reach <b>for</b>	الوصول الى
deal <b>with</b>	يتعامل مع	fast <b>forward</b>	للأمام سريعاً	a problem <b>with</b>	مشكلة في
signal <b>to</b>	يعطي إشارة لـ	result <b>in</b>	يتسبب في	benefit <b>from</b>	يستفيد من
fall <b>to</b> (on)	يسقط على	result <b>from</b>	ينتج عن	remove <b>from</b>	يزيل من
fall <b>off</b>	يسقط من فوق	a waste <b>of</b>	مضيعة لـ	release <b>into</b>	يطلق في
fall <b>over</b>	يسقط بفعل الرياح	ways <b>of</b>	طرق لـ	related <b>to</b>	متعلق بـ
harmful <b>to</b>	ضار بـ	get <b>on with</b>	ينسجم مع	fluent <b>in</b>	طلائق (فصيح) في
mix ... <b>with</b>	يخلط بـ	translate <b>into</b>	يترجم الى	surrounded <b>by</b>	محاط بـ
grow <b>up</b>	يكبر	approve <b>of</b>	يوافق على	work <b>out</b>	يستنتج - يحسب
bring <b>up</b>	يربى	open <b>to</b>	متاح لـ	block <b>off</b>	يحجب جزء
bring <b>down</b>	يخفض	access <b>to</b>	معرفة بـ	block <b>out</b>	يحجب الكل
go <b>along with</b>	يتفق مع	stand <b>for</b>	يرمز الى	pay <b>off</b>	يثمر - يحقق عائد
special <b>about</b>	خاص بشأن	made <b>out of</b>	مصنوع من	pay <b>for</b>	يدفع ثمن
connected <b>with</b>	مرتبط بـ	keep .. <b>away from</b> ..	يُبعد .. عن	opened <b>out</b>	مفرد - منتشر
<b>on</b> average	في المتوسط	intrude <b>into</b>	يتدخل في	cry <b>out</b>	يصرخ - يصيح
an average <b>of</b>	بمعدل	trade (deal) <b>in</b>	يتاجر في	warn <b>about</b>	يحذر من
add <b>to</b>	يضيف الى	trade <b>with</b>	يتاجر مع	watch <b>out</b>	انتبه

## Main Expressions and Idioms of the Syllabus

### التعبيرات والمصطلحات الرئيسية في المنهج

give (cause) a headache / feel (have) a headache	يسبب الصداع / يشعر بالصداع
a ten-minute break / a two-hour space walk	راحة لمدة عشر دقائق / رحلة مشى في الفضاء لمدة ساعتين
give up his bed	يتنازل عن سريره
was made (turned) into a film	تم تحويلها إلى فيلم
was a strong believer in = (had a strong belief in)	كان مؤمناً بقوة بـ
as far as I'm concerned	بِقَـوَر ما أنا مهتم
make a good teacher (politician / policeman)	يؤدي وظيفة مدرس (سياسي - رجل شرطة) جيداً
is still thought of as / is still appreciated	ما زال يُعتَبر كـ / ما زال يحصل على التقدير
a teacher is like the layers of the earth	المعلم مثل طبقات الأرض



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

whatever level you reach	أيا كان المستوى الذي تصل إليه
I give myself goals	أحدد لنفسى أهداف
have the honour of	ينال الشرف
go on a tour	يقوم بجولة
check the availability of tickets	يتأكد من توافر التذاكر
invent paper / make paper	يخترع الورق / يصنع الورق
take up a lot of space	يشغل مساحة كبيرة (حيز كبير)
behind my success	السبب في نجاحى
have a positive effect on	له تأثير إيجابي على
play (do) (have) a role in	يلعب / يمتلك دور في
improve women's position in society	يحسن وضع المرأة في المجتمع
get (have) a good education = be well-educated	يحصل على تعليم جيد
argued for a more positive role for women	طالبت بدور أكثر إيجابية للمرأة
take up much of her personal life	شغل معظم حياتها الشخصية
have (do) a degree in	يحصل على شهادة في
do (take) a course in	يحصل على دورة تدريبية في
mark an important event	يميز حدث تاريخي هام
take a risk	يقوم بمخاطرة
lose her life	تفقد حياتها
over the moon	في قمة السعادة
the day is over	انتهى اليوم
lighten the burdens of another	يخفف من حمل الآخر
take turns	يتبادلون الأدوار
keep a promise	يحفظ وعد
follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
miss a record	يفشل في تحطيم الرقم القياسي
break for lunch	استراحة لتناول الغداء
meet the deadlines	تلتزم (تفي) بالمواعيد النهائية
take on a project	يتولى مشروع
get the balance right between	يحقق التوازن الصحيح بين (يعدل بين)
available for work	جاهز (على استعداد) للعمل / غير مشغول (فاضي) وليس هناك ما يشغله عن العمل
at work	في مكان (مقر) عمله يقوم ببعض الأعمال
as much as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع
think seriously about	يفكر بجدية في
have responsibility for	يصبح مسئولاً عن
build a space station	يبني محطة فضائية
go on (do) a space mission	يذهب في (يؤدي) مهمة (مأمورية) في الفضاء
do (go on - go for) a space walk	يذهب في رحلة مشى في الفضاء
launch (a ship - a rocket - a space shuttle)	يطلق (سفينة - صاروخ - مكوك فضاء)
examine a patient / examine a car for damage	يفحص مريض / يفحص سيارة لاكتشاف العيب
reach for the stars	الوصول إلى المستحيل (النجوم)
get a leak in (a cup - a tap - a tank)	يجد تسريب في (فنجان - صنبور - خزان)
is sent into space / go into space / travel in (into) space	يرسل إلى (يذهب إلى) (يسافر إلى) الفضاء



have fun with	يستمتع بـ
orbit the earth	يدور حول الأرض
give advice / a talk / a lecture / instructions	يعطي (يلقي) "نصيحة / خطبة / محاضرة / تعليمات"
come true	يتحقق (يصبح حقيقة)
lose contact with the earth	يفقد الاتصال بالأرض
more or less	تقريباً
human intelligence / artificial intelligence	الذكاء البشري / الذكاء الاصطناعي
gain (put on) much (a lot of) weight	يزداد في الوزن
limit the amount of time	يحد من (يقلل) كم الوقت
the circulation of the blood	الدورة الدموية
terminal (fatal) diseases	أمراض مميتة
fight cancer	يحارب السرطان
the solar system	المجموعة الشمسية
produce (make) their own food	تصنع طعامها الخاص
test the theory with experiments	يختبر النظرية بالتجارب
research the possible causes of illnesses	يبحث الأسباب المحتملة للأمراض
gain a lot of useful experience	يكتسب المزيد من الخبرة المفيدة
score Excellent (Very Good) in his degree	يحصل على شهادته بتقدير امتياز (جيد جداً)
apply in writing to .....	يتقدم بطلب مكتوب الى .....
attend special classes	يحضر حصص خاصة
be in contact with	يكون على اتصال بـ
personnel manager	مدير شئون العاملين
aged 58 (at the age of)	عن عمر يناهز
do (take) (get) a course in	يحصل على دورة دراسية في
give (run) (provide) a course in	يقدم (يعطي) دورة دراسية في
highly qualified staff	هيئة عاملين مؤهلين بشكل جيد
let off fireworks	يطلق ألعاب نارية
hit a drum with a stick	يدق الطبله بعضا
the position of the moon	موقع القمر
mark the beginning of spring	يميز (يحدد) بداية الربيع
vary from place to place	يتنوع من مكان إلى آخر
get through their day's work	ينجزون أعمالهم اليومية
get sunburn	يُصاب بحروق الشمس
work on a project	يعمل في مشروع
work on the underground	يعمل في المترو
a tunnel with (which has) a diameter of .....	نفق يصل قطر دائرته إلى .....
is considered to be	إنه يُعتبر
cut (carved) into rock (a cliff)	منحوت في الصخر (منحدر صخري)
cut (carved) out of (from) stone	منحوت من الحجر
works of engineering = engineering works	أعمال هندسية
take in light from the sun	يمتص الضوء من الشمس
form new wood	يشكل خشب جديد



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

recharge a mobile phone	يُعيد شحن الهاتف النقال
blow trees down	تسقط الأشجار
won an influential prize	فاز بجائزة هامة
a stinging report	تقرير انتقادي
play a trick on / do tricks	يخدع / يقوم بالخدع
blind to reality	أعمى عن الحقيقة
a special viewer	منظار خاص
high or low temperatures	درجات حرارة مرتفعة أو منخفضة
go dark	يظلم
grow phenomenally tall	يكبر بشكل واضح
blows in a southerly direction	تهب في اتجاه جنوبي
be a success / be successful	يحقق نجاح
a week-old moon	القمر في يومه السابع
have a fixed routine	لديه روتين ثابت
come with fresh ideas	يأتي بأفكار جديدة
spend enough quality time with	يخصص وقتاً كافياً لـ
at a height of	على ارتفاع
better known as	معروف أكثر كـ
the medical profession/ the teaching profession/ the nursing staff	مهنة الطب / مهنة التدريس / هيئة التمريض
let you know	أحيطك علماً
come to an agreement on	يتوصل إلى اتفاق حول
cut into a particular shape	ينحت بشكل معين
take an underground train	يستقل مترو الأنفاق
tell the truth / tell lies	يقول الصدق / يكذب
average wind speed	متوسط سرعة الرياح

### Main Language Notes and Collocations of the Syllabus

النقاط اللغوية والمتلازمات اللفظية الرئيسية في المنهج

#### 1. make / do

make a noise	يحدث ضوضاء	do homework	يؤدي الواجب المدرسي
make a new table	يصنع منضدة جديدة	do well	يؤدي جيداً
make a speech	يلقي خطبة	do work	يؤدي العمل
make arrangements	يقوم بترتيبات	do a survey	يقوم بدراسة / يقوم باستطلاع
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	do a job	يؤدي وظيفة
make money	يكسب مال	do the washing up	يقوم بالغسيل
make a timetable	يعد جدول مواعيد	do revision	يقوم بالمراجعة
make a revision plan	يعد خطة مراجعة	do sports	يلعب رياضة
make predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات	do accounts	يقوم بعمل الحسابات
make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	do research	يقوم ببحث
make a film	يصنع فيلماً	do weightless sports	يؤدي رياضات منعقدة الوزن
make snow sculptures	يصنع تماثيل منحوتة من الثلج	do a task	يؤدي مهمة (وظيفة)
make a model of	يصنع نموذج من	do (cause) damage to	يسبب التلف (الدمار) لـ
make a solo flight	يقود الطائرة بمفرده	do business with	يتعامل تجارياً مع



## 2. Verbs and nouns أفعال وأسماء

ache	يؤلم / ألم	break	يكسر / راحة
chat	يحدث / دردشة	demand	يطلب / طلب
face	يواجه / وجه	book	يحجز / كتاب
leaves	يغادر / ورق شجر	type	يكتب على الكمبيوتر / نوع

## 3. Expressions with "get"

become	يصبح	It's <b>getting</b> dark. / She <b>got</b> angry.
obtain	يحصل على (شيء - معلومة)	I need to <b>get</b> some details from you about the accident.
receive	يُستلم	I <b>got</b> a letter from my sister yesterday.
understand	يفهم - يستوعب	I'm sorry, I didn't <b>get</b> that. Could you repeat it?
buy	يشترى	Where did you <b>get</b> that wonderful carpet ?
arrive	يصل	What time do you <b>get</b> home from work?
bring (fetch)	يحضر	Could you <b>get</b> the children from school, please?
catch a disease	يُصاب (بمرض ما)	She <b>got</b> malaria in Africa.
make	يجعل	I <b>got</b> my dad to pick me up from the station
achieve	يحقق	She <b>got</b> the full mark in the final exam.
catch	يستقل مواصلات	Shall we <b>get</b> a taxi to the airport?

## 4. Phrases with "break"

break a <b>promise</b>	يخلف وعد	I knew that he would not be late because he never <b>breaks a promise</b> .
break <b>Amira's heart</b>	يكسر (يحطم) قلب	It <b>broke Amira's heart</b> when her best friend moved to Dubai.
break the <b>law / the rules</b>	يخالف القانون / القواعد	If you <b>break the law</b> , the police might fine you.
break the <b>record</b>	يحطم الرقم القياسي	The football team did not lose for 50 matches and <b>broke a record</b> .

## 5. reach

1	arrive at a place.	يصل الى مكان.	It takes six hours to <b>reach</b> the space station.
2	go to a particular level.	يصل الى مستوى معين.	Temperatures in the desert can <b>reach</b> 50 C.
3	move hand to touch something.	يحرك يديه ليصل الى شيء معين.	The baby is <b>reaching</b> towards the vase of flowers.
4	be long enough to get to a place.	يكون طويل بشكل كافى يمكنه من الوصول لمكان.	That ladder can <b>reach</b> the top of the wall.

## 6. about

1	ready to start doing something	مستعد للقيام بشيء.	I was <b>about</b> to go out when my friend arrived.
2	Almost	تقريباً	Breakfast is just <b>about</b> ready.
3	nearby	قريب / مجاور	There's a message for Ahmed. Is he <b>about</b> ?
4	a little more or less than	حوالى	There were <b>about</b> 100 people in the theatre.

## 7. make up

1	make up my mind	يتخذ قرار	I must <b>make up my mind</b> very quickly.
2	make up for	يعوض	I must <b>make up for</b> the time I lost during the holidays.
3	make up	يؤلف / يبتكر (قصة - أغنية)	I've always enjoyed <b>making up</b> stories.

## 8. give

give <b>away</b>	يمنح - يهب شيئاً ما	The children <b>gave away</b> their toys to a charity.
give <b>off</b>	يشع - يبعث - ينشر	The fire <b>gave off</b> a lot of heat.
give <b>out</b>	يوزع شيئاً ما	After the festival, the food and drink are <b>given out</b> to the poor.
give <b>up</b>	يتخلى (يقلع) عن - يترك	I tried the puzzle but <b>gave up</b> , as it was too difficult.



9. take off

take off	تُقلع الطائرة	The plane <b>took off</b> at half past four.
take off	يعطل - يأخذ عطلة (أجازة)	I can't <b>take off</b> any time this week.
take off	يصبح ناجحاً أو مشهوراً فجأة	Her business has really <b>taken off</b> .
take off (شيء)	يخلع - ينزع - يُزيل (ملابس - أحذية)	Come in and <b>take</b> your coat <b>off</b> .
take off (شخص)	يقُذ (طريقة كلام أو سلوك)	She can <b>take off</b> Nancy Ajram brilliantly.
take off	يُغادر مكان فجأة	As soon as she saw him arrive, she just <b>took off</b> .

10. Abbreviations الاختصارات

DOB = Date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
IT = Information Technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
BA = bachelor of Arts	بكالوريوس فنون أو أداب
BSc = Bachelor of Science	بكالوريوس علوم
MSc = Master of Science	ماجستير في العلوم
PhD = Doctor of Philosophy	دكتوراه في الفلسفة
GSEC = General Secondary Education Certificate	شهادة التعليم الثانوي العام

11. arise / rise / raise / arouse (rouse):

arise	arose	لا مفعول + arisen	ينشأ - يبرز - يظهر للوجود
rise	rose	لا مفعول + risen	ينهض - تشرق - يرتفع
raise	raised	مفعول + raised	يرفع - يجمع - يربي - يثير
arouse = rouse	roused	مفعول + roused	يثير - يوقظ

\* I worry when such problems **arise**.

\* The sun **rises** in the east.

\* The kite **rose** in the sky when the wind blew.

\* He is **raising** some money for a charity.

\* Please, **raise** your hand if you want to ask a question.

\* Their worry **aroused** my suspicion.

12. work/ job/ profession/ career:

\* **work** - عمل - مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

\* I have got a lot of **work** to do.

\* Mr. Ali leaves **work** at three o'clock every day.

\* **works** - أعمال فنية - أدبية - نحتية - هندسية

\* Egypt has amazing **works** of engineering.

\* **job** - وظيفة - مهنة (اسم يعد)

\* He has got a **job** as a teacher./ \* I have got a lot of **jobs** to do.

\* **profession** - المجال عموماً / مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات)

\* Doctors and nurses belong to the medical **profession**.

\* **career** - مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)

\* I spent most of my **career** working hard.

13. as well as/ in addition to/ besides + V.ing / اسم :

تعني بالإضافة إلى

\* **As well as** being an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.

14. مصدر + فاعل آخر (insist (that) + فاعل / insist on + فاعل :

\* He insisted on **mending** the bike himself.

\* My publisher insists that I **send** everything as an e-mail attachment.

15. the + جنسية / جنسية = صفة / people: (النوع كله)

\* Yehia Haqqi helped **the poor** and **the disabled**. = Yehia Haqqi helped **poor and disabled people**.

16. be + always / usually / never / often / sometimes / regularly / still:

\* هذه الظروف تأتي بعد فعل (be) وليس قبله. / عندما يكون هذا الفعل مضارع بسيط أو ماضي بسيط أي في شكل (am / is / are / was / were):

\* Haqqi **is still** thought of as the father of the modern short story.



17. take / spend:

- \* it takes (took) + مدة زمنية + مصدر + to + مفعول: \* It took him a few months to write the story.  
 \* مصدر + to + مدة زمنية + take + فاعل: \* He took a few months to write the story.  
 \* مصدر + to + شخص + مدة زمنية + take + شيء: \* The story took him a few months to write.  
 \* مصدر + V.ing + مدة زمنية + spend + فاعل: \* He spent a few months writing the story.

18. every day (each day) (صفة تأتي قبل الاسم) / كل يوم (ظرف يأتي في أول الجملة أو آخرها)

- \* I need to start going to the gym every day. \* Brushing my teeth is part of my everyday routine.

19. fatherly (أبوي - ودود) / in a fatherly way بطريقة أبوية

friendly (ودود) / in a friendly way بطريقة ودودة

ظرف بمعنى (بطريقة ودودة) / صفة بمعنى (ودود) (ly) مثل (motherly / ugly / brotherly) تشكل صيغة (way + صفة + a/an + in)

- \* My teacher is fatherly to me. \* My teacher treats me in a fatherly way.

20. let / allow / permit يسمح:

- \* مصدر + مفعول + let + فاعل: \* The referee let the player change his sports shirt.  
 \* مصدر + to + مفعول + allow / permit + فاعل: \* The referee allowed the player to change his shirt.  
 \* لا يُستخدم (let) في المبني للمجهول، إنما تُستخدم (allow / permit).  
 \* The player was allowed / permitted to change his sports shirt.

21. مصدر + will (can / may) فاعل so that جملة مضارع / مستقبل

مصدر + would (could / might) فاعل so that جملة ماضي

- \* He wants to stop the coronation so that he can become the King.  
 \* Ali ran fast so that he could catch the bus.

22. be used to + مصدر = be used for + V.ing / اسم (يُستخدم في)

- \* Wood is used to make paper. \* Wood is used for making paper.

23. 'd better (had better) + مصدر (من الأفضل لك) / 'd rather (would rather) + مصدر (يُفضل):

- \* If you need to improve your English, you'd better take a course.  
 \* I don't like tea. I'd rather have coffee instead.

24. مصدر + how to + مفعول know / show + فاعل / ..... مصدر (how) to + مفعول learn / teach + فاعل:

- \* Can you teach me (how) to use the internet? \* Can you show me how to use the internet?

25. like/ unlike/ as/ alike/ such as:

(مثل - تُعبر عن تشبيه غير حقيقي) ضمير / اسم + صفة / اسم + like:

- \* He works like a machine. / \* She ran like a mad dog. / \* Do you still write like this?

مختلف عن - على عكس unlike:

- \* Unlike her sister, Salma is hard-working and studious. \* She has blue eyes unlike her mother.

(مثل - تُعبر عن تشبيه حقيقي) جملة كاملة / وظيفة + as:

- \* My father works as a doctor. \* Do this experiment as I do it.

ظرف بمعنى على حد سواء / صفة بمعنى متشابه (لا تُتبع بمفعول) alike:

- \* I and my cousin are alike. We look like identical twins.  
 \* The government builds new schools in cities and villages alike.

(لا يأتي بعدها مفعول) يتشابه look alike / (يُشبه) مفعول + look like:

- \* I and my brother look like each other. We are identical.  
 \* I and my brother look alike. We are twins. \* Ali and Ahmed look so alike. = Ali looks like Ahmed.







\* The astronauts did a two-hour space walk. \* The astronauts usually do two-hour space walks.

\* I spent a (one) year's time recuperating after that accident.

\* She spent four months' time recuperating after that accident.

\* يمكن التعامل مع اسم ما (مرة على أنه يعد ومرة على أنه لا يعد) كما يلي:

\* We went on a three-year mission in space. \* We went on three years' mission in space.

34. The + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + فعل, the + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + فعل: (كلما ..... كلما .....):

\* The more people want to do something, the cheaper it will become.

\* The harder you study, the higher marks you will get.

35. the same as (كالية) / مشابه جزئياً / similar to (كالية):

\* Your bedroom is the same as mine. / Your bedroom and mine are the same.

\* My camera is similar to my sister's. / My camera and my sister's are similar.

36. someone / somebody / everyone / everybody / anyone / anybody / no one / nobody:

\* تأخذ هذه الضمائر في أول الجملة فعل مفرد, ثم نعود عليها بضمير جمع ومن ثم فعل جمع.

\* Everyone benefits from space technology in their everyday lives.

37. electric / electrical:

\* electric (يعمل باستخدام الكهرباء)

\* electric motor / electric guitar / electric light / electric kettles / electric wires / electric car.

\* electrical (يتعامل مع الكهرباء - يُشبه الكهرباء - يُنتج الكهرباء)

\* electrical device / electrical goods / electrical system / electrical worker / electrical storm.

38. take place / take the place of / replace:

\* take place = happen = occur يحدث: \* The story takes place in a fictional country.

\* replace = take اسم's place = take the place of .. يحل محل: \* Rassendyll took the King's place.

\* replace اسم with اسم ..... بـ ..... يستبدل: \* I will replace my old computer with a new one.

39. win (يكتسب - يزداد في - ينال شيء معنوي) / gain (يفوز بشيء مادي)

\* win a match (a medal / a cup / a tournament / a championship).

\* gain weight (respect / knowledge / the right to / experience / speed).

40. hard skills (المهارات الشخصية المطلوبة لوظيفة) / personal skills (المهارات الفنية المطلوبة لوظيفة):

\* Hard skills: Knowing languages / having a driving licence / having a degree.

\* Personal skills: being tall and strong / being conscientious and sociable.

41. present (give) شيء = present شخص with شيء:

\* I presented / gave a mobile phone to my son. \* I presented my son with a mobile phone.

42. Using the gerund and the past participle as adjectives:

\* استخدام الـ (V.ing) والتصريف الثالث كصفات.....

أ. يستخدم (V.ing) كصفة للمسبب للحدث:

\* Her attitude was puzzling. \* My work is very tiring. \* Reading books is interesting.

ب. يمكن استخدام التصريف الثالث كصفة لمستقبل الحدث:

\* Her attitude made me puzzled. \* I'm very tired today. \* I'm interested in reading books.

\* من الخطأ أن نقول أن (V.ing) يستخدم في وصف الأشخاص في حين أن التصريف الثالث يستخدم في وصف الحيوانات والأشياء:

\* Ali looked frightening in this animal like face mask. \* I miss my aunt and her interesting friends.



43. historic / historical:

\* historic (قديم - مهم تاريخياً - يُمكن زيارته)

(site - place - building - date - occasion - monument) \* Egypt is full of historic monuments.

\* historical (تاريخي (يرتبط بدراسة التاريخ) (film - play - novel - book - research - character - events)

\* I have just finished reading a historical novel.

44. في التعبير عن المقاييس والمقادير: اسم + in = صفة.

\* The tunnel is 8 metres wide (in width / in diameter).

\* The Nile is nearly 6600 kilometres long (in length).

45. manage to + مصدر (يتمكن من) / succeed in + V.ing (ينجح في):

\* He managed to break the world record for running.

\* He succeeded in escaping before the police arrived.

46. tall / long / high:

\* tall (طويل (طول رأسي) (أشجار - أشخاص - مباني)

\* The tree is 200 m. tall (in height)

\* long (طويل (طول عرضي)

\* The underground is 44 km. long (in length).

\* high (مرتفع (عالي) (مرتفعات وجبال)

\* Everest is nearly 9000 m. high (in height).

47. north / northern = in the north of / في شمال / northerly شمالي

south / southern = in the south of / في جنوب / southerly جنوبي

\* The River Nile goes from south to north.

\* The Nile is narrow towards northern Egypt / the north of Egypt.

\* The wind blows here in a southerly direction.

48. solar eclipse خسوف الشمس / lunar eclipse خسوف القمر:

\* A solar eclipse happens when the moon is between the earth and the sun.

\* A lunar eclipse happens when the earth comes between the moon and the sun.

\* A solar eclipse is an eclipse of the sun.

\* A lunar eclipse is an eclipse of the moon.

49. go out (النور - ينطفئ) / put off (النور - ينطفئ) / put out = extinguish (النار يطفى):

\* The light went out suddenly while I was doing the experiment. \* Because of rain, the fire went out.

\* Please, put off the lights before you go to bed.

\* Please, put out your cigarette. We can't breathe.

50. Emphasis التأكيد:

\* نستخدم الفعل المساعد (do/ does/ did) قبل المصدر من أجل تأكيد الكلام.

\* We do have this information. = We really have this information.

\* I really sent the letter. = I did send the letter.

## كلمات مختلطة Confusable words

experiences	خبرات حياتية	experiments	تجارب علمية (معملية)
habit	عادة فردية (لفرد واحد)	custom	عادة مجتمعية (للمجتمع كله)
award	جائزة رسمية / يمنح جائزة	reward	مكافأة غير رسمية / يكافئ
examine	يفحص لاكتشاف الخطأ	check	يراجع - يتأكد
attached to	موصول بـ (معنى مادي)	attached with	مرتبط بـ (معنى معنوي)



biography	سيرة ذاتية لشخص عن آخر	autobiography	سيرة ذاتية لشخص عن نفسه
novelist	روائي (يكتب روايات)	playwright	كاتب مسرحي (يكتب مسرحيات)
conversation	حوار مسموع	dialogue	محادثة مكتوبة
sensitive	حساس - مرفف الحس	sensible	عقل - حكيم - رزين
system	نظام عمل (منظومة)	discipline	النظام (الانضباط)
contact	يتصل بـ	connect	يوصل بين شيئين
realise	يدرك (حقيقة / شيء)	recognize	يتعرف على شخص
decide to + مصدر	يقرر أن يفعل ...	decide on + اسم	يختار - يحدد
wonder	يتعجب - يتساءل	wander	يتجول
mixture	خليط من شيئين مختلفان غالباً	combination	مزيج من شيئين متشابهان غالباً
lie (lied-lied) (lying)	يكذب	lie (lay-lain) (lying)	يقع - يرق
licence	رخصة (سيارة - طائرة)	degree	شهادة جامعية - درجة علمية
permission	تصريح - إذن - موافقة	permit	تصريح (مكتوب)
personal	شخصي	personnel	خاص بشئون العاملين
society	المجتمع كله	community	طائفة من المجتمع
on his own	بمفرده	of his own	ملكه
outdoor	خارجي (صفة)	indoor	داخلي (صفة)
outdoors	خارج المنزل (ظرف)	indoors	داخل المنزل (ظرف)
a long + اسم	صفة بمعنى (طويل)	along	ظرف بمعنى (بطول)
hear of	يسمع عن شخص	hear from	يتلقى أخبار من شخص
make (earn) money	يكسب مال من عمل	win money	يكسب مال كجائزة
alone (on his own)	بمفرده (بدون مساعدة أحد)	lonely	وحيد - منعزل
exercise	تدريب بدني للحفاظ على اللياقة أو الصحة	training	تدريب مخصوص لحدث رياضي معين
because (as/since)	لأن (يتبعها جملة كاملة)	because of + V.ing / اسم	بسبب
free	حر - مجاني	freelance	مستقل
athletes	رياضيون	athletics	ألعاب القوى
time	الوقت	times	مرات - أوقات محددة
hard	صعب - خشن - بجد	hardly	بصعوبة - بالكاد
properly	بشكل لائق - بشكل جيد	probably	من المحتمل
invent	يخترع شيء جديد	discover	يكشف شيء كان موجوداً
explore	يستكشف مكان (كالفضاء)	create	يخلق - يبدع - يبتكر
repair (mend) (fix)	يصلح شيء	reform	يصلح نظام أو منظومة
physicist	عالم فيزياء	physician	طبيب
go wrong	يتعطل	do wrong	يرتكب خطأ
wrong with	عطل (مشكلة في)	wrong about	مخطئ بشأن
found - founded - ed	يؤسس	find - found - found	يجد
article	مقال (في جريدة) (في كتاب)	review	مقال نقدي
rather than	بدلاً من	other than	عدا (خلاف)
tower	برج مراقبة أو تحكم	mast	برج لبث الاشارات
stick	عصا للمشي أو العراك	pole	عصا (عمود) للعلم
signal	شبكة المحمول	sign	لافتة - يوقع (يقوم بالامضاء)
theoretical	نظري	theoretically (in theory)	نظرياً



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

release	يطلق في الهواء / يطلق سراح	launch	يطلق في الفضاء (حملة)
CV = Curriculum Vitae	استمارة السيرة الذاتية للتوظيف	biography	كتاب عن السيرة الذاتية لشخص
neighbourly	ودود	neighbouring	مجاور
conscientious	مجد - مجتهد	conscious	واع (مدرك)
degree	شهادة جامعية (المؤهل)	certificate	شهادة (وثيقة)
mark	درجة الامتحان ذاته	grade	التقدير العام لاختبار او مرحلة
provide شخص for شيء	يوفر ..... لـ .....	provide شخص with شيء	يعد (يزود) .... بـ .....
throughout	خلال وقت	through	عبر مكان
rise - rose - risen	تشرق (الشمس)	set - set - set	تغرب (الشمس)
verse	الشعر	prose	النثر
whether	إذا - أو	weather	الطقس
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام	worthless	لا قيمة له
lifelong	صفة (مستمر مدى الحياة)	long live	نداء بمعنى (يحيا - يعيش)
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
landmark	أحد المعالم الهامة	landscape	منظر طبيعي
sculpture	تمثال منحوت صغير	statue	تمثال مجسم كبير
proud of + V.ing / اسم	فخور بـ	proud to + مصدر	فخور بـ
unlike	على عكس	dislike	يكره
undefeated	لا يمكن هزيمته	defeatist	انهزامى
member	عضو في اسرة أو جماعة	organ	عضو في الجسم
emission	انبعاث - انطلاق	mission	مهمة - مأمورية
base	قاعدة (أساس)	rule	قاعدة (قانون) (لائحة)
the underground	مترو الأنفاق	underground	تحت الأرض
salary	راتب شهري أو سنوي	wages	أجور يومية أو أسبوعية
illuminate	ينير - يضيء	eliminate	يمحو
instrument	آلة موسيقية (طبية)	equipment	معدات (كهربائية - رياضية)
tool	أداة يدوية	gadget	آلة صغيرة لها غرض معين
give out	يطلق في الهواء	take in	يمتص
sting - stung - stung	يلدغ	bite - bit - bitten	يعض
treat	يعامل (شخص)	deal with (handle)	يتعامل مع (شيء)
shadow	ظل متحرك / خيال / شبح	shade	ظل ثابت
drought	الجفاف	draught	مسودة - تيار هواء
lightning	البرق	lighting	الاضاءة
absorbent	قادر على الامتصاص	absorbing	مثير - جذاب
sunburn	حرق (ضربة) شمس	sunburnt	مصاب بحروق الشمس
port	مدينة بها ميناء	harbour	ميناء السفن ذاته

### Exercises on Vocabulary, derivatives, prepositions, expressions and notes

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Prices have risen by a/an ..... of four percent over the past year.  
 a. average                      b. advance                      c. verge                      d. privilege



2. Doing two things at the same time is something very .....  
 a. **confused**                      b. **confusing**                      c. **confusion**                      d. **confessing**
3. Changing the name of the company will only lead to ..... I don't recommend it.  
 a. **confusion**                      b. **clarification**                      c. **management**                      d. **cleanliness**
4. She's 85 now, but she will ..... on doing all her own housework.  
 a. **impact**                      b. **insist**                      c. **consist**                      d. **addict**
5. Most people don't usually have a ..... during the holidays.  
 a. **tape**                      b. **route**                      c. **root**                      d. **routine**
6. People no longer use ..... farming methods.  
 a. **fashion**                      b. **fashionable**                      c. **old-fashioned**                      d. **fashioned**
7. Have you found a ..... for your new book?  
 a. **publisher**                      b. **public**                      c. **publication**                      d. **publishing**
8. The sun is at its strongest at .....  
 a. **sunset**                      b. **dawn**                      c. **midday**                      d. **midnight**
9. A ..... is someone who produces books, newspapers and magazines.  
 a. **publisher**                      b. **diver**                      c. **pioneer**                      d. **lawyer**
10. The government has ..... many new projects recently.  
 a. **established**                      b. **estimated**                      c. **extinguished**                      d. **destructured**
11. People who are supposed to obey the ..... also need to know their rights under it.  
 a. **lower**                      b. **layer**                      c. **law**                      d. **line**
12. Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a/an ..... in heart surgery.  
 a. **pioneer**                      b. **inventor**                      c. **explorer**                      d. **investor**
13. It is the ..... for the bride to wear a white dress on her wedding day.  
 a. **custom**                      b. **costume**                      c. **cosmetic**                      d. **condemn**
14. My cousin gave me a ..... of modern short stories for my birthday.  
 a. **connection**                      b. **collection**                      c. **communication**                      d. **convention**
15. My father is a strong ..... in the importance of education.  
 a. **belief**                      b. **relief**                      c. **believer**                      d. **reliever**
16. She has a/an ..... but she insists on attending a school for healthy students.  
 a. **disabled**                      b. **disability**                      c. **ability**                      d. **potential**
17. Ahmed ..... a good job when he made that new table.  
 a. **did**                      b. **gave**                      c. **made**                      d. **faded**
18. The teacher lectured the students on the ..... of mutual respect.  
 a. **importance**                      b. **important**                      c. **import**                      d. **importantly**
19. There are some ..... differences between the east and the west.  
 a. **cultural**                      b. **culture**                      c. **cultured**                      d. **cultures**
20. My history teacher ..... my decision to become a teacher.  
 a. **influenced**                      b. **interested**                      c. **integrated**                      d. **intruded**
21. She ..... on modern art at the local college.  
 a. **manufactures**                      b. **disciplines**                      c. **features**                      d. **lectures**
22. Each child is ..... for their own belongings.  
 a. **charge**                      b. **responsible**                      c. **strict**                      d. **serious**
23. The children sat in a .....  
 a. **semi**                      b. **semicircle**                      c. **circular**                      d. **circles**



24. Please, don't laugh. I'm .....  
 a. **serious**                      b. **silent**                      c. **dangerous**                      d. **famous**
25. The police did their best to ..... the shouting crowds.  
 a. **silence**                      b. **spoil**                      c. **silent**                      d. **sponge**
26. Running that long distance made my legs .....  
 a. **chat**                      b. **demand**                      c. **face**                      d. **ache**
27. The tourists sat by the pool and ..... the sun.  
 a. **faced**                      b. **chatted**                      c. **planned**                      d. **demand**
28. The ..... for water will increase in the future.  
 a. **demand**                      b. **break**                      c. **order**                      d. **questionnaire**
29. She was angry when she lost a ..... on her dress.  
 a. **bottom**                      b. **bullet**                      c. **button**                      d. **bright**
30. Is this dress ..... in larger sizes?  
 a. **valuable**                      b. **believable**                      c. **available**                      d. **vulnerable**
31. The employer dismissed him as he lacked ..... for the work.  
 a. **enthusiasm**                      b. **interesting**                      c. **enthusiast**                      d. **enthusiastic**
32. I wanted to complain to the manager but he was .....  
 a. **deceitful**                      b. **unavailable**                      c. **unthinkable**                      d. **unsinkable**
33. We need a/an ..... for our old vacuum cleaner.  
 a. **requirement**                      b. **arrangement**                      c. **replacement**                      d. **enrollment**
34. A ..... in the use of cars will certainly help cut out pollution.  
 a. **reduction**                      b. **deduction**                      c. **function**                      d. **rise**
35. Will computers ever completely ..... books?  
 a. **place**                      b. **release**                      c. **replace**                      d. **apply**
36. Those pants will look nicer if you ..... them.  
 a. **attach**                      b. **reduce**                      c. **please**                      d. **bleach**
37. He ..... his feet in a tub of warm water to relieve the pain he felt in them.  
 a. **absorbed**                      b. **faced**                      c. **soaked**                      d. **removed**
38. This novel is an interesting ..... of fact and fiction.  
 a. **combine**                      b. **mixture**                      c. **paperback**                      d. **distinctive**
39. There has always been a lot of ..... between Africa and Europe.  
 a. **treat**                      b. **trade**                      c. **produce**                      d. **merchant**
40. A/An ..... is a large book that contains facts.  
 a. **media**                      b. **encyclopedia**                      c. **tragedy**                      d. **recycling**
41. The mixture passes through hot ..... to produce continuous pieces of dry paper.  
 a. **rollers**                      b. **tellers**                      c. **roots**                      d. **routes**
42. The car ..... over many times before it fell into the sea.  
 a. **bleached**                      b. **rolled**                      c. **removed**                      d. **soaked**
43. The teacher is going to ..... our homework tomorrow.  
 a. **produce**                      b. **write**                      c. **mark**                      d. **do**
44. It took me a long time to ..... my friend that the idea will be a success.  
 a. **discourage**                      b. **convince**                      c. **confuse**                      d. **encourage**
45. Where do you ..... to spend your coming holiday?  
 a. **intend**                      b. **invite**                      c. **invest**                      d. **invent**



46. There was a ..... at the university about social networking sites.  
a. **lecture**                      b. **tale**                      c. **legend**                      d. **myth**
47. The winner was ..... a gold medal.  
a. **rewarded**                      b. **awarded**                      c. **appreciated**                      d. **argued**
48. Running can have a ..... effect on your muscles.  
a. **positive**                      b. **negative**                      c. **side**                      d. **conductive**
49. Women have an important ..... to play in society.  
a. **rule**                      b. **role**                      c. **roll**                      d. **ray**
50. Those who ..... fine art will surely admire the gallery exhibits.  
a. **fabricate**                      b. **appliance**                      c. **appreciate**                      d. **allocate**
51. The people that I helped were ..... of what I did for them.  
a. **collective**                      b. **appreciative**                      c. **comprehensive**                      d. **exclusive**
52. Young people should be ..... towards the elderly.  
a. **respect**                      b. **respected**                      c. **respective**                      d. **respectful**
53. Coming from a ..... family, he is well-behaved.  
a. **communist**                      b. **respectable**                      c. **destructive**                      d. **subjective**
54. The King has ..... this country for twelve years.  
a. **governed**                      b. **rolled**                      c. **based**                      d. **collected**
55. The speech was so interesting that all the attendees clapped ..... in the end.  
a. **appreciatively**                      b. **sadly**                      c. **negatively**                      d. **cowardly**
56. She left the band فرقة موسيقية last year and started a ..... career.  
a. **lonely**                      b. **solo**                      c. **same**                      d. **direct**
57. You need to have a pilot's ..... before you can fly alone.  
a. **degree**                      b. **licence**                      c. **qualification**                      d. **grade**
58. My grandfather spent all his ..... working in a cotton company.  
a. **carrier**                      b. **care**                      c. **career**                      d. **carrel**
59. The nursing ..... at the hospital work very hard.  
a. **occupation**                      b. **staff**                      c. **job**                      d. **profession**
60. The grades she got in the final exams were .....  
a. **impressed**                      b. **impressive**                      c. **impress**                      d. **impression**
61. No one questioned his ..... for the job as the manager was the one who chose him.  
a. **suitability**                      b. **invisibility**                      c. **rituality**                      d. **brutality**
62. The new drug has been ..... by the government.  
a. **licensed**                      b. **degreed**                      c. **graded**                      d. **impressed**
63. The applicant ..... the interviewer with his good qualifications.  
a. **surpassed**                      b. **impressed**                      c. **compressed**                      d. **pressed**
64. The officer was ordered to find the killer and bring him back .....  
a. **live**                      b. **life**                      c. **a live**                      d. **alive**
65. The ..... of his teeth didn't stop so he had to go to the dentist.  
a. **relief**                      b. **aching**                      c. **delivery**                      d. **comfort**
66. Some people can't bear seeing blood. They almost ..... at the sight of it.  
a. **vain**                      b. **flirt**                      c. **faint**                      d. **fetch**
67. We searched ..... for the missing earring. We never found it.  
a. **in van**                      b. **vanish**                      c. **in vain**                      d. **vain**



68. Take some rest so that you can ..... your troubled mind.  
a. chase                      b. seize                      c. ease                      d. end
69. The children are still ..... I can hear them talking.  
a. ahead                      b. along                      c. asleep                      d. awake
70. To go to the bank, walk ..... this road and turn right.  
a. long                      b. a long                      c. length                      d. along
71. The road stretched ..... for many miles. I felt I wouldn't cover it.  
a. ahead                      b. head                      c. heads                      d. a head
72. The company's ..... show a profit this year.  
a. accounts                      b. communities                      c. mounts                      d. emissions
73. Doing ..... exercise is beneficial مفيد, so I go running every day.  
a. regular                      b. grade                      c. rumor                      d. visual
74. I took ..... two new projects at work, that's why I'm very tired.  
a. on                      b. down                      c. in                      d. off
75. The United Nations is an important ..... that works all over the world.  
a. organisation                      b. associated                      c. publisher                      d. encyclopedia
76. I always ..... a revision plan before I start revising.  
a. take                      b. make                      c. do                      d. give
77. I had a/an ..... day at work today. There was too much work to do.  
a. stressful                      b. impressive                      c. delightful                      d. available
78. The skater المتزلج suddenly lost his ..... and fell.  
a. link                      b. balance                      c. silence                      d. memory
79. People who ..... from diabetes must be careful about what they eat.  
a. feel                      b. remind                      c. suffer                      d. complaint
80. The teacher gave each student a ..... to do.  
a. task                      b. profession                      c. career                      d. staff
81. She has been suffering from a ..... of sleep lately  
a. lock                      b. lack                      c. leak                      d. luck
82. You should ..... the number of sweets you eat. They are harmful.  
a. limit                      b. increase                      c. replace                      d. suffer
83. Are you coming to the football ..... after school?  
a. exercise                      b. sport                      c. training                      d. running
84. Please, ..... me to buy the present or I will forget.  
a. tell                      b. wonder                      c. remember                      d. remind
85. The plane to Brazil takes ..... at seven tomorrow morning.  
a. up                      b. off                      c. down                      d. away
86. I can't take ..... any time from work this week. We have a lot of work to do.  
a. off                      b. in                      c. out                      d. down
87. Some schools separate the boys ..... the girls in classrooms.  
a. with                      b. from                      c. at                      d. about
88. People with important jobs usually suffer from .....  
a. stress                      b. stressed                      c. distressed                      d. stressful
89. This site gives visitors some useful ..... on how best to lose weight.  
a. tips                      b. tapes                      c. taps                      d. tops



90. I hope I will be a ..... so that I can help my country.  
 a. **policy**                      b. **political**                      c. **politics**                      d. **politician**
91. My brother has a ..... in medicine from Cairo university.  
 a. **grade**                      b. **licence**                      c. **mark**                      d. **degree**
92. The missing child was ..... when he saw a ship coming to rescue him.  
 a. **hopeless**                      b. **hopeful**                      c. **dreadful**                      d. **helpless**
93. After she banged her head into the wall, she felt .....  
 a. **conscientious**                      b. **unconscious**                      c. **uncertain**                      d. **uncommon**
94. The astronauts are going to ..... a space station in space.  
 a. **arrest**                      b. **analyze**                      c. **invent**                      d. **build**
95. January 2020 will be the tenth ..... of the revolution.  
 a. **advisory**                      b. **anomalous**                      c. **anonymous**                      d. **anniversary**
96. The astronauts went on a space ..... to replace a broken fuel pump.  
 a. **walk**                      b. **station**                      c. **suit**                      d. **tour**
97. Millions of people watched the rocket being ..... on TV.  
 a. **erupted**                      b. **launched**                      c. **realised**                      d. **started**
98. Walking in space is hard because there is no .....  
 a. **waiting**                      b. **gravity**                      c. **spin**                      d. **air**
99. The Prime minister is going on an urgent ..... to France tomorrow.  
 a. **motion**                      b. **mention**                      c. **mansion**                      d. **mission**
100. The ..... between my school and my house is one kilometre.  
 a. **space**                      b. **area**                      c. **distance**                      d. **district**
101. When we arrived at the bust stop, there were a lot of people ..... to take the bus.  
 a. **rowing**                      b. **crawling**                      c. **creeping**                      d. **queuing**
102. Astronauts are well trained to do ..... walks.  
 a. **pace**                      b. **palace**                      c. **space**                      d. **place**
103. The police ..... the gun and found the man's fingerprints on it.  
 a. **looked**                      b. **examined**                      c. **inspected**                      d. **checked**
104. Space ..... costs a lot of money.  
 a. **expectation**                      b. **exemption**                      c. **explanation**                      d. **exploration**
105. Man's ..... of other planets is a remarkable thing.  
 a. **inspiration**                      b. **invasion**                      c. **indication**                      d. **invention**
106. What I told you is ..... Never tell anyone about it.  
 a. **secret**                      b. **system**                      c. **mission**                      d. **total**
107. A sat-nav ..... helps drivers find their directions.  
 a. **system**                      b. **cement**                      c. **discipline**                      d. **strictness**
108. He was too small to ..... the cupboard door.  
 a. **arrive**                      b. **reach**                      c. **travel**                      d. **score**
109. Some basketball players can ..... the ball on one finger.  
 a. **spin**                      b. **orbit**                      c. **attach**                      d. **play**
110. The dentist asked the patient not to worry as his teeth were .....  
 a. **painless**                      b. **useless**                      c. **hopeless**                      d. **helpless**
111. This medicine is ..... It will help make you fine.  
 a. **powerless**                      b. **powered**                      c. **powerful**                      d. **painful**



112. They've hired a computer ..... to assess how the company can upgrade its system.  
a. **consultant**      b. **conductor**      c. **commander**      d. **commuter**
113. The approaching planes were detected by .....  
a. **hazard**      b. **radar**      c. **reader**      d. **radium**
114. They hired a ..... to help maintain the office's computers.  
a. **technical**      b. **technician**      c. **tactic**      d. **technological**
115. We learned how to measure energy in our ..... lesson today.  
a. **math's**      b. **English**      c. **physics**      d. **technology**
116. I missed the first 10 minutes of the show as the network had a ..... problem.  
a. **technician**      b. **technical**      c. **technique**      d. **high-tech**
117. A ..... is a scientist who is a specialist in physics.  
a. **physician**      b. **physical**      c. **physiologist**      d. **physicist**
118. Seeing a snake in the garden made the children .....  
a. **horrified**      b. **emergent**      c. **responsible**      d. **cultural**
119. You should never ..... your teachers while they are talking.  
a. **interest**      b. **impress**      c. **interrupt**      d. **enroll**
120. The boy ..... to commit suicide if his demands were not fulfilled.  
a. **threatened**      b. **interrupted**      c. **collected**      d. **told**
121. Cancer is a life-..... disease.  
a. **threat**      b. **threaten**      c. **threatened**      d. **threatening**
122. We have the flexibility to adjust our rates to meet ..... customer needs.  
a. **emergent**      b. **intelligent**      c. **intellectual**      d. **submerged**
123. Human activity is the main ..... of global warming.  
a. **cause**      b. **accuse**      c. **accusation**      d. **reason**
124. The research shows a ..... between high cholesterol and heart attacks.  
a. **link**      b. **connect**      c. **community**      d. **society**
125. Cancer is a fatal ..... which ends the lives of many people every year.  
a. **illness**      b. **signal**      c. **task**      d. **mission**
126. They have put a new telephone ..... on the roof of the building.  
a. **sign**      b. **mast**      c. **maze**      d. **wire**
127. The flood ..... a lot of people to leave their homes.  
a. **caused**      b. **signed**      c. **made**      d. **reasoned**
128. Did the driver ..... before he made the left turn?  
a. **signal**      b. **sign**      c. **assign**      d. **resign**
129. The ..... of the new computer program has been successful.  
a. **installation**      b. **interruption**      c. **calculation**      d. **induction**
130. She put the flag on a ..... and waved it so that it could be seen.  
a. **tower**      b. **pole**      c. **link**      d. **mast**
131. The air which is around us is ....., we can't see it.  
a. **impossible**      b. **invisible**      c. **incorrect**      d. **incredible**
132. It is wrong to ..... these animals in the wild. They won't be able to survive.  
a. **collect**      b. **release**      c. **realize**      d. **recognize**
133. The factory is in the ..... of moving to new offices.  
a. **profession**      b. **process**      c. **operation**      d. **procession**



134. The city is having problems with waste .....  
 a. **refusal**                      b. **removal**                      c. **annual**                      d. **global**
135. I hate dealing with ..... people.  
 a. **intolerant**                      b. **intelligent**                      c. **interesting**                      d. **accurate**
136. I didn't eat the food because it was .....  
 a. **tasty**                      b. **tasteful**                      c. **tasted**                      d. **tasteless**
137. The sand cat is able to ..... the heat of the desert.  
 a. **die**                      b. **survey**                      c. **alive**                      d. **survive**
138. They were disappointed after their son ..... his exams.  
 a. **filled**                      b. **fell**                      c. **felt**                      d. **failed**
139. Most of the planets in the solar system have been .....  
 a. **existed**                      b. **explained**                      c. **exported**                      d. **explored**
140. This ..... hotel is one of the biggest buildings in the city.  
 a. **giant**                      b. **hasty**                      c. **tiny**                      d. **hostile**
141. Artificial intelligence has its pros and .....  
 a. **canes**                      b. **cons**                      c. **cubes**                      d. **connects**
142. People who do ..... work don't get paid for it.  
 a. **freelance**                      b. **hopeful**                      c. **voluntary**                      d. **loyal**
143. I enjoy my job but the ..... is that I have to work long hours every day.  
 a. **merit**                      b. **benefit**                      c. **advantage**                      d. **downside**
144. He is very ..... He wants to have a company of his own.  
 a. **sociable**                      b. **graceful**                      c. **grateful**                      d. **ambitious**
145. She made a ..... decision to give an hour every week to charity.  
 a. **confidential**                      b. **conscientious**                      c. **continuous**                      d. **conventional**
146. You should have certain ..... to be a successful computer programmer.  
 a. **skills**                      b. **sketches**                      c. **skulls**                      d. **stitches**
147. The company received CVs from interested .....  
 a. **employers**                      b. **clients**                      c. **customers**                      d. **applicants**
148. My bank is an ..... company which has been in business for over 100 years.  
 a. **organised**                      b. **ambitious**                      c. **applied**                      d. **established**
149. Poor customer service destroyed the company's .....  
 a. **applicant**                      b. **famous**                      c. **reputation**                      d. **ambition**
150. I need some medicine. Is there a ..... near here?  
 a. **pharmacy**                      b. **currency**                      c. **physical**                      d. **society**
151. The president has some advisors to ..... him do his work.  
 a. **assist**                      b. **insist**                      c. **persist**                      d. **indict**
152. The team lost and as a result they didn't ..... for the competition finals.  
 a. **quality**                      b. **qualify**                      c. **licence**                      d. **celebrate**
153. My uncle ..... many English novels in his library.  
 a. **opposes**                      b. **possesses**                      c. **impresses**                      d. **expresses**
154. I ..... my ambition when I became an engineer.  
 a. **achieved**                      b. **won**                      c. **made**                      d. **received**
155. He did his best but his ..... in the project was not good enough.  
 a. **neighbourhood**                      b. **consultant**                      c. **achievement**                      d. **community**



156. I think Ali should get the job because he is the best ..... for it.  
a. application      b. candidate      c. CV      d. interviewer
157. Having a lovely singing voice, she was chosen in the school .....  
a. circus      b. choir      c. chair      d. chain
158. He got a very good ..... in his maths exam.  
a. grade      b. licence      c. certificate      d. qualify
159. Most of the houses in my ..... are very old. It's an area of slums.  
a. neighbourliness      b. neighbourhood      c. neighbourly      d. neighbouring
160. The people in my part of town are very ..... They usually help each other.  
a. neighbourly      b. neighbours      c. neighbouring      d. neighbour
161. I want to speak English ....., so I've enrolled on a course.  
a. fluency      b. fluent      c. fluently      d. influence
162. .... is perhaps the most important language skills.  
a. Fluency      b. Cleanly      c. Affluent      d. Affluence
163. His father became the American ..... to Italy so they moved to live there.  
a. ambassador      b. ministry      c. president      d. embassy
164. Before his death, he left all his money to his only son in a ..... he wrote.  
a. wall      b. well      c. will      d. wheel
165. You should be fluent to ..... Arabic poems into English.  
a. transmit      b. translate      c. transport      d. transact
166. He was very tired after he had ..... in the field all day.  
a. told      b. toiled      c. followed      d. survived
167. Who was that ..... that was speaking to you this morning?  
a. follow      b. fuel      c. fellow      d. foam
168. Please sweep those ..... of sand on the floor.  
a. gains      b. drains      c. grains      d. signs
169. The old man slowly ..... up the hill to the market.  
a. followed      b. toiled      c. roiled      d. coiled
170. It was dark when I woke up because the sun had not yet .....  
a. set      b. blown      c. risen      d. fallen
171. In this country, the rain ..... mostly near the coast.  
a. blows      b. falls      c. drops      d. fills
172. .... authors always come up with new and fresh ideas.  
a. Collective      b. Conductive      c. Creative      d. Correct
173. He left his job and now he is ..... for another job.  
a. retaining      b. detaining      c. relying      d. retraining
174. His parents don't think he has enough ..... to live on his own.  
a. manually      b. maturity      c. normality      d. punctuality
175. He works as a ..... in a well-known hotel.  
a. receptionist      b. technical      c. physicist      d. communist
176. I admire her intelligence and artistic .....  
a. creative      b. creativity      c. creator      d. critical
177. I think your ..... on that course was the right thing to do.  
a. enrollment      b. joint      c. compartment      d. deduction



178. My father is a teacher in the languages ..... at our local school.  
a. **apartment**                      b. **departure**                      c. **promotion**                      d. **department**
179. The company closed, leaving 100 people .....  
a. **employed**                      b. **employable**                      c. **employee**                      d. **unemployed**
180. The new hotel will ..... more than a hundred young people.  
a. **work**                      b. **employ**                      c. **prove**                      d. **position**
181. The company will ..... the employees who finished the course.  
a. **promote**                      b. **plot**                      c. **discourage**                      d. **implant**
182. The car factory is the largest ..... in our country.  
a. **employment**                      b. **employable**                      c. **employer**                      d. **employee**
183. Government ..... don't have enough salaries.  
a. **employers**                      b. **employees**                      c. **applicants**                      d. **applications**
184. I think she has the best ..... for the job.  
a. **qualifies**                      b. **qualify**                      c. **qualified**                      d. **qualifications**
185. .... out! A car is coming fast!  
a. **Watch**                      b. **Make**                      c. **Give**                      d. **Warn**
186. "St" is a/an ..... for "street".  
a. **reduce**                      b. **small**                      c. **shorten**                      d. **abbreviation**
187. There was a ..... last night and a lot of houses were destroyed by the wind.  
a. **blow**                      b. **thunder**                      c. **pour**                      d. **gale**
188. I really can't ..... my mind. Please, help me to choose between these two colours.  
a. **make up for**                      b. **make off**                      c. **make**                      d. **make up**
189. Since his ....., he has spent a lot of time working in his garden.  
a. **retirement**                      b. **death**                      c. **rewarding**                      d. **work**
190. I want to be like my math's teacher who has been a big ..... on me.  
a. **government**                      b. **support**                      c. **individual**                      d. **influence**
191. We didn't let the wind spoil our ..... at the beach.  
a. **enjoyment**                      b. **joyless**                      c. **enjoyable**                      d. **joyful**
192. You need to ..... this information because it is very old.  
a. **recycle**                      b. **release**                      c. **update**                      d. **repair**
193. I liked the story of the film. It was .....  
a. **horrible**                      b. **terrified**                      c. **terrific**                      d. **terrible**
194. I have an ..... to see the doctor at 5 o'clock.  
a. **applicant**                      b. **application**                      c. **appliance**                      d. **appointment**
195. The new ..... is hoped to sell well.  
a. **production**                      b. **product**                      c. **productive**                      d. **producer**
196. Many of the roads flooded because there was a ..... this morning.  
a. **downpour**                      b. **rain**                      c. **drought**                      d. **sandstorm**
197. The farmers had enormous ..... of corn this year.  
a. **harvests**                      b. **manifests**                      c. **garments**                      d. **valves**
198. My brother is an artist. He often makes ..... from wood.  
a. **scrapers**                      b. **styles**                      c. **extracts**                      d. **sculptures**
199. Military soldiers usually wear ..... uniforms.  
a. **distributive**                      b. **detective**                      c. **destructive**                      d. **distinctive**



200. Thousands of people moved slowly in the ..... of the King's funeral جنازة.  
a. **position**                      b. **prediction**                      c. **procession**                      d. **profession**
201. When I play football, I prefer the ..... of a goalkeeper.  
a. **post**                              b. **paint**                              c. **position**                              d. **location**
202. Every school must ..... its own way of working.  
a. **evacuate**                      b. **evoke**                              c. **evolve**                              d. **revolve**
203. All countries have their traditional ..... music.  
a. **folk**                              b. **solid**                              c. **water**                              d. **mission**
204. When my parents go out, it is my ..... to look after my younger brothers.  
a. **response**                      b. **charge**                              c. **responsibility**                      d. **responsible**
205. This plant grows well in tropical .....  
a. **regains**                      b. **regions**                              c. **reigns**                              d. **gains**
206. The ..... of the internet has taken place over the last thirty years.  
a. **evolution**                      b. **revolution**                              c. **evacuation**                              d. **cooperation**
207. Do you know the ..... between "however" and "whatever"?  
a. **dimension**                      b. **distinct**                              c. **distinctive**                              d. **distinction**
208. My brother is a very good .....  
a. **violin**                              b. **violins**                              c. **violence**                              d. **violinist**
209. I love reading novels, but my brother prefers reading ..... books.  
a. **fictional**                      b. **fiction**                              c. **convention**                              d. **non-fiction**
210. The room was very noisy and I found it hard to .....  
a. **concentrate**                      b. **manage**                              c. **toil**                                      d. **follow**
211. The sheep escaped through a ..... in the fence.  
a. **job**                                      b. **jeep**                                      c. **gap**                                      d. **grasp**
212. This truck is used to ..... goods from the factory to the airport.  
a. **translate**                      b. **transport**                              c. **transfuse**                              d. **transact**
213. She lost ..... due to studying for too long without a break.  
a. **communication**                      b. **collection**                              c. **confusion**                              d. **concentration**
214. The underground and buses are two forms of city .....  
a. **translation**                      b. **transaction**                              c. **transportation**                              d. **transfusion**
215. The president is hoped to complete as a ..... for another six years.  
a. **ruler**                                      b. **government**                              c. **baser**                                      d. **roller**
216. The underground is ..... to be one of the most important engineering projects.  
a. **continued**                      b. **considered**                              c. **condemned**                              d. **compiled**
217. The tunnel has a ..... of 7.6 metres.  
a. **machine**                              b. **drill**                                      c. **size**                                      d. **diameter**
218. Education is a/an ..... in the future of a country and its young people.  
a. **wish**                                      b. **community**                              c. **investment**                              d. **hope**
219. The Great Pyramid was a ..... building which took many years to complete.  
a. **massive**                              b. **tiny**                                      c. **hole**                                      d. **diameter**
220. Machines have to ..... a big hole to make the tunnel through the mountains.  
a. **fill**                                      b. **drill**                                      c. **sell**                                      d. **take**
221. The best way to the coast is to take the ..... through the mountains.  
a. **hotel**                                      b. **hostel**                                      c. **hole**                                      d. **tunnel**



222. The quickest way to the city centre is to ..... an underground train.  
 a. **give**                      b. **take**                      c. **make**                      d. **come**
223. Gustave Eiffel ..... the Eiffel Tower.  
 a. **engineered**              b. **invested**              c. **considered**              d. **paid**
224. The Sphinx is ..... near the Pyramids of Giza.  
 a. **positioned**              b. **grown**                      c. **lied**                      d. **pulsed**
225. There was a ..... during the storm and all the lights went off.  
 a. **power**                      b. **power cut**              c. **powerful**              d. **power station**
226. The statue is built on a hard ..... made of stone.  
 a. **rule**                      b. **role**                      c. **roll**                      d. **base**
227. The ..... of the rising sun illuminate the statue by day.  
 a. **rays**                      b. **rails**                      c. **trails**                      d. **trials**
228. The new bridge is made of ..... not wood.  
 a. **construct**              b. **concert**              c. **concentrate**              d. **concrete**
229. The solar ..... on the roof of our house gives us hot water all day.  
 a. **tunnel**                      b. **eclipse**                      c. **panel**                      d. **channel**
230. Scientists are trying to reduce the ..... of greenhouse gases.  
 a. **illumination**              b. **illusion**                      c. **emission**              d. **relation**
231. The beach has been ..... since they opened the hotel there. It has become busy.  
 a. **transplanted**              b. **translated**              c. **transferred**              d. **transformed**
232. The new car factory will ..... a lot of new jobs.  
 a. **create**                      b. **do**                      c. **take**                      d. **get**
233. My sister wants to play a traditional musical .....  
 a. **device**                      b. **instrument**              c. **machine**                      d. **tool**
234. We can calculate the age of a tree by counting its .....  
 a. **roots**                      b. **nuts**                      c. **rings**                      d. **leaves**
235. The ..... is the strongest part of the tree.  
 a. **bark**                      b. **fruit**                      c. **trunk**                      d. **leaf**
236. .... are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.  
 a. **Leaves**                      b. **Roots**                      c. **Fruits**                      d. **Rings**
237. The bank is going to open a new ..... in a neighbouring city.  
 a. **branch**                      b. **root**                      c. **leaf**                      d. **trunk**
238. Every year, trees grow extra ..... of new wood.  
 a. **rings**                      b. **roots**                      c. **barks**                      d. **leaves**
239. Every year, the cells under the bark of a tree ..... and become new wood.  
 a. **harden**                      b. **hard**                      c. **hardly**                      d. **hardened**
240. They are going to ..... the road because it is too narrow.  
 a. **widen**                      b. **strengthen**              c. **harden**                      d. **shorten**
241. The bridge is very weak so they will ..... it.  
 a. **strength**                      b. **strengthen**              c. **strong**                      d. **stronger**
242. I asked my mum to ..... my new trousers because they were too long.  
 a. **widen**                      b. **harden**                      c. **shorten**                      d. **lengthen**
243. The film is so popular that the queues to see it ..... every day.  
 a. **lengthen**                      b. **shorten**                      c. **widen**                      d. **strengthen**



244. The canal can be used by many ships for its great .....  
 a. **widen**                      b. **wide**                      c. **width**                      d. **wider**
245. Scientists can ..... a thin piece of wood from the tree without killing it.  
 a. **abstract**                      b. **interact**                      c. **extract**                      d. **attract**
246. They ..... the cost of new carpeting for the whole house.  
 a. **calculated**                      b. **collected**                      c. **commented**                      d. **consulted**
247. The patient is breathing oxygen through a .....  
 a. **tube**                      b. **cell**                      c. **ring**                      d. **leaf**
248. .... is the liquid that carries food in trees.  
 a. **Sop**                      b. **Soup**                      c. **Soap**                      d. **Sap**
249. Recycled paper can be used in making ..... boxes.  
 a. **cardboard**                      b. **carbon**                      c. **carter**                      d. **chart**
250. Car tyres and the bottoms of some shoes are made of .....  
 a. **roller**                      b. **rubber**                      c. **robber**                      d. **ruler**
251. People put ..... on their brushes to clean their teeth.  
 a. **turpentine**                      b. **toothpaste**                      c. **toothache**                      d. **turbine**
252. My mother's beautiful ..... necklace was a present from her uncle.  
 a. **pearl**                      b. **cave**                      c. **paper**                      d. **wood**
253. It is sad to hear that his injury will ..... him to stop playing football.  
 a. **forge**                      b. **forget**                      c. **reinforce**                      d. **force**
254. A well-known ..... is opening a new gym downtown soon.  
 a. **celebrity**                      b. **celebration**                      c. **certification**                      d. **celerity**
255. There has been a lot of ..... for the new project.  
 a. **publication**                      b. **pronunciation**                      c. **publicity**                      d. **policy**
256. I found out from my grandmother that I had a/an ..... who lived in Japan.  
 a. **ancestral**                      b. **central**                      c. **ancestor**                      d. **centre**
257. The book is a great ..... Everyone wants to read it.  
 a. **succeed**                      b. **successful**                      c. **successive**                      d. **success**
258. The bad news he told us was .....  
 a. **depressive**                      b. **depress**                      c. **depression**                      d. **depressed**
259. The company neglected to ..... the side effects of the new drug.  
 a. **publicize**                      b. **public**                      c. **republic**                      d. **bubble**
260. The government has threatened to use more ..... measures if necessary.  
 a. **force**                      b. **forceful**                      c. **forces**                      d. **forced**
261. Before their marriage, they had been ..... for years.  
 a. **corresponding**                      b. **responding**                      c. **reacting**                      d. **creating**
262. Wild animals often ..... in the day so it becomes difficult to see them.  
 a. **hide**                      b. **appear**                      c. **slide**                      d. **weed**
263. I don't like people playing ..... on me.  
 a. **plans**                      b. **demands**                      c. **tricks**                      d. **tactics**
264. .... traveled hundreds of miles to trade in the city.  
 a. **Markets**                      b. **Merchants**                      c. **Miracles**                      d. **Molecules**
265. I bought some medicine from the pharmacy to ..... my headache.  
 a. **care**                      b. **carve**                      c. **heal**                      d. **treat**



266. Soha always ..... to help her mother with the housework.  
a. **offers**                      b. **offends**                      c. **throws**                      d. **hides**
267. The baby died after he was stung by a .....  
a. **pearl**                      b. **scorpion**                      c. **venom**                      d. **merchant**
268. The thieves used ..... to get the money from the tourists.  
a. **trickery**                      b. **treasury**                      c. **treasure**                      d. **trumpets**
269. The trader wanted to examine the ..... before he bought it.  
a. **merchandise**                      b. **products**                      c. **goods**                      d. **valuables**
270. There's no need to get ..... ; there's plenty for everyone.  
a. **greedy**                      b. **steady**                      c. **grind**                      d. **gloomy**
271. The doctor said that these pills are the best ..... for headaches.  
a. **treatment**                      b. **medical**                      c. **profession**                      d. **trademark**
272. This ..... man tricks poor people and takes their simple things.  
a. **sophisticated**                      b. **cultured**                      c. **evil**                      d. **civil**
273. His ..... for money and power pushes him to harm others.  
a. **ready**                      b. **greed**                      c. **happiness**                      d. **illumination**
274. Sponge الإسفنج ..... water easily and quickly.  
a. **soaks**                      b. **absorbs**                      c. **sorts**                      d. **suburbs**
275. .... rays are harmful to the skin.  
a. **Violet**                      b. **Ultra**                      c. **Ultraviolet**                      d. **Violence**
276. In the desert, temperatures can be more than 50 degrees .....  
a. **centigrade**                      b. **certificate**                      c. **licence**                      d. **qualification**
277. You should not look ..... at the sun. This might make you blind.  
a. **strictly**                      b. **seriously**                      c. **eventually**                      d. **directly**
278. After sitting in the sun all afternoon, the children got .....  
a. **sunburn**                      b. **sunny**                      c. **solar**                      d. **panel**
279. Tourists usually find the ..... of the summer in Egypt difficult.  
a. **hot**                      b. **heater**                      c. **heated**                      d. **heat**
280. Sponge is ..... It takes in water quickly.  
a. **absorbing**                      b. **abortive**                      c. **absorbent**                      d. **absolute**
281. The bad ..... conditions forced the men to cancel the trip.  
a. **morpheme**                      b. **phonic**                      c. **phonetic**                      d. **atmospheric**
282. Lightning is a natural, but dangerous .....  
a. **phenomenon**                      b. **eclipse**                      c. **view**                      d. **sight**
283. .... storms destroyed many places in Asia last year.  
a. **Low**                      b. **Strong**                      c. **Aggressive**                      d. **Moderate**
284. Floods are dangerous natural .....  
a. **phenomenal**                      b. **phenols**                      c. **phenomenon**                      d. **phenomena**
285. It is very dry here, so here is very little .....  
a. **drought**                      b. **rainfall**                      c. **violence**                      d. **lightning**
286. The city was destroyed by ..... storms.  
a. **high**                      b. **violent**                      c. **cruel**                      d. **heavy**
287. We had a picnic ..... a large tree.  
a. **beneath**                      b. **low**                      c. **behave**                      d. **breathe**



288. My parents' support and help are ..... my success.  
a. behind b. besides c. beside d. beneath
289. .... is the light you see during an electrical storm.  
a. Thunder b. Phenomenon c. Lightning d. Drought
290. Storms are a common ..... in our part of the country.  
a. utterance b. occurrence c. phenomena d. deluge
291. Those trees have grown ..... tall in the last two years.  
a. phenomenal b. phenomenon c. phenomena d. phenomenally
292. .... rain and strong winds destroyed buildings all over the country.  
a. High b. Violent c. Serious d. Heavy
293. The pollution from all those factories must be very .....  
a. harmful b. harmless c. useless d. useful
294. An ..... storm hit the city and caused a lot of havoc دمار.  
a. electricity b. electrician c. electric d. electrical
295. In golf, it is best if you hit the ball .....  
a. hardly b. hardened c. harden d. hard
296. Please, be careful with this vase because it is very .....  
a. vocational b. virtual c. believable d. valuable
297. The children felt great ..... when their mother ordered them to stop playing.  
a. sad b. sadden c. sudden d. sadness
298. .... this boat to the tree to stop it floating away.  
a. Try b. Put c. Tie d. Retire
299. I'm sure our strong team will be able to ..... the opposing team.  
a. win b. gain c. lose d. defeat
300. My friends like the theatre, but ..... I prefer the cinema.  
a. personality b. person c. personal d. personally
301. Egypt is in ..... Africa.  
a. north b. the north c. north of d. northern
302. Standing at the edge of the ....., we watched the waves crash on the shore far below.  
a. shelf b. cliff c. stiff d. sniff
303. Folk music usually develops in local .....  
a. communities b. communications c. comments d. commuters
304. My brother works as a ..... assistant in a big company.  
a. sells b. sales c. cells d. sold
305. Doing ..... work is out of his good nature.  
a. value b. charitable c. loyal d. male
306. It is good to be ambitious but do not ..... people who are promoted before you.  
a. convey b. envy c. rescue d. stay
307. I get on well with all my ..... at work.  
a. faculties b. colleagues c. colleges d. compacts
308. People who are sociable get ..... others.  
a. well with b. on well c. on well with d. well on
309. Adults appreciate well the ..... of education.  
a. value b. valuable c. valueless d. valve



310. .... this button to let the machine start.  
 a. Suppress      b. Press      c. Depress      d. Contact
311. She ..... for a more positive role for women in society.  
 a. supported      b. advocated      c. argued      d. concentrated
312. Today we had the ..... of hosting such a great actor in our house.  
 a. horror      b. turmoil      c. honour      d. terror
313. I think electronic books will completely replace ..... books in the future.  
 a. paperback      b. package      c. packet      d. cardboard
314. The best thing about an ..... is that you can carry a whole library on you.  
 a. electronic      b. internet      c. e-book reader      d. enthusiasm
315. It's your support which enables me to bear the ..... of life.  
 a. birds      b. burdens      c. broadens      d. borders
316. A ..... is someone who does something alone.  
 a. solo      b. soul      c. soil      d. soloist
317. The council **مجلس المدينة** decided to ..... a new police station in the center of the city.  
 a. find      b. found      c. flow      d. grind
318. I will never accept this offer. I think it is .....  
 a. worthy      b. worthwhile      c. worthless      d. worth
319. We must take action to cut out harmful gases which vehicles .....  
 a. omit      b. admit      c. permit      d. emit
320. You should make a good ..... on your first day in a new job.  
 a. impression      b. expression      c. depression      d. opposition

## The Most Important Grammar Points in the Syllabus

أهم نقاط القواعد اللغوية في المنهج

### Unit (1)

#### 1. The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

\* المبني للمعلوم:

- \* A famous writer **wrote** this book a year ago.  
 \* I **didn't enjoy** last night's film.  
 \* Where **did you go** for your last holiday?

(1) الاثبات: يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل:

(2) النفي: يتكون من (مصدر + didn't).

(3) السؤال: يتكون من (مصدر + فاعل + did)

\* المبني للمجهول: يتكون من (was / were + P.P)

- \* This book **was written** by a famous writer.      \* My novel **was changed** six times.

\* الكلمات الدالة على الماضي البسيط:

- \* yesterday / مدة + ago / last + مدة / once = once upon a time ذات مرة / one day ذات يوم / in + سنة في الماضي / how long ago / when I was young / usually - always - every الماضي / in the past / أذا جاءت هذه الظروف في الماضي  
 \* I **usually visited** the zoo when I was young.

الحالات التي يستخدم فيها زمن الماضي البسيط: 1. للتعبير عن حدث بدا وانتهى في مدة معينة في الماضي

- \* I **had** my hair cut yesterday.      \* Alaa **moved** into a new flat last week.  
 2. للتعبير عن أحداث قد حدثت في الماضي بطبيعتها ولا نحتاج هنا إلى ذكر الوقت المحدد لوقوع الحدث.  
 \* Haqqi **was born** in a small district in Cairo.      \* Dr. Zewail **was educated** at Alex. university.  
 3. للتعبير عن حدث جاء بعد حدث آخر في الماضي (الحدث الثاني في أي حدثين متتابعين في الماضي دائماً يكون في زمن الماضي البسيط):  
 \* When they (had) **returned** home, they **knew** the whole story.



\* لاحظ ما يلي:

\* used to + مصدر

\* اسم + am / is / are + used to + V.ing

\* I used to drive very slowly. I drive faster now.

\* Ali is used to watching cartoons.

اعتاد علي شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الآن  
يعتاد علي شيء في الوقت الحاضر.

## 2. The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

\* المبنى للمعلوم: يتكون من (was / were + V.ing):

\* I was doing my homework at 6 o'clock yesterday evening.

\* What were you doing when I called? You sounded very busy.

\* المبنى للمجهول: يتكون من (was / were + being + P.P):

\* Somebody phoned me while the dinner was being cooked.

\* الكلمات الدالة على الماضي المستمر:

\* Yesterday evening / yesterday morning / at 7 yesterday / from five to seven yesterday / all last night.

\* حالات يستخدم فيها زمن الماضي المستمر: 1. يُستخدم القانون التالي للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي.

زمن الماضي المستمر, زمن الماضي المستمر + While/ As/ Just as/ When  
زمن الماضي المستمر + while/ as/ just as / when + زمن الماضي المستمر

\* While he was reading the novel, I was watching TV.

2. يُستخدم القانون التالي للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي وقطع حدوثه حدث آخر في زمن الماضي البسيط.

زمن الماضي البسيط, زمن الماضي المستمر + While/ As/ Just as  
زمن الماضي المستمر + while / as / just as + زمن الماضي البسيط

زمن الماضي المستمر, زمن الماضي البسيط + When  
زمن الماضي البسيط + when + زمن الماضي المستمر

\* As I was walking down the street, I met some old friends.

\* We were going back home when a beggar stopped us.

مقارنة بين (while) و (during)

اسم + During = (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل) = While + V.ing = While + فاعل + was / were + V.ing

\* While he was staying in China, he learned about the Chinese culture.

\* While staying in China, he learned about the Chinese culture.

\* During his stay in China, he learned about the Chinese culture.

## الأفعال التي لا يمكن استخدامها في أزمنة مستمرة Non-action verbs

\* الأفعال الآتية لا تُستخدم في أي زمن مستمر.

\* تُستخدم هذه الأفعال في الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر حتى وإن كانت الجملة تستلزم وجود ماضي مستمر.

\* تشمل هذه الأفعال: فعل (be) / أفعال الحواس / أفعال التفكير / أفعال التواصل / أفعال الملكية / أفعال العاطفة .....

جملة صحيحة	Mona was busy at seven p.m yesterday.
جملة خاطئة	Mona was being busy at seven p.m yesterday.
جملة صحيحة	In the past people thought the earth was round.
جملة خاطئة	In the past people were thinking the earth was round.



### 3. The past perfect tense زمن الماضي التام

\* المبنى للمعلوم: يتكون من (had + P.P):

\* As soon as he **had taken** the photograph, he showed it to his friend.

\* المبنى للمعلوم: يتكون من (had + been + P.P):

\* As soon as the photograph **had been taken**, it was shown to a friend.

\* الكلمات الدالة على الماضي التام:

\* **by** ..... + الماضي (by eight o'clock yesterday / by ten last night)

\* the day (night / week / month / year) **before**. / the **previous** day (night / week / year).

أهم القوانين التي تربط زمن الماضي التام بزمن الماضي البسيط (كحدثين متتابعين):

1. **After / As soon as / The moment** + زمن الماضي البسيط , زمن الماضي التام

\* **As soon as** I'd (had) finished one story, I **started** the next one.

2. **After + V.ing** / زمن ماضي بسيط , اسم / **After having + P.P**, زمن ماضي بسيط

**Having + P.P**, زمن ماضي بسيط

\* **After swimming** for a long time, he **took** a rest to be able to continue.

\* **After the accident**, he **wasn't** able to move.

\* **Having done** the shopping, my mum **came** back home.

3. **Before / By the time** + زمن الماضي البسيط + زمن الماضي التام

\* **Before** they **declared** the plan in public, they **had consulted** the legal committee.

4. **Before + V.ing** / اسم , زمن الماضي التام

\* **Before writing** the composition, she **made** up some main ideas.

5. **It was only when / It wasn't until** + الماضي البسيط **that** + الماضي التام

لم يكد ..... حتي .....

\* **It wasn't until** she **had checked** all the prices **that** she **bought** the dress.

6. زمن الماضي التام + **until / till** + زمن الماضي البسيط المنفي

\* I **didn't give** him a hand **until** I **had made** sure he was in a real fix.

7. **hardly** ..... **when** ..... / **scarcely** ..... **when** ..... / **no sooner** ..... **than** .....

\* تستخدم تلك الصيغ الثلاثة كما يلي: (مثلاً عندما نستخدم **hardly** ..... **when** .....)

زمن الماضي البسيط + **when** + ..... **hardly** + **P.P** + فاعل

زمن الماضي البسيط + **when** + ..... **P.P** + فاعل + **hardly**

\* I **had hardly** **heard** their voices outside **when** I **rushed** out of the house.

\* **Hardly** **had I** **heard** their voices outside **when** I **rushed** out of the house.

8. **On / immediately on / immediately after** + V.ing, زمن الماضي البسيط

\* **On seeing** the fire, she **shouted** for rescue.

الحالات المختلفة لـ (when):

\* لها أكثر من قانون عندما تربط حدثين حدثاً في الماضي.

1. **When = While** + ماضي مستمر , ماضي مستمر

(حدثين كانا مستمرين في الماضي ولم يقطع أحدهما الآخر)

\* **When** she **was watching** TV, her husband **was reading** a book.

2. **When = While** + ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر

(حدثين كان أحدهما مستمراً في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر)

\* **When** he **was driving** home, he **made** a terrible accident.

3. **When = After** + ماضي بسيط , ماضي تام

(حدثين تم أحدهما بعد الآخر في الماضي)

\* **When** he **had finished** his work, he **got** a permission to leave.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

\* عندما تُتبع (when) بزمان الماضي البسيط، يتم اختيار زمن الجملة اللاحقة بها حسب الأوزان الآتية:

ماضي بسيط	حدث و انتهى (حدث وقتئذ أو بعدئذ)
ماضي مستمر	كان يحدث (غالبا انقطع)
ماضي تام	كان قد حدث (قبل ذلك)

- \* When I reached the station, the train left. (I caught it) غادر القطار المحطة بعد أن وصلت ولذلك لحقت به.
- \* When I reached the station, the train had left. (I missed it) كان القطار قد غادر المحطة قبل أن أصل إليها ولذلك لم ألحق به.
- \* When I met Sami, he was going to the hospital. I offered to go with him. عندما قابلت سامي بالأمس، كان ذاهباً إلى المستشفى فعرضت عليه أن اذهب معه إلى هناك.

### Unit (2)

#### زمن المضارع التام The Present Perfect Tense

- \* **المبنى للمعلوم:** يتكون من (have / has + P.P):
- \* He has taken his car to the garage. \* She hasn't finished ironing the suits yet.

- \* **المبنى للمجهول:** يتكون من (have / has + been + P.P):
- \* Something is wrong with his car, so it has been taken to the garage.

**الحالات التي يستخدم فيها زمن المضارع التام:**

1. للتعبير عن حدث انتهى وما زال له تأثير في الحاضر.
- \* Ahmed has hurt his leg, so he can't play football today.
- \* They are happy because they have won the cup.
2. أحداث تمت في الماضي ولا نعرف متى بالضبط.
- \* I have visited France twice before. \* Samy has been to England three times.

**\* الكلمات الدالة على المضارع التام:**

1. so far = up to (till) now = up till now = till now = until now **حتى الآن** / how long المدة / over time عبر العصور / over the years / throughout (over) the ages علي مر السنين / علي مر الزمن

- \* Mona has studied four lessons up till now. \* How long have you been ill?

just	توا - حالا	بين have/ has والتصريف الثالث للفعل	الإثبات
already	بالفعل	بين have/ has والتصريف الثالث للفعل	الإثبات

- \* Samia has just tidied the bedroom. \* I have already corrected the mistakes in the composition.

recently	مؤخراً / حديثاً	في نهاية الجملة	إثبات
lately	مؤخراً / حديثاً	في نهاية الجملة	إثبات / نفي

- \* Your brother has been ill recently (lately). / \* We haven't received any news about them lately.

ever	من قبل / فيما سبق	بين have/ has والتصريف الثالث للفعل	سؤال
never	أبداً	بين have/ has والتصريف الثالث للفعل	نفي

- \* Have you ever visited the Egyptian Museum? No, I have never visited the Egyptian Museum. .... / No, never.

**ملحوظة:** يمكن استخدام (never) و (ever) بالتبادل للتعبير عن الأفضلية لشخص ما أو شيء ما كما يلي:

الشخص/الشيء + اسم + صفة + such a (an) + never + P.P + have (has) + فاعل  
 الشخص/الشيء + (than) صفة مقارنة + اسم + never + P.P + have (has) + فاعل  
 have (has) + ever + P.P + فاعل + ..... صفة تفضيل + is + the + الشخص / الشيء

- \* I have never seen such an exciting film, Brave Heart.  
 I have never seen a more exciting film than Brave Heart.  
 Brave Heart is the most exciting film I have ever seen.



yet	بعد / حتي الآن	في نهاية الجملة	النفي / السؤال
not yet	ليس بعد	بين have/ has والتصريف الثالث للفعل	نفي

\* Mona **hasn't** finished the work yet.

\* Have the servants **prepared** lunch yet?

\* Hanan has not yet woken up.

\* Haven't they come back yet?

\* لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام (yet) و (already) في السؤالين التاليين:

\* Have you finished your homework **yet**?

\* Have you finished your homework **already**? You're wonderful.

\* نستخدم (yet) في السؤال المراد منه الاستفسار عن معلومة. \* نستخدم (already) في السؤال المراد منه الاندهاش من شيء.

since	منذ .....	في نهاية الجملة	إثبات / نفي
for	لمدة .....	في نهاية الجملة	إثبات / نفي

\* I **have assisted** my dad in his work **since** 2008. / \* We **haven't seen** our friends for a long time.

عندما تربط (since) (منذ) أو (since then) (منذ ذلك الحين) حدثين أحدهما في زمن المضارع التام (المضارع التام المستمر) والآخر في زمن الماضي البسيط.

زمن المضارع التام (المضارع التام المستمر) + since / ever since , زمن الماضي البسيط  
زمن المضارع التام (المضارع التام المستمر) + since then + زمن الماضي البسيط

\* I have enjoyed reading novels **since** I was a young child.

\* I haven't seen my uncle **since** he travelled to France.

\* Hossam went to live in Italy. **Since then** I haven't contacted him.

\* She has been working for this travel agency **since** she graduated.

يمكن استخدام (since) مع مدة غير محددة من الوقت كما يلي.

جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + since + (مدة زمنية غير محددة) + It is (has been)

?جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + How long is it since

\* **It's nine years since** I met my French teacher.

\* **How long is it since** you last had a day - off?

\* لاحظ استخدام (been) أو (gone) للتعبير عن الذهاب إلى الأماكن :

have/ has **been to** + مكان

(ذهب إلى المكان وعاد منه)

have/ has **gone to** + مكان

(ذهب إلى مكان وما زال هناك)

\* Nourhan **has gone to** America. She hasn't come back yet.

\* Sami **has been to** Canada. He is already back here.

## Unit (3)

### 1. The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

#### 1. Usage استخدام المستقبل البسيط

يستخدم (زمن المستقبل البسيط) في التعبير عن حدث سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

\* I **will do** the housework **later today**.

\* We **are celebrating** my brother's birthday **tomorrow**.

#### 2. Tense Markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل البسيط

\* in the future / **in** + سنة في المستقبل / tomorrow / tonight / soon / later / **next** year / **when** I grow up .

#### 3. Future Simple forms الصيغ المختلفة التي تستخدم للتعبير عن المستقبل البسيط

##### 1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

\* يُستخدم للتعبير عن المستقبل عند وجود حدث مستقبلي سوف يتم حسب جدول زمني في المستقبل.

\* يُستخدم مع مواعيد القطارات والأتوبيسات والطائرات والبرامج .... الخ. / وأيضاً مع المقابلات والمواعيد الرسمية.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

- \* My train **arrives** in Alex at 8 tomorrow morning. \* The lesson **doesn't finish** until three o'clock.

### 2. The Present Continuous Tense الزمن المضارع المستمر

\* يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث مرتب في المستقبل.

- \* The couple **are getting** married next week. Everything is **prepared**.  
 \* I **'m watching** the match at the stadium next Friday. I've **already booked** a ticket.  
 \* I **can't see you tomorrow**, I **'m meeting** a friend off at the airport.  
 \* Walaa **is travelling** to London next Spring.

### 3. am - is - are + going to + مصدر الفعل

1. وجود حدث مخطط (مقرر / هناك نية) لحدوثه في المستقبل:

- \* I've **decided** that I **am going to do** more exercise in the future.  
 \* She **is going to buy** a new computer. She has already made her **plan**.

2. للتعبير عن تنبؤ له دليل واضح.

- \* **The sky is cloudy**. I think it's **going to rain**. \* **Watch out**. The baby **is going to fall**.

\* لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين التاليين:

- \* My brother is very clever. I think he **will be** a doctor.  
 \* My brother is revising well. I think he's **going to pass** the test.  
 \* الصفات الدائمة ليست أدلة بينما المواقف المؤقتة أدلة واضحة.  
 (الذكاء صفة دائمة فليست دليل على أن صاحبها سيصبح طبيب أما المراجعة الجيدة في هي دليل واضح على اجتياز الاختبار بنجاح).

### 4. will + مصدر الفعل

أ. الحقائق المستقبلية: كالتعبير عن عُمر الأشخاص والأشياء في وقت معين في المستقبل:

- \* This school **will be** ten years old this year. \* Father is forty nine now. Next year he **will be** fifty.

ب. القرارات السريعة التي تتخذ أثناء الكلام أو عندما يتطوع المتحدث لفعل شيء ما كقرار سريع منه:

- \* That's the phone. I **will answer** it. \* Someone is knocking at the door. I **will open** it.

ج. العروض والطلبات (offers and requests):

- \* I'll **go shopping** with you if you like. \* **Will you help** me make dinner, please?

د. الوعود والتهديدات (promises and threats):

- \* I promise I'll **contact** you in two days' time. \* Don't worry. I **will lend** you the money you need.

هـ. التحذير (warning):

- \* **Do (You should do)** what I say **otherwise** you **will be** in trouble.

و. التنبؤات التي لا يُذكر لها دليل (predictions with no evidence):

- \* I think it **will be** hot today. \* Father **will be** home in ten minutes.

ز. توزيع الوظائف والمهام والأدوار (بين المتحدث وأفراد آخرين):

- \* You sweep the floor and I **will cook** the dinner. \* You do the typing and I **will check** it later.

ح. للتوقع من يكون شخص ما أو ماذا يكون شيء ما:

- \* I **will open** the door. That **will be** dad.

ط. تُستخدم (will) لتعني (ربما يحدث / قد يحدث) أي أنها تساوي (may):

- \* Take the medicine. You **will (may) need** it.

ي. تكون (will) الأولوية على باقي صيغ المستقبل البسيط في الحالة الشرطية الأولى (if):

- \* If you **give** more attention to your study, you **will get** a good grade.

ك. تُستخدم (will) بعد أو مع الكلمات والتعبيرات التالية:

I'm sure / surely	I think (believe)	perhaps (maybe)	never / often
certain / certainly	I suppose (I assume)	It's probable (probably )	always / usually
I hope	I expect	I predict	I promise



- \* I'm sure the match will be really exciting.
- \* Perhaps they will send you a letter soon.

- \* You will probably stay in prison for life.
- \* The sun will always illuminate the earth.

هام جداً: الروابط الزمنية والشرطية المستقبلية:

\* يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط بعد الجمل الزمنية والشرطية المستقبلية.

\* نقوم باستخدام القوانين التالية للتعبير عن أي حدثين سوف يتتابعان في المستقبل.

After  
The Moment  
As soon as  
Once بمجرد أن  
Before  
By the time  
When  
While  
If / Unless

زمن  
المضارع  
البسيط

أو

زمن  
المضارع  
التام

- \* will + مصدر
- \* shall + مصدر
- \* am/ is/ are + going to + مصدر.
- \* am/ is/ are + V.ing.

- \* should / ought to / had better + مصدر.
- \* can / may / might + مصدر.
- \* must / have to / has to + مصدر.
- \* فعل في صيغة الأمر

- \* As soon as Ali gets home, he is going to have dinner.

- \* When you finish doing this work, you can leave.

مصدر + will (won't) + فاعل  
مصدر / don't مصدر

till / until  
إلا - حتى

المضارع البسيط  
المضارع التام

- \* She won't leave till you give her a permission.
- \* Don't press this button until the light turns green.

## 2. The future continuous tense زمن المستقبل المستمر

\* يتكون من (will + be + V.ing) أو (may + be + V.ing):

- \* When he's 21, he will be working in a bank.

الحالات التي يستخدم فيها زمن المستقبل المستمر:

1. للتنبيه بحدث سيكون مستمراً في الحدث في وقت معين في المستقبل:

- \* Don't call me at nine tomorrow because I will be sleeping / may be sleeping.

2. للتنبيه بحدث سيكون مستمراً في المستقبل ثم يقطعه حدث آخر أو مدة معينة.

- \* I will be having my dinner when they come to visit us tomorrow.

D. Tense markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل المستمر:

- \* at ..... o'clock tomorrow / from ..... to ..... tomorrow / this time tomorrow /
- \* at (by) this time tomorrow / at midnight tonight / all tomorrow morning (evening).
- \* this time next week / at this time next week / at this month next year.

\* عندما ننتبأ بحدث مستقبلي يستغرق وقت قصير نستخدم المستقبل البسيط (مصدر + will).

\* عندما ننتبأ بحدث مستقبلي يستغرق وقت طويل نستخدم المستقبل المستمر (will + be + V.ing).

- \* I think our team will win next week's competition.

- \* At ten next Friday, I'll be flying to Washington. My flight leaves at 9:30.

## 3. The future perfect tense زمن المستقبل التام

\* المبنى للمعلوم: يتكون من (will + have + P.P):

- \* By 2100, the government will have built hundreds more towns.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

\* المبنى للمجهول: يتكون من (will + have + been + P.P):

\* By 2100, hundreds more towns **will have been built**.

C. Tense markers الكلمات الدالة على زمن المستقبل التام:

\* by + مدة في المستقبل / before + مدة في المستقبل / by the end of + مدة في المستقبل / in + ..... + time (period) /

D. Usage الحالات التي يتم فيها استخدام زمن المستقبل التام:

\* يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سيكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر أو قبل وقت معين في المستقبل.

\* By this time next week, Yourself **will have visited** his grandparents.

\* She hopes she **will have found** a good job **by the age of 30**.

لاحظ الفرق بين المستقبل البسيط والمستقبل التام في الأمثلة التالية:

1. In 2026, the population of Egypt **will grow** to about 95 million.

By 2026, the population of Egypt **will have grown** to about 95 million.

### Unit (4)

#### عبارات الوصل Relative clauses

\* هناك نوعان من الجمل الموصولة:

1. جمل الوصل الأساسية التي تعطينا معلومات رئيسية لا يمكن الاستغناء عنها، ولا يمكن وضع تلك الجمل بين فاصلتين.

\* This is the photo **which / that shows our house**.

\* The city **where I was born** is in the north of Egypt.

2. جمل الوصل الغير أساسية التي تعطينا معلومات غير هامة ويمكن الاستغناء عنها، ويتم وضع تلك الجمل بين فاصلتين.

\* لا يُستخدم ضمير الوصل **that** في هذا النوع من الجمل.

\* This photo, **which I took**, shows our house.

\* Aswan, **which is in the south of Egypt**, is where I was born.

#### ضمائر الوصل التي تبدأ بها الجملة الموصولة

1. للعاقل:

\* The girl **who / that was** injured in the accident is in hospital.

فعل + فاعل عاقل + **who / that**

فاعل + **whom / who / that** + مفعول عاقل

\* This is the child **whom / who / that** my sister helped yesterday.

2. For things, animals and ideas (غير العاقل):

\* I work in a company **which / that** makes spare parts for cars.

\* The car **which / that** I sold last year was better than this one.

\* Mona was seriously ill, **which** made her unable to go to school.

فعل + فاعل غير عاقل + **which / that**

فاعل آخر + **which / that** + مفعول غير عاقل

فعل / فاعل آخر + **which** + الفكرة

#### مقارنة بين (that) و (who / whom / which)

1. لا نستطيع استخدام (that) مع جمل الوصل التي تعطي معلومات إضافية والتي توضع بعد فاصلة.

جملة صحيحة Cairo, **which** is massive, is a polluted city.

جملة خاطئة Cairo, **that** is massive, is a polluted city.

all / any / every / few / many / no / none / some / little / much

2. يُفضل استخدام (that) في وجود:

\* All **that** we need is peace.

\* Everything **that** you ordered has been delivered.

جملة صحيحة That was **all that** he wanted me to do.

جملة خاطئة That was **all what (all which)** he wanted me to do.



جملة صحيحة	Is that the book <b>that</b> you were looking for?
جملة خاطئة	Is that the book <b>for that</b> you were looking for?

3. For possession الملكية:

مملوك + **whose** + مالك (عاقِل / غير عاقِل)

\* The nurse, **whose** responsibility is to look after young children, has worked here for ten years.

4. For places الأماكن:

\* هناك حالتين لاستخدام ضمير وصل مع الأماكن:  
أ. عند وجود نشاط في المكان:

- \* This is the city **where** I was born.
- \* This is the city **in which** I was born.
- \* This is the city **which / that** I was born **in**.

..... فاعل آخر + **where** + المكان  
..... فاعل آخر + **in / at / to which** + المكان  
..... فاعل آخر + **in / at / to** + **which / that** + المكان

.... فاعل آخر + **which / that** + المكان

ب. عند عدم وجود نشاط في المكان: (التعامل مع المكان كشيء غير عاقِل):

\* This is the house **which / that** my father bought last year.

5. For times الأزمان (الفترة الزمنية):

\* هناك حالتين لاستخدام ضمير وصل مع الأزمان:  
أ. عند وجود نشاط في الزمان:

- \* Summer is the season **when / that** I go to the beach.
- \* Summer is the season **in which** I go to the beach.
- \* Summer is the season **which** I go to the beach **in**.

..... فاعل آخر + **when / that** + الزمان  
..... فاعل آخر + **in / at / on which** + الزمان  
..... فاعل آخر + **in / at / on** + **which** + الزمان

.... فاعل آخر + **which / that** + الزمان

ب. عند عدم وجود نشاط في الزمان: (التعامل مع الزمان كشيء غير عاقِل):

\* Spring is the season **which / that** I love most of all.

تأكد أنه إذا كان هناك فعلاً بعد ضمير الوصل اللاحق للمكان أو الزمان فإنه من المستحيل أن يكون أي نشاط قد حدث في هذا المكان أو الزمان وبالتالي يكون ضميري الوصل المناسب للمكان أو الزمان هنا هما (**which / that**).

\* Alex is the city **which / that** attracts me.

\* Dubai, **which is** a big city, is an important trade centre.

فعل + **which / that** + المكان / الزمان

6. what = the thing which (that):

\* We didn't expect **what** happened.

\* Don't tell the headmaster **what** he had said.

\* **What** makes me love my job is that I meet a lot of foreigners.

كيفية استخدام حروف الجر قبل الضميرين (whom / which)

1. Places and Times مع المكان والزمان:

المكان + **in / at / to which**

الزمان + **in / at / on which**

\* This is the house **in which** my mother lived when she was young.

\* That is the stadium **at which** we saw the match. \* Monday is the day **on which** I take a holiday.

2. People, animals and things مع الناس والحيوانات والأشياء:

\* اختيار حرف الجر الذي يسبق (whom / which) يعتمد على المعنى الذي تقصده:

\* This is the article **in which** she writes about science.

(التي فيها)

\* She asked me where I had been, **to which** I replied, "It's a secret".

(الذي عليه)

\* I'm going to a meeting **at which** we're going to discuss women's role in society.

(التي فيها)

\* He says he's busy, **by which** he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.

(التي بها)

\* They said something very cruel, **for which** I think they should apologize.

(الذي عليه)



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

### كيفية حذف ضمير الوصل

1. نستطيع حذف ضمير الوصل الذي يعود علي مفعول (who / whom / which / that) دون أن نُعوض عنه:  
\* The car **which** he bought is a wonderful one. = The car **XXX** he bought is a wonderful one.
2. نستطيع حذف ضمير الوصل الذي يعود علي فاعل بشرط أن نُعوض عنه كالاتي:

فعل في المعلوم + **who/ which / that** + فاعل (الذي يفعل) = **V.ing** + فاعل  
 فعل في المجهول + **who/ which / that** + فاعل (الذي يُفعل) = **P.P.** + فاعل

- \* The boy **who was sitting** (sitting) in the last row made a lot of noise.
- \* Paper **which is made** (made) from recycled materials is very cheap.

## Unit (5)

### أدوات التوزيع (محددات) (Distributives (Distributive determiners)

- \* عندما نقوم باستخدام اي محدد (أداة توزيع) عليك أن تتأكد من التالي:
- 1. المعنى والدلالة: فكل أداة لها معنى مستقل ودلالة مستقلة كما يلي:

all	كل (جميع عناصر مجموعة ما)
half	نصف (لنصف المجموع من عدد ما أو كمية ما)
both	كلاً من (عنصرين اثنين فقط)
every / each	كل واحد (لأحد عناصر من بين مجموعة ما)
either	أي من (أحد من عنصرين اثنين)
neither	لا أحد من (لا أحد من بين عنصرين اثنين)
none of	لا احد بين مجموعة ما

- \* اي ولد من الولدين / either boy / كلا الولدين / both the boys / نصف الأولاد / half the boys / كل الأولاد / All the boys
- \* لا أحد من الأولاد / none of the boys / لا ولد من الولدين / neither boy / كل ولد من الأولاد / every boy (each boy)
- 2. نوع الاسم الذي يتبع أداة التوزيع التي تستخدمها فهناك:
- \* أدوات تتبع باسم مفرد وأدوات تتبع باسم جمع.
- \* أدوات تتبع باسم يعد وأدوات تتبع باسم لا يعد.

جملة صحيحة	Half the boys have passed.
جملة خاطئة	Half the boy have passed.
جملة صحيحة	Each of the boys was happy.
جملة خاطئة	Each of the salad was delicious.

- 3. نوع الفعل (مفرد أم جمع) الذي يتبع أداة التوزيع والاسم الذي يليها:

جملة صحيحة	Half the boys have passed.
جملة خاطئة	Half the boys has passed.
جملة صحيحة	Either of the boys <u>is</u> suitable.
جملة خاطئة	Either of the boys <u>are</u> suitable.

- 4. أي من الأدوات السابقة يحتاج (of) وأياها لا يحتاج.

جملة صحيحة	Each of the boys <u>is</u> suitable.
جملة خاطئة	Every of the boys <u>is</u> suitable.

- 5. كيف ومتي تُتبع الأدوات السابقة بـ (of).

جملة صحيحة	Each of the boys <u>is</u> suitable.
جملة خاطئة	Each the boys <u>is</u> suitable.

- 6. هناك أدوات تعطي معنى مثبت وأخرى تعطي معنى منفي:
- والتي تعطي معنى منفي مثل (neither) مثلاً لا تأتي في نفي:



جملة صحيحة	I <u>met</u> neither of them.
جملة خاطئة	I <u>didn't meet</u> neither of them.

7. هناك أدوات يسهل التعرف عليها عند وجود بعض اللواحق التي تليها:

nor يرتبط بـ neither \*

or يرتبط بـ either \*

and يرتبط بـ both \*

## Unit (6)

### العلاقة بين السبب والتأثير (النتيجة) Cause and effect (Result) relationship

1. so ..... that .....

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بالطرق التالية: لتعطي معني (..... جداً لدرجة أن .....).

\* أولاً: مع الصفات:

جملة كاملة + that ..... صفة + so + be + فاعل

\* الصفة التي تأتي بعد (so) لا يمكن أن تتبع باسم. \* الجملة التي تتبع (that) "جملة النتيجة" تكون إما مثبتة أو منفية.

\* The food was so delicious that I ate hungrily. \* He was so weak that he couldn't walk alone.

\* ثانياً: مع الظروف:

جملة كاملة + that ..... ظرف + so + فعل + فاعل

\* Ali ran so slowly that he missed the train.

2. such ..... that .....

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بالطرق التالية: لتعطي معني (..... جداً لدرجة أن .....).

\* أولاً: مع الصفات: لابد أن تتبع الصفة بعد (such) باسم:

جملة كاملة + that ..... اسم مفرد يعد + صفة + a/an + such + be + فاعل

جملة كاملة + that ..... اسم مفرد لا يعد / اسم جمع + صفة + such + be + فاعل

\* This is such a good paragraph that you will get the full mark for it.

\* Ali is such a clever student that he can pass all the exams.

3. too ..... to .....

\* تستخدم هذه الصيغة مع الصفات والظروف بالطرق التالية: لتعطي معني (..... جداً لدرجة ألا .....).

مصدر الفعل + to + (مفعول + for) صفة + too + be + فاعل

مصدر الفعل + to + ظرف + too + فعل + فاعل

\* معني الجملة التابعة لـ (to) يكون منفي ... أي يعطينا معني (لدرجة ألا .....).

\* The sea is too cold (for us) to swim in.

\* He was too weak to walk alone.

البحر بارد جداً لدرجة أننا لا يمكننا أن نسبح فيه.  
كان ضعيفاً جداً لدرجة أنه لم يستطع المشي وحده.

4. enough ..... to .....

\* تستخدم هذه الصيغة مع الصفات والظروف والاسماء بالطرق التالية: لتعطي معني (..... بالشكل الكافي لدرجة أن .....).

\* Ali is fast enough to be able to win the race.

\* Ali runs fast enough to be able to win the race.

\* Ali has enough speed to be able to win the race.

مصدر + to + (مفعول + for) + enough + صفة + be + فاعل

مصدر + to + enough + ظرف + فعل + فاعل

مصدر + to + اسم + enough + فعل + فاعل

## Units (7 / 8)

### صيغ المبني للمجهول Passive forms:

ثانياً: كيفية تكوين المبني للمجهول في الأزمنة المختلفة:

الزمن (الفعل)	التكوين في المعلوم	التكوين في المجهول
1. زمن المضارع البسيط	التصريف الأول للفعل	am / is / are + P.P



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

2. زمن المضارع المستمر	am/ is/ are + V.ing	am / is / are + being + P.P
3. زمن المستقبل البسيط	will + مصدر	will + be + P.P
4. زمن المستقبل المستمر	will + be + V.ing	will + be + P.P
5. زمن المستقبل التام	will have + P.P	will + have + been + P.P
7. الأفعال الناقصة في المضارع والمستقبل	المصدر + الفعل الناقص	be + P.P + الفعل الناقص
8. زمن المضارع التام	have / has + P.P	have / has + been + P.P
9. زمن المضارع التام المستمر	have / has + been + V.ing	have / has + been + P.P
10. زمن الماضي البسيط	التصريف الثاني للفعل	was / were + P.P
11. زمن الماضي المستمر	was / were + V.ing	was / were + being + P.P
12. زمن الماضي التام	had + P.P	had + been + P.P
13. زمن الماضي التام المستمر	had + been + V.ing	had + been + P.P
14. الأفعال الناقصة في الماضي	have + P.P + الفعل الناقص	have + been + P.P + الفعل الناقص

### \* Examples:

We <i>always</i> take the bottles for recycling.	المبني للمعلوم
The bottles are <i>always</i> taken for recycling.	المبني للمجهول
The teacher <i>is</i> teaching the children in classroom 1.	المبني للمعلوم
The children are <i>being</i> taught in classroom 1.	المبني للمجهول
You <i>should</i> have done your homework an hour earlier.	المبني للمعلوم
Your homework <i>should</i> have been done an hour earlier.	المبني للمجهول
You <i>must</i> take these broken toys back to the shop.	المبني للمعلوم
These broken toys <i>must</i> be taken back to the shop.	المبني للمجهول

\* عند وجود ظرف (حال) داخل جملة المبني للمجهول: يُفضل أن يوضع الظرف بعد (be): أي بين (be) والتصريف الثالث (P.P):

Smoking <u>affects</u> health badly.	لمبني للمعلوم
Health <u>is</u> badly <u>affected</u> by smoking.	لمبني للمجهول

### الأفعال اللازمة Intransitive verbs

\* الأفعال اللازمة لا يمكن استخدامها في المبني للمجهول لأنها لا يمكن أن تتبع بمفعول:

\* الأفعال اللازمة تسمح فقط بتكوين صيغة منها علي وزن (يُفعل) .. / لا يمكن تكوين صيغة من الفعل اللازم علي وزن (يُفعل) ..

\* نحن نستطيع أن نقول:

\* Water comes up to the surface through a hole.

الماء (يَصْعَدُ) إلي السطح خلال ثقب.

\* لا يمكننا أن نقول:

\* Water is come up to the surface through a hole.

(المعني هنا لا يُلِيق)

المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول لأفعال التبليغ (الأقوال والإقتراضات) Active and passive voices of reporting verbs

\* أولاً: أشهر أفعال التبليغ:

think (believe)	يعتقد (يظن)	say	يقول
suppose	يفترض	allege (claim)	يزعم / يدعي
report	يبلغ	consider	يعتبر

جملة + (that) + فعل التبليغ + الفاعل

\* People think (that) Mona is honest.

جملة + (that) + It + be + P.P

\* It's thought (that) Mona is honest.

\* ثانياً: كيفية تكوين المبني للمعلوم لأفعال التبليغ:

\* ثانياً: كيفية تكوين المبني للمجهول لأفعال التبليغ:

يوجد طريقتين لذلك:

أ. الطريقة الأولى:



مضارع - مستقبل - ماضي (مضارع + be + P.P + to + مصدر)  
مضارع - مستقبل - ماضي (مضارع + be + P.P + to + be + P.P)

\* Mona is thought to be honest.

مضارع تام - ماضي (مضارع + be + P.P + to + have + P.P)  
مضارع تام - ماضي (مضارع + be + P.P + to + have + been + P.P)

\* We believe that he has recovered from his illness.

It's believed that he has recovered from his illness.

He is believed to have recovered (to recover) from his illness.

### تركيبات المعلوم والمجهول المُعقد Complex Active Passive Constructions

صيغة المبنى للمعلوم	صيغة المبنى للمجهول
مصدر الفعل + تركيبة لغوية	be + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
مصدر الفعل + to + تركيبة لغوية	to + be + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
V.ing. + تركيبة لغوية	being + P.P + تركيبة لغوية
P.P + تركيبة لغوية	been + P.P + تركيبة لغوية

\* أمثلة (معلوم / مجهول) لتراكيب اللغة المعقدة:

I <u>want</u> you to help me.	المبنى للمعلوم
I <u>want</u> to be helped.	المبنى للمجهول
They left without the police <u>seeing</u> them.	المبنى للمعلوم
They left without <u>being seen</u> by the police.	المبنى للمجهول

## Unit (9)

### التعبير عن السببية باستخدام Causative: have and get

أولاً: السببية في المبنى للمعلوم:

\* تعني أن يقوم شخص بجعل (السماح -) (إجبار) (الطلب من) (إقناع) شخص آخر أن يفعل شيئاً ما:

..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + have + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)  
..... مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + get + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)

\* The teacher had us do some extra work today.

\* The teacher got us to do some extra work today.

..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + make + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)  
..... مصدر الفعل + مفعول + let + فاعل (تعني: يسمح)  
..... مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + cause + فاعل (تعني: يجعل)

\* She made her sister follow her instructions as if she were a child.

\* I let them take as much money as possible.

\* What caused you to change your mind?

ثانياً: السببية في المبنى للمجهول:

\* تعني أن يتم عمل (فعل) شيء ما عن طريق شخص آخر وليس عن طريقنا:

..... P.P + مفعول + have + فاعل (تعني: يحصل علي)  
..... P.P + مفعول + get + فاعل (تعني: يحصل علي)

\* I had my hair cut yesterday.

\* We will get our car repaired at the mechanic's.

(لست أنا من قام بقص شعري)

(لسنا نحن من سيصلح السيارة بل الميكانيكي)



## Units (10 / 11 / 12)

## خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية من المباشر إلى غير المباشر

## 1. Changing the reporting verb تحويل فعل القول

\* تتحول أفعال القول من المباشر إلى غير المباشر كما يلي:

فعل قول في غير المباشر	فعل قول في المباشر	فعل قول في غير المباشر	فعل قول في المباشر
say	say	say to	tell
says	says	says to	tells
said	said	said to	told

\* He said to me, "I'm tired today."

\* He told me (that) he was tired that day.

\* هناك أفعال قول أخرى يمكن استخدامها لتبليغ الجمل الخبرية مثل:

mention	يذكر (يصرح بـ)	claim / allege	يزعم - يدعى
admit / confess	يعترف بـ	indicate	يشير بأن
decide	يقرر	promise	يعد

\* She said, "I'll be home tomorrow morning."

\* She promised that she would be home the next morning.

## 2. Changing the inverted commas تحويل علامات الترقيم

\* نحذف الفاصلة وعلامات التنصيص ونضيف (that) بعد فعل القول. \* نستطيع حذف كلمة (that) بعد فعل القول ...

\* Ali says, "I'm ready for the exam."

\* Ali says (that) he is ready for the exam.

\* لا نستطيع حذف (that) بعد أفعال معينة مثل: reply / answer / shout / continue

\* When I asked where he was, he replied that he was in the club.

## 3. Changing the pronouns of the addresser and the addressee تغيير ضمائر المتكلم وضمائر المخاطب

\* نحول الضميرين (I / We) حسب المتكلم. / نحول الضمير (you) حسب المخاطب.

\* ضمائر الغائب (He / She / It / One / They) لا تتغير.

\* من الأفضل أن تضع نفسك محل المتحدث وتقوم بتغيير ضمائر المتكلم وضمائر المتحدث إليه على لسانك أنت.

Ali said, "These things are mine. They belong to me. I own them."	مباشر
Ali said (that) those things were his. They belonged to him and that he owned them.	غير مباشر

## 4. Changing the tense تغيير الزمن

علينا أن نحول الزمن إلى زمن أسبق بدرجة واحدة في الماضي.

1. نحول أزمنة المضارع إلى أزمنة ماضي كما يلي:

الزمن في غير المباشر	الزمن في المباشر
زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الأول للفعل)	زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)
زمن المضارع المستمر (am / is / are + V.ing)	زمن الماضي المستمر (was / were + V.ing)
زمن المضارع التام (have / has + P.P)	زمن الماضي التام (had + P.P)
زمن المضارع التام المستمر (have / has + been + V.ing)	زمن الماضي التام المستمر (had + been + V.ing)
مصدر + will	مصدر + would
مصدر + can	مصدر + could
مصدر + shall (في المستقبل)	مصدر + would
مصدر + shall (في النصيحة)	مصدر + should
مصدر + may	مصدر + might
مصدر + must (ضرورة / الزام)	مصدر + must / had to
مصدر + must (استنتاج)	مصدر + must + have + P.P
مصدر + mustn't (تحريم)	مصدر + mustn't / wasn't to / weren't to



have to / has to + مصدر	had to + مصدر
will have to + مصدر	would have to + مصدر

2. أزمنة الماضي تبقى كما هي أو تحول إلى الصيغة التامة في الماضي:

الزمن في المباشر	الزمن في غير المباشر
- زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) - زمن الماضي التام (had + P.P)	- زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل) - زمن الماضي التام (had + P.P)
- زمن الماضي المستمر (was / were + V.ing)	- زمن الماضي المستمر (was / were + V.ing) - زمن الماضي التام (had + been + V.ing)

3. الأفعال الناقصة الآتية تبقى كما هي دون تحويل:

would / should / ought to / could / might / had to / had better / would rather / used to

## 5. Changing demonstratives, time and place

\* تحول كلمات الإشارة والظروف الزمانية والظروف المكانية كما يلي:

الظرف في المباشر	الظرف في غير مباشر
this	that
these	those
here	there
today / this day	that day
tonight	that night
yesterday	the day before / the previous day
tomorrow	the day after / the next day / the following day
اسم + next	اسم + after / the next + اسم / the following + اسم
اسم + last	اسم + before / the previous + اسم
tomorrow morning	the next (following) morning
the day before yesterday	two days before
the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
now	then / at that time
at the moment	at that time
مدة + ago	مدة + before / مدة + earlier
this year / this month	that year / that month
come	go

تنفيذ الخطوات الخمسة في مثال واحد

Direct	Ahmed <u>said</u> to me, "I <u>will</u> meet them here <u>tomorrow</u> ."
Indirect	Ahmed <u>told</u> me (that) <u>he</u> would meet them there <u>the next day</u> .

ملاحظات هامة جدا علي تحويل الزمن والظروف

أولاً. نقوم بعمل خمس خطوات كاملة إذا كان فعل القول في زمن الماضي:

Direct	Mona said to Soha, "I am having lunch with my sister tomorrow."
Indirect	Mona told Soha (that) she was having lunch with her sister the following day.

ثانياً. لا نغير الزمن أو الظروف في الحالات الآتية:

1. إذا كان فعل القول في زمن المضارع أو المستقبل البسيط:

Direct	Sabry says, "I usually have a break for coffee at midday."
Indirect	Sabry says he usually has a break for coffee at midday.

2. إذا جاء فعل القول في زمن الماضي ولكن ملحق به أحد الكلمات الآتية:



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

now	الآن	just	توا
a moment ago	منذ لحظة	just now	منذ وقت قصير
a minute ago	منذ لحظة	a short time ago	منذ وقت قصير

Direct	Huda said just now, "I have met you before somewhere."
Indirect	Huda said just now (that) she has met me before somewhere.

3. إذا كانت الجملة بين علامات التنصيص تعبر عن حقيقة علمية:

Direct	The teacher said, "The earth orbits the sun once a year."
Indirect	The teacher said (that) the earth orbits the sun once a year.

4. لا نغير أزمنة الحالتين الثانية والثالثة لـ (If):

Direct	Ahmed said to me, "I would go with them you if I had enough time."
Indirect	Ahmed told me that he would go with them if he had enough time.

5. لا نغير أزمنة الجمل التي تتبع التعبيرات الآتية: مصدر + could (would) / ماضى تام / ماضى بسيط + I wish/ If only / ماضى بسيط + It's time / ماضى بسيط + I'd rather

Direct	Ahmed says, "I wish I were taller."
Indirect	Ahmed says (that) he wishes he were taller.

Direct	The mother said to her child, "It's time you went to bed."
Indirect	The mother told her child (that) it was time he went to bed."

6. إذا تم تبليغ الجملة في نفس اليوم ونفس المكان: \* لا يتم تغيير الظرف وبالتالي نمتلك الحرية في تغيير الزمن (الفعل) أو عدم تغييره.

Direct	Ali said, "I will meet them here again tomorrow."
Indirect	Ali said (that) he will meet them here again tomorrow.
Indirect	Ali said (that) he would meet them there again tomorrow.

7. الجمل التي تم ربطها باستخدام الروابط الزمنية في الماضي:

\* لا نغير أزمنة الماضي في العبارة الزمنية.

\* في الجملة الرئيسية تستطيع إما أن تبقى الزمن في صيغته الأصلية أو تحوله إلى صيغة أخرى.

Direct	He said, "While I was having my lunch, I fainted."
Indirect	He said (that) while he was having his lunch, he fainted.
Indirect	He said while he was having his lunch, he had fainted.

8. مع الأشياء التي لا تزال حقيقة، نملك الحرية في تغيير زمنها وظروفها:

Direct	He said, "I'm two metres tall."
Indirect	He said he is / was two metres tall.

ثالثاً. القوانين التالية تلخص فكرة تغيير الأزمنة والظروف أو عدم تغييرها (هام جداً جداً وينبغي الالتزام به):

الظرف الأصلي + الفعل الأصلي + ..... فعل قول في المضارع + فاعل  
الظرف الأصلي + الفعل الأصلي + ..... فعل قول في الماضي + فاعل  
الظرف المُحول + الفعل المُحول + ..... فعل قول في الماضي + فاعل  
في حال عدم وجود ظرف من + الفعل المُحول + ..... فعل قول في الماضي + فاعل

Direct	"I'm going to fly to America next month."
Indirect	Ali says he is going to fly to America next week.
Indirect	Ali said he is going to fly to America next week.
Indirect	Ali said he was going to fly to America the following week.



## مكونات السؤال غير المباشر

جملة خبرية + **if / whether** / أداة استفهام + (مفعول) + فعل قول + فاعل

\* يتكون السؤال غير المباشر مما يلي:

Direct	I asked him, "What are you doing?"
Indirect	I asked him <b>what</b> he was doing.
Direct	She asked me, "Have you watched the DVD?"
Indirect	She asked me <b>if / whether</b> I had watched the DVD.

## خطوات تحويل السؤال من المباشر إلى غير المباشر

### 1. Changing the reporting verb تحويل فعل القول:

\* يتحول فعل القول في السؤال إلى ما يلي:

ask	مفعول مباشر +	يسأل
want to know	بدون مفعول مباشر +	يريد أن يعرف
inquire	بدون مفعول مباشر +	يستفسر
wonder	بدون مفعول مباشر +	يتساءل / يستفسر (غالباً لنفسه)

Direct	She asked me, "Why do you want to work abroad?"
Indirect	She <b>wanted to know</b> why I wanted to work abroad.

### 2. Changing the quotation marks تحويل علامات التنصيص:

\* نحذف الفاصلة وعلامات التنصيص ونضع ما يلي:

1. أداة استفهام إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بأداة استفهام. (لاحظ الشكل التالي)

2. (if) أو (whether) إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد.

\* يُفضل استخدام (whether) عند وجود (or / or not). (لاحظ الشكل التالي)

جملة خبرية + أداة استفهام

جملة خبرية + **if / whether**

**or not** + جملة خبرية + **if / whether**

جملة خبرية + **whether or not**

**ملحوظة هامة جداً:** لابد من تحويل السؤال إلى جملة خبرية أي أننا نقوم بتقديم الفاعل على الفعل المساعد عند التحويل.

Direct	Ali said to me, "Are you going out?"
Indirect	Ali asked me <b>if / whether</b> I was going out.
Indirect	Ali asked me <b>if / whether</b> I was going out <b>or not</b> .
Indirect	Ali asked me <b>whether or not</b> I was going out.

### 3. Changing the pronouns of the addresser and the addressee تغيير ضمائر المتكلم وضمائر المخاطب:

\* نحول الضميرين (I / We) حسب المتكلم. / نحول الضمير (you) حسب المخاطب.

\* ضمائر الغائب (He / She / It / One / They) لا تتغير.

\* من الأفضل أن تضع نفسك محل المتحدث وتقوم بتغيير ضمائر المتكلم وضمائر المتحدث إليه علي لسانك أنت.

Ahmed says to me, "Which exams have <b>you</b> passed?"	كلام مباشر
Ahmed <b>asks</b> me which exams I <b>have</b> passed.	كلام غير مباشر

### 4. Changing the tense تغيير الزمن

\* علينا أن نحول الزمن إلى زمن آخر أسبق بدرجة واحدة في الماضي. (قم بمراجعة جدول تحويل الأزمنة للجملة الخبرية).

### 5. Changing demonstratives, time and place تحويل كلمات الإشارة والزمن والمكان

\* تحول كلمات الإشارة والظروف الزمانية والظروف المكانية بالضبط كما فعلنا مع الجمل الخبرية.

\* قم بمراجعة جدول تحويل الظروف الزمنية للجملة الخبرية.

## تنفيذ الخطوات الخمسة في مثال واحد

Direct	He asked me, "Have you <b>finished</b> reading the book I <b>lent</b> you <b>last week</b> ?"
Indirect	He <b>asked</b> me <b>if / whether</b> I <b>had finished</b> reading the book he <b>had lent</b> me <b>the week before</b> .



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

### الفرق بين الأمر المباشر والأمر الغير مباشر

#### 1. Direct الكلام المباشر:

- \* أن ننقل نفس الأمر (الاقتراح - النصيحة - الطلب) الذي وجهه المتحدث بالضبط بين علامات تنصيص.  
\* تتكون الجملة الأمرية (الاقتراح - النصيحة - الطلب) بين علامات التنصيص كما يلي:

(للاوامر المثبتة) ..... " + مصدر الفعل, فعل قول + فاعل  
(للاوامر المنفية) ..... " + مصدر الفعل + "Don't", فعل قول + فاعل

- \* The teacher said to us, "Keep silent." \* The mother said to her children, "Don't play with fire."

#### 2. Indirect الكلام الغير مباشر:

- \* أن ننقل معنى ما قاله المتحدث (بدون علامات تنصيص).  
\* تتكون الجملة الأمرية (الاقتراح - النصيحة - الطلب) في الكلام غير المباشر كما يلي:

مصدر الفعل + to/ not to + (مفعول) + فعل قول + فاعل

مباشر	Mum said to me, "Keep the door open."
غير مباشر	Mum asked (told) me to keep the door open.
مباشر	The teacher said to us, "Don't make noise."
غير مباشر	The teacher ordered us not to make noise.

### Unit (13)

#### 1. أهم الأفعال التي تتبع بـ (مصدر + to):

agree	يوافق	offer	يعرض	fail	يفشل
disagree	يرفض	want	يريد	afford	يتحمل نفقات
arrange	يرتب	learn	يتعلم	aim	يهدف
decide	يقرر	predict	يتنبأ	deserve	يستحق
plan	يخطط	hope	يأمل	wish	يتمنى
intend	ينوي	promise	يعد	pretend	يدعي - يتظاهر
expect	يتوقع	threaten	يهدد	attempt	يحاول
afford	يتحمل نفقات	deserve	يستحق	prepare	يعد - يجهز
dare	يجرؤ	need	يحتاج		

- \* Everyone agreed to meet at the airport. \* The boys have arranged to play football today.  
\* Ali has decided to study science at university. \* I expect to finish my homework this evening.

#### 2. أهم الأفعال التي تتبع بـ (V.ing)

admit	يعترف	detest	يكره بشدة	delay	يؤجل
deny	ينكر	risk	يخاطر	postpone	يؤجل
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	miss	يفتقد	put off	يؤجل
finish	ينهي	practise	يمارس	dislike	يكره
appreciate	يقدر	suggest	يقترح	avoid	يتجنب
mind	يهانع	fancy / imagine	يتخيل	spend	يقضي الوقت

- \* Karim admitted borrowing my pen without asking me. \* They enjoyed playing in the sea.  
\* The driver of the car avoided hitting the motorbike. \* He dislikes sleeping during the day.

#### 3. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) دون اختلاف في المعنى:

##### 1. start / begin / continue

start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ	continue	يستمر
-------	------	-------	------	----------	-------

- \* It has started to rain (raining).  
\* Let's continue to work (working).



## My New Friend

\* عندما تكون هذه الأفعال الثلاثة في زمن مستمر يُفضل أن نستخدم بعدها (مصدر + to):

\* They are starting to export their goods abroad next month.

### 2. أفعال العاطفة:

like	يحب	love	يحب
prefer	يفضل	hate	يكره

مصدر + to + love + like + prefer + hate + V.ing / فاعل

مصدر + to + love + like + prefer + would ('d) + فاعل

\* I like to do / doing exercise every day.

\* He prefers to fly / flying to Europe.

\* I hate to get / getting water in my eyes.

\* I'd love to go for a swim this evening.

مصدر + would rather ('d rather) + فاعل

ماضي بسيط + فاعل آخر + would rather ('d rather) + فاعل

\* لاحظ ما يلي:

\* I'd rather have a cup of tea, please.

\* I'd rather you didn't use my calculator.

4. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) مع اختلاف في المعنى:

### 1. remember:

\* I remember meeting this man before.

\* I must remember to phone dad when I reach the airport.

(يتذكر أنه فعل الشيء) remember + V.ing

(يتذكر أن يفعل الشيء) remember + to + مصدر

### 2. forget:

\* She forgot taking the medicine so she took it again unnecessarily.

\* He forgot to take the medicine so he became seriously ill.

(ينسى أنه فعل الشيء) forget + V.ing

(ينسى أن يفعل) forget + to + مصدر

### 3. regret:

\* I regret making friends with these bad people.

\* I regret to tell you that your son has had an accident.

(يندم علي شيء مضي) regret + V.ing

(يأسف لقول شيء سيء) regret + to + مصدر

### 4. stop:

\* I stopped smoking five months ago.

\* When we reached a restaurant, we stopped to have a meal.

(يتوقف عن فعل شيء) stop + V.ing

(يتوقف ليفعل شيء) stop + to + مصدر

### 5. try:

\* Try doing an individual sport to keep fit.

\* I tried to contact you but the line was engaged.

(يجرب وسوف يري النتيجة) try + V.ing

(يحاول فعل شيء صعب) (غالبا يفشل) try + to + مصدر

### 6. go on:

\* My grandfather goes on working though he is seventy.

\* After writing the novel, he went on to write a short story.

(يستمر في عمل نفس الشيء) go on + V.ing

(ينتقل من شيء إلي شيء آخر) go on + to + مصدر

5. أفعال تتبع بـ (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) اعتماداً علي بناء الجملة: (ينطبق هذا علي الأفعال السبعة التالية)

suggest	يقترح	advise	ينصح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يرشح - يوصي
permit	يسمح	encourage	يشجع
forbid	يحرّم - يمنع		

\* ثلاثة حالات تتحدد وفقاً صيغة الفعل الذي يلي تلك الأفعال:

\* إذا جاء بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول به فإنها تتبع بـ (مصدر + to). / إذا لم يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول به فإنها تتبع بـ (V.ing).

\* إذا جاءت تلك الأفعال في صيغة المبني للمجهول فإنها تتبع بـ (مصدر + to).

\* They don't allow parking here. / They won't allow you to park here. / You aren't allowed to park here.

\* He advised buying a new car.

\* He advised me to buy a new car.

\* I was encouraged to accept that generous offer.

\* The play is suggested to be cancelled because the main actor is ill.



## 6. صيغ خاصة بالأفعال (suggest / recommend / insist):

suggest / recommend / insist on + V.ing. + فاعل  
 (should) + فاعل آخر + suggest / recommend / insist that + فاعل  
 مصدر الفعل + to + مفعول + suggest + for + فاعل

- \* He suggested going (that we go / should go) to Turkey. \* He suggested for us to go to Turkey.

## 7. بعض الأفعال والصفات والأسماء التي تتبع بحرف جر ويليه (V.ing):

accuse ..... of	يشكر .... علي	thank ..... for	يتهم .... بـ
congratulate .... on	يلوم ..... علي	blame .... for	يهنيء ... علي
keen on	مهتم بـ	interested in	متحمس لـ
fond of	جيد في	good at	مغرم بـ

- \* She accused him of stealing her watch. \* The teacher blamed the boys for making a lot of noise.  
 \* I'm not keen on playing squash. \* He explained the reason for doing so.

## 8. مجموعة من التعبيرات تتبع بـ (V.ing):

I can't help / I can't stop / I can't resist	لا أقاوم (أحب)	be busy	مشغول
I can't stand / I can't bear	لا أتحمّل (أكره)	Fancy (Imagine)	من المدهش
what (how) about	ماذا عن	It's fun	من الممتع
It's no use / It's no help	لا فائدة من	I feel like	أشتهي

- \* I can't stand eating ice cream. \* It's no good wasting time. \* I can't help eating sweets.

## 9. مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تنتهي بـ (to) لكنها تتبع بـ (V.ing):

due to / owing to / thanks to	يساهم في	contribute to	بسبب - بفضل
admit / own up (to)	يعتاد علي	take to	يعترف بـ
am / is / are + used to	بالإضافة إلى	in addition to	معتاد علي
look forward to	يعترض علي	object to	يتطلع إلى

- \* He has admitted (to) breaking the window. \* She is used to watching TV at night.

## 10. مصدر / مصدر + to + مفعول + فعل:

force	يُجبر	urge	يحث - يشجع	want	يريد
oblige	يجبر	remind	يُذكر	warn	يحذر
ask	يطلب	invite	يدعو	cause (get)	يجعل
tell	يأمر	order	يأمر - يطلب	persuade	يقنع
instruct	يُعلم	expect	يتوقع	wish	يتمنى

- \* Ali's father advised his son to work hard.  
 \* Parents often warn their children not to run across busy roads.

## Unit (14)

## Modal verbs of necessity, prohibition and lack of necessity

الأفعال الناقصة المعبرة عن الضرورة، التحريم وعدم الضرورة.

## 1. الضرورة في المضارع:

المعنى	الاستخدام	صيغة الفعل
أدعوك إلى	دعوة حارة	You + must + مصدر
يجب أن	قانون / قاعدة / a law / a strong reminder / تذكير / an order / أمر / obligation / لائحة / a regulation	مصدر + must + فاعل



	a direct command / أمر مباشر / strong feelings مشاعر قوية wishes أمنيات / strong advice نصيحة قوية لتجنب خطر أو ضرر important or necessary هام وضروري	
مصدر + have to + فاعل جمع مصدر + has to + فاعل مفرد	الضرورة (في المضارع) إلزام (ليس للفرد اختيار) / التزام بقوانين وقواعد	يُضطر أن
مصدر + need to + فاعل جمع مصدر + needs to + فاعل مفرد	الضرورة (في المضارع) شيء يجب فعله (ضروري)	يحتاج أن

- \* You must come and see us at the weekend. (دعوة)
- \* We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (تذكير)
- \* We must follow traffic rules. (قاعدة - قانون - لائحة - أمر مباشر)
- \* I must work hard for the exams next week. (إلزام يحبه الشخص)
- \* You must wash your hands before you eat. (نصيحة قوية)
- \* We have to go to school every day. (ليس لنا اختيار)
- \* I have no money - I need to get some from the bank. (ضروري فعل هذه الشيء)

## 2. عدم الضرورة في المضارع:

مصدر + doesn't have to + فاعل مفرد / مصدر + don't have to + فاعل جمع	ليس مضطر أن
مصدر + doesn't need to + فاعل مفرد / مصدر + don't need to + فاعل جمع	ليس مضطر أن
مصدر + needn't + فاعل	ليس مضطر أن

- \* Mona doesn't have to work today because it is a holiday.
- \* I don't need to buy a new pen. I've already got one.
- \* You needn't buy sugar. I have already bought some.

## 3. الضرورة في الماضي:

مصدر + had to + فاعل	اضطر أن
مصدر + needed to + فاعل	اضطر أن

- \* Yesterday I had to take a taxi home because it was raining.
- \* Mona needed to revise well last night. It was necessary for today's exam.

## 4. عدم الضرورة في الماضي:

مصدر + didn't have to + فاعل	لم يضطر أن (لم أفعل هذا الشيء لأنه لم يكن ضروري)
مصدر + needn't + have + P.P.	لم يضطر أن (فعلت هذا الشيء رغم أنه لم يكن ضروري)

- \* I didn't have to buy more bread. We already have a lot. (I didn't buy bread.)
- \* I needn't have bought more bread. We already have a lot. (I bought bread.)

## 5. الضرورة في المستقبل:

مصدر + must + فاعل	سيكون ضروري
مصدر + has to + فاعل مفرد / مصدر + have to + فاعل جمع	سيكون ضروري
مصدر + will have to + فاعل	سوف يضطر أن
مصدر + will need to + فاعل	سوف يضطر أن

- \* Tomorrow I must leave home early to catch the bus.
- \* I have to go to the library tomorrow to return the book.
- \* I will have to arrive at the station early next morning.
- \* I will need to pay a visit to the library next Saturday.

## 6. عدم الضرورة في المستقبل:

مصدر + won't have to / won't need to + فاعل	لن يضطر أن
---	------------

- \* Mum will do the housework. Soha won't have to do it.
- \* You won't need to buy a calculator. I will get one for you.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

الجزء الثاني: الطرق التي يتم بها التعبير عن التحريم (prohibition)

\* للتعبير عن شيء ممنوع أو محرم أو غير مسموح أو ضد القانون نستخدم الصيغ التالية:

لا يجب أن يفعل (في جميع الأحوال)	مصدر + mustn't + فاعل
لا يجب أن يفعل (في حالة معينة)	مصدر + can't + فاعل
لا يُسمح له أن يفعل .....	مصدر + am/is/are + not permitted to + فاعل
ليس مسموحاً بـ.....	مصدر + am/is/are + not + allowed to + فاعل. مصدر + to + مفعول + It's not allowed for + فاعل. V.ing + isn't allowed.
من الممنوع أن .....	مصدر + It's forbidden (prohibited - banned) to + فاعل.
..... ممنوع.	V.ing + is + forbidden / prohibited / banned.

\* You mustn't park your car here.

\* You can't park here unless you have a licence.

\* You aren't allowed to park your car here. / Parking your car here isn't allowed.

## Unit (15)

الجزء الأول: الطرق التي يتم بها التعبير عن الاستنتاج (deduction):

المعني والدلالة التي تعطيها الصيغة	صيغة الفعل
أكيد يفعل (مضارع)	مصدر + must
أكيد فعل (ماضي)	must + have + P.P
أكيد لا يفعل (مضارع)	مصدر + can't
أكيد لم يفعل (ماضي)	can't + have + P.P / couldn't + have + P.P
ربما يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)	مصدر + may
ربما لا يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)	مصدر + may not
ربما فعل (ماضي)	may + have + P.P
ربما لم يفعل (ماضي)	may not + have + P.P
من الممكن أن يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)	مصدر + might
من الممكن ألا يفعل (مضارع / مستقبل)	مصدر + might not
من الممكن أن يكون قد فعل (ماضي)	might + have + P.P
من الممكن أن يكون لم يفعل (ماضي)	might not + have + P.P
كان بإمكانه أن .... لكنه لم يفعل.	could + have + P.P.

\* He must be English. He speaks English well.

\* I hate snakes. A snake **must have frightened** me when I was a child.

\* He can't be Egyptian. He doesn't speak Arabic.

\* It's only four o'clock. The match **can't have finished** already.

\* They may visit us tomorrow. That's probable.

\* He **may have seen** them last night. I'm not really sure.

\* He **might be** French, but he is probably Italian.

\* Azza wasn't at school yesterday. She **might have had** a doctor's appointment.

\* The patient **could have died**, but the doctor saved him.

\* لاحظ جيداً الصيغ التالية والتي تُعتبر بمثابة علامات تجعلك تعرف درجة تأكيد الشخص من المعلومة.

\* هذه الصيغ عندما تظهر في جملة تساعدك علي تحديد الفعل الصحيح المستخدم في الاستنتاج.

### 1. must / can't (90% certainty):

\* I'm sure / surely / it is certain that / certainly / I think (believe/suppose) / definitely / it's impossible (that).



2. may / may not (70% certainty):

\* perhaps / maybe / probably / improbably / it's probable (that) / likely / unlikely / I'm not sure.

3. might / might not (30% certainty):

\* it's possible (that) / possibly / I don't know / I don't think / I'm very uncertain / I have no idea.

الجزء الثاني: الطرق التي يتم بها التعبير عن النصيحة (advice) والتدم (regret) او اللوم (blaming):

should / ought to / had better + مصدر	تقديم نصيحة مثبتة في الحاضر	ينبغي أن .....
shouldn't / ought not to / had better not + مصدر	تقديم نصيحة منفية في الحاضر	لا ينبغي أن .....
should + have + P.P. / ought to + have + P.P.	اللوم علي ما لم يحدث في الماضي	كان ينبغي أن .....
shouldn't + have + P.P. / ought not to + have + P.P.	اللوم علي ما حدث في الماضي	ما كان ينبغي أن ...

\* You should read this book. It's great!

\* You shouldn't sit on that wall. It isn't safe.

\* I should have phoned my friend yesterday, but I didn't.

\* Mona shouldn't have left the door open. The thief got through it.

\* I'm sorry! I ought to have come on time.

\* I ought not to have been angry with you. I'm sorry.

Unit (16)

1. The zero conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

زمن المضارع البسيط, زمن المضارع البسيط + If  
زمن المضارع البسيط if زمن المضارع البسيط

\* تتكون الجملة الشرطية في الحالة الصفرية كما يلي:

1. General scientific facts حقائق علمية عامة

وهي الحقائق التي يتم الحديث فيها عن أي أحد أو أي شيء وليس أحداً أو شيئاً بعينه.

\* If you heat ice, it melts.

\* If ice is heated, it melts.

\* If (When) heated, ice melts.

2. Personal habits العادات الشخصية

\* أي أشياء وأحداث حقيقية بشكل عام وعلي الدوام وفي أي وقت.

\* If I read for a long time, I usually get a headache.

2. The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

\* تتكون الجملة الشرطية في الحالة الأولى كما يلي:

If + مصدر, will + مصدر  
am/ is / are going to + مصدر, زمن المضارع التام  
shall/ should/ may/ might / can / must + مصدر  
مصدر + (يجب) had better/ ought to  
مصدر + have to/ has to / will have to  
(مصدر + don't / مصدر) فعل أمر

\* نستخدم الحالة الأولى للتعبير عن ما يلي:

1. Specific scientific facts حقائق علمية محددة

\* يتم تمييز الشيء المراد الحديث عنه بطريقة ما.

\* يكون الحديث فيها عن أحد بعينه أو شيء بعينه.

\* If you water these plants, they will grow.

إذا قمت بري (تلك) النباتات \_ التي يشير إليها المتحدث \_ , فإنها سوف تنمو.

\* If you heat this piece of metal, it will expand.

إذا قمت بتسخين قطعة المعدن هذه, فإنها سوف تتمدد.

2. Possible & Probable Future Events أحداث مستقبلية ممكنة أو محتملة الحدوث

\* If you work hard, you will do well at school.

\* What will you do if you pass the exam?

3. Offers الاقتراحات / Suggestions / الأوامر Commands / العروض

التحذير والتهديد Warning and threatening / التعبير عن الضرورة Expressing Necessity

\* I will help you with your homework if you like.

\* If you want to buy a car, start saving now.

\* Shall we swim if the weather is good?

\* If you want to pass your test, you must study hard.

\* If you don't pay me my money back, I will complain to the police.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

\* اختيار أحد بدائل (will) في الحالة الأولى يعتمد علي المعني والدلالة التي نريد التعبير عنها سواء كنا نريد أن نوجه أمر / نوجه نصيحة / نعبر عن ضرورة / نعبر عن الزام / نعبر عن إمكانية ..... إلخ.

- \* If you can't dictate your conditions, you should negotiate.
- \* If you want to get the full mark, you have to study hard.

### 3. The second conditional الحالة الشرطية الثانية:

\* تتكون الجملة الشرطية في الحالة الثانية كما يلي: مصدر + would / could / might + فاعل , زمن الماضي البسيط + If

\* نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن (الأشياء التي لا يمكن تحقيقها في الوقت الحاضر) كما يلي:

#### 1. An Improbable Future Event حدث مستقبلي غير محتمل:

Events that we think will not happen الأشياء التي نعتقد أنها لن تحدث

- \* I would watch the football match if they showed it on television. (لا أعتقد أنهم سيقومون بعرضه علي التلفاز)
- \* If Ahmed was (were) taller, he would be a good basketball player. (أحمد ليس طويلاً)
- \* If he knew the truth, he would tell his father. (هو لا يعرف الحقيقة)

#### 2. Events that are contrary to known facts أحداث عكس الحقيقة:

- \* If he were rich, he would buy an aeroplane. هو ليس غنياً ولا يمكنه شراء طائرة.
- \* If it were Mona's birthday tomorrow, I would buy her a present. عيد ميلاد مني ليس غداً ولن أشتري لها هدية.
- \* If I discovered a new planet, I would give it my mother's name. ليس من المحتمل أن أكتشف كوكب جديد وبالتالي لن يمكنني إطلاق اسم أمي عليه.

### 3. Giving Advice إعطاء النصيحة:

مصدر + If I were you, I would

أ. أشياء يجب فعلها:

- \* If I were you, I would see the doctor. = You should see the doctor.

مصدر + If I were you, I wouldn't

ب. أشياء لا يجب فعلها:

- \* If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time. = You shouldn't waste your time.

### 4. The third conditional الحالة الشرطية الثالثة:

had + P.P ماضي تام + If , would (could / might) + have + P.P

\* تتكون الجملة الشرطية في الحالة الثالثة كما يلي:

\* نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن ما يلي:

#### 1. A past situation that's contrary to known facts حدث ماضي عكس الحقيقة (مستحيل):

- \* She would have passed the test if she had studied hard. لم تذاكر بجد لذلك لم تجتاز الاختبار.
- \* If he had got up earlier, he would have caught the first bus. لم استيقظ مبكراً لذلك لم ألق أول أتوبيس.

#### 2. Criticizing a past action انتقاد حدث تم في الماضي:

- \* If you had been more careful, you wouldn't have injured yourself. لم أكن حذراً لذلك جرحت نفسي.
- \* If he hadn't neglected his work, he wouldn't have lost his job. أهمل عمله لذا فقد وظيفته.

## Unit (17)

### Sentences with wish

#### 1. In the present في المضارع:

جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + wish + فاعل + If only

- \* I wish I spoke French. أنا لا أتحدث الفرنسية.
- \* He wishes he was / were taller but he is short. هو ليس طويلاً لكنه يتمني ذلك.
- \* I wish I knew where my keys were. أنا لا أعرف أين تكون مفاتيحي.

#### 2. In the past في الماضي:

(had+ P.P) فاعل + زمن ماضي تام + wish (wished) + فاعل + If only  
If only/ فاعل + wish (wished) + could + have + P.P



## My New Friend

- \* I wish I had read the exam question more carefully but I didn't. أنا نادم لأنني لم أقرأ أسئلة الامتحان بعناية أكثر.
- \* If only she hadn't spent all her money on clothes. Now she has to borrow some.
- \* I wish you could have been with us last night. ليتك كنت معنا الليلة الماضية (أنت لم تكن معنا).

### 3. In the future في المستقبل

مصدر الفعل + could / would + فاعل + wish + فاعل / If only

في التعبير عن الأمنية في المستقبل: متى نختار (would) ومتى نختار (could)؟

1. يمكننا استخدام (could) في أي أمنية مستقبلية طالما نعبر عن تمني مقدرة للمتمني نفسه أو لفاعل آخر. أنا لا أستطيع (هو لا يستطيع) السباحة.
2. لا يمكن استخدام (would) إذا كان فاعل الجملتين واحد ... أي أن المتمني والمتمني له شخص واحد... هذه الجملة خاطئة لأن فاعل الجملتين واحد.
3. (could) يعبر عن عدم استطاعة من نتحدث عنه أن يقوم بالشيء / (would) يعبر عن عدم قيام المتحدث بشيء رغم مقدرة عليه. هم لا يستطيعون تحدث الإنجليزية. (الأمر ليس بأيديهم).
- \* I wish they could speak English.
- \* I wish they would speak English. هم يستطيعون تحدث الإنجليزية لكنهم لا يتحدثون بها وهذا ما يضايقني. (الأمر بأيديهم).

زمن مضارع بسيط + فاعل + hope + فاعل / مصدر + will + فاعل + hope + فاعل

- \* I hope I will be a famous scientist one day.
- \* I hope you will get (get) better soon.

متى نعتبر (were) أفضل من (was)

أ. الحالة الشرطية الثانية مع الرابط (if) أو أحد بدائله:

- \* I would go to the beach if it were summer.
- \* If she weren't ill, she would be with us now.

\* لاحظ المثال التالي:

- \* He asked me if I was married.
- \* لم نستخدم (were) هنا لأن (if) لا تعبر عن حالة شرطية ولكن تستخدم كأداة لنقل السؤال غير المباشر.
- ب. للتعبير عن المضارع الغير حقيقي بعد التعبيرات التالية: (آه لو I wish / if only - كما لو as if / as though):
- \* He walks as if (as though) he were a king.
- \* She wishes she were fitter than she is.

## Unit (18)

### بدائل لاستخدام (if)

1. يمكن استخدام الروابط التالية بدلاً من (if) للتعبير عن الشرط وبشكل خاص في الحالتين الشرطيتين الصفريتين والأولى.

only if	فقط لو	on (the) condition that	بشرط أن
as long as / so long as	طالما	provided (that)	بشرط أن
in case (that) / in the event (that)	في حالة	providing (that)	بشرط أن

- \* You can borrow my pen as long as you give it back.
- \* On condition that (If) you come on time, you will be able to meet the manager.
- \* If (As long as) keep this promise, I will never suspect you again.

2. يمكن استخدام الروابط التالية بدلاً من (if) للتعبير عن الشرط وبشكل خاص في الحالة الثانية والحالة الثالثة:

supposing (that)	لو افترضنا (أن)	imagine (that)	لو تخيلنا (أن)
------------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

- \* Supposing/ Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?
- \* Supposing/ Imagine (that) you had found the bag of money, what would you have done?

3. (unless / except if) تعنيان (إذا لم) ويستخدمان بنفس الطريقة التي تُستخدم بها (if).

لكن من الخطأ أن تكون الجملة التابعة لهما منفية. (يمكن استخدامهما في جميع الحالات الشرطية).

- \* فأنت تستطيع أن تقول: Unless you study hard, you will fail.
- \* لكنك لا تستطيع أن تقول: Unless you don't study hard, you will fail.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

### 4. in (the) case of / in the event of + V.ing / اسم:

- \* تعني: (في حالة). \* نستخدم في: جميع الحالات الشرطية.  
 \* In case of travelling by train, you will enjoy the scenery الطبيعي المنظر.  
 \* In case of emergency, call 122.  
 \* In the event of playing well, you will win the game.

### 5. but for / without + V.ing / اسم:

- \* تعني: (لولا / بدون). \* نستخدم في: جميع الحالات الشرطية.  
 \* But for his poverty, he would be happy.  
 \* Without having a big villa, he wouldn't give a party every week.  
 \* My grandmother never visits me without bringing a present.  
 \* Without having a ticket, they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.

### 6. if it weren't for + V.ing / اسم:

- \* تعني: (لولا / بدون). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثانية فقط.  
 \* If it weren't for her wealth, he wouldn't marry her.  
 \* If it weren't for his bad behavior, he wouldn't be punished.

### 7. if it hadn't been for + V.ing / اسم:

- \* تعني: (لولا / بدون). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثالثة فقط.  
 \* If it hadn't been for the rescuers' efforts, I would have died.  
 \* If it hadn't been for your help, I would have got into trouble.

### 8. should + فاعل + مصدر:

- \* تعني: (إذا). \* نستخدم في: الحالتين الشرطيتين الأولى والثانية.  
 \* If Mona arrives early, we'll go shopping. = Should Mona arrive early, we'll go shopping.  
 \* If he knew French, he would speak to the tourist. = Should he know French, he would ..... .

### \* should + فاعل + not + مصدر:

- \* تعني: (إذا لم). \* نستخدم في: الحالتين الشرطيتين الأولى والثانية.  
 \* If Ali doesn't study hard, he will fail. = Should Ali not study hard, he will fail.

### 9. were + فاعل + مفعول:

- \* تعني: (إذا كان). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثانية فقط.  
 \* If I were rich, I would set up a charity. = Were I rich, I would set up a charity.  
 \* If she were a doctor, she would save you. = Were she a doctor, she would save you.

### 10. were + فاعل + to مصدر:

- \* تعني: (إذا). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثانية فقط.  
 \* If he worked hard, he would be successful. = Were he to work hard, he would be successful.  
 \* If the volcano erupted, we would leave quickly. = Were the volcano to erupt, we would ..... .

### 11. had + فاعل + مفعول:

- \* تعني: (إذا كان لهيه). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثانية فقط.  
 \* If I had enough money, I would lend you. = Had I enough money, I would lend you.

### 12. had + فاعل + P.P:

- \* تعني: (إذا). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثالثة فقط.  
 \* If I had gone to the party, I would have met my friends. = Had I gone to the party, I ..... .

### \* had + فاعل + not + P.P:

- \* تعني: (إذا لم). \* نستخدم في: الحالة الشرطية الثالثة فقط.  
 \* If Ola hadn't revised well, she would have failed. = Had Ola not revised well, she would ..... .





## Exercises on The Most Important Grammar Points

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Having ..... the shopping, she started to prepare lunch.  
a. **done**                      b. **she does**                      c. **she did**                      d. **she had done**
2. We arrived an hour late. The film ..... an hour earlier.  
a. **was beginning**                      b. **has begun**                      c. **had begun**                      d. **begun**
3. The baby had drunk all the milk before ..... to bed.  
a. **went**                      b. **had gone**                      c. **going**                      d. **was going**
4. By the time I took a break, I ..... my work.  
a. **have finished**                      b. **had finished**                      c. **finished**                      d. **was finishing**
5. She ..... ill when I visited her.  
a. **was seeming**                      b. **seems**                      c. **has seemed**                      d. **seemed**
6. While I ..... at home, a man knocked on the door.  
a. **had been**                      b. **have been**                      c. **was being**                      d. **was**
7. I ..... breakfast before I went to school.  
a. **eat always**                      b. **always eat**                      c. **ate always**                      d. **always ate**
8. She didn't send the message to her father until she ..... it.  
a. **had written**                      b. **had been written**                      c. **writing**                      d. **has written**
9. On ..... the good news, I phoned my parents.  
a. **had heard**                      b. **hearing**                      c. **hear**                      d. **heard**
10. .... finished my work, I went home.  
a. **Having**                      b. **Had**                      c. **On**                      d. **After**
11. By 2014, I ..... four novels. It was a great achievement.  
a. **was writing**                      b. **had written**                      c. **will have written**                      d. **had been writing**
12. After ....., she travelled abroad.  
a. **graduate**                      b. **graduated**                      c. **graduating**                      d. **had graduated**
13. She ..... to school on foot when she was young.  
a. **was going**                      b. **used to go**                      c. **has gone**                      d. **will go**
14. What ..... when I called you? You sounded very busy.  
a. **had you done**                      b. **did you do**                      c. **have you done**                      d. **were you doing**
15. .... my stay in France, I learned a lot of French words.  
a. **While**                      b. **During**                      c. **On**                      d. **When**
16. I saw an accident while ..... to school this morning.  
a. **was going**                      b. **going**                      c. **had gone**                      d. **went**
17. Hardly ..... the fire when I called the fire brigade.  
a. **did I see**                      b. **had I seen**                      c. **I had seen**                      d. **I saw**
18. It was dark when we reached the beach because the sun ..... down.  
a. **had gone**                      b. **has gone**                      c. **went**                      d. **gone**
19. I want to know what you ..... at eight o'clock last night.  
a. **are doing**                      b. **do**                      c. **have done**                      d. **were doing**



20. It is more than twenty years ..... I travelled abroad.  
a. **since**                      b. **when**                      c. **before**                      d. **while**
21. Samy is not here. He ..... to the dentist.  
a. **has been**                      b. **has gone**                      c. **gone**                      d. **been**
22. You can't talk to Ali because he ..... out.  
a. **has just gone**                      b. **had gone**                      c. **goes**                      d. **used to go**
23. I haven't read the last chapter of the novel .....  
a. **never**                      b. **already**                      c. **yet**                      d. **just**
24. I ..... my book. Can you help me look for it?  
a. **was losing**                      b. **am losing**                      c. **have lost**                      d. **had lost**
25. My brother ..... ill recently.  
a. **has been**                      b. **has**                      c. **has had**                      d. **was**
26. I ..... for three hours now.  
a. **have read**                      b. **was reading**                      c. **am reading**                      d. **have been reading**
27. We ..... any news about them lately.  
a. **didn't receive**                      b. **hasn't received**                      c. **haven't received**                      d. **aren't receiving**
28. My uncle ..... in hospital for a long time. I hope he will recover soon.  
a. **was**                      b. **has been**                      c. **is**                      d. **were**
29. This is the most exciting film I .....  
a. **have never seen**                      b. **never have seen**                      c. **ever have seen**                      d. **have ever seen**
30. She ..... reading novels since she was a child.  
a. **enjoys**                      b. **has enjoyed**                      c. **enjoys**                      d. **is enjoying**
31. I can't see you later this evening. I ..... my homework.  
a. **am doing**                      b. **have done**                      c. **will do**                      d. **going to do**
32. The other team's players are very big. It ..... a difficult match.  
a. **is being**                      b. **will be**                      c. **is going to be**                      d. **would be**
33. They have got the tickets. They ..... to France.  
a. **will fly**                      b. **going to fly**                      c. **are flying**                      d. **fly**
34. I haven't seen my cousin in England for five years. I'm sure she ..... a lot.  
a. **will grow**                      b. **will be growing**                      c. **will have grown**                      d. **going to grow**
35. It is very hot in the house. I ..... on the air conditioner.  
a. **am going to turn**                      b. **will turn**                      c. **am turning**                      d. **turn**
36. This time tomorrow, I ..... on a train to Luxor.  
a. **will be travelling**                      b. **travel**                      c. **will have travelled**                      d. **going to travel**
37. He ..... an eye doctor when he finishes his graduate studies. This is his plan.  
a. **has been**                      b. **is**                      c. **is going to be**                      d. **would be**
38. In my opinion, the population of Egypt ..... by 20 % next year.  
a. **will increase**                      b. **is increasing**                      c. **is going to increase**                      d. **has increased**
39. I will inform you as soon as I ..... home tomorrow.  
a. **arrived**                      b. **had arrived**                      c. **will arrive**                      d. **arrive**
40. I expect I ..... the final exam with ranks.  
a. **am going to pass**                      b. **am passing**                      c. **will pass**                      d. **would pass**



41. Scientists predict that mobile phones ..... smaller in the future.  
a. **will have made**      b. **will make**      c. **will have been made**      d. **will be made**
42. By 2050 we hope that oil ..... by clean energy.  
a. **will have been replaced**      b. **has been replaced**      c. **will replace**      d. **will have replaced**
43. By my 50th birthday, I ..... in my current profession for over 20 years.  
a. **will have been**      b. **will be**      c. **will being**      d. **will have**
44. I'll have arrived home ..... 9:00.  
a. **at**      b. **on**      c. **in**      d. **by**
45. I ..... hire a car to travel around London. This is my intention.  
a. **may**      b. **will**      c. **am going to**      d. **could**
46. The couple ..... married next week. Everything is arranged.  
a. **will get**      b. **are getting**      c. **are going to get**      d. **get**
47. I ..... until I get a permission from the manager.  
a. **didn't leave**      b. **won't leave**      c. **wasn't left**      d. **will leave**
48. I think your team ..... the next match.  
a. **will be winning**      b. **will be won**      c. **will win**      d. **will been won**
49. This is the house in ..... I was born.  
a. **where**      b. **which**      c. **what**      d. **that**
50. The actor ..... played Salah El Deen was perfect.  
a. **whom**      b. **whose**      c. **which**      d. **who**
51. He was a man ..... to have a great courage.  
a. **and appears**      b. **that appears**      c. **he appeared**      d. **who appeared**
52. Luxor, ..... is my hometown, has a lot of ancient monuments.  
a. **which**      b. **that**      c. **when**      d. **where**
53. Soha, ..... father is a well-known writer, is my best friend at school.  
a. **which**      b. **whom**      c. **who's**      d. **whose**
54. Yesterday, I played a football game ..... made me tired.  
a. **what**      b. **when**      c. **which**      d. **whom**
55. He left for Alexandria, the city ..... he lives in.  
a. **which**      b. **in which**      c. **where**      d. **when**
56. He lost the book ..... him last week.  
a. **which I lent it**      b. **who lent**      c. **I lent**      d. **which lent**
57. The books ..... by Naguib Mahfouz, were made into films.  
a. **had been written**      b. **were written**      c. **were writing**      d. **written**
58. My uncle went to a school in London ..... he learned to speak English.  
a. **what**      b. **where**      c. **when**      d. **which**
59. Water ..... through a dam produces hydroelectric power.  
a. **which pass**      b. **passed**      c. **which passing**      d. **passing**
60. The foreigners ..... stay ended must leave our country.  
a. **who's**      b. **that**      c. **whom**      d. **whose**
61. They said something very cruel, ..... I think they should apologize.  
a. **for which**      b. **at which**      c. **by which**      d. **to which**



62. She asked me where I had been, ..... I replied, "I can't tell you."  
 a. **to which**                      b. **by which**                      c. **about which**                      d. **on which**
63. She can't decide ..... to wear at the party.  
 a. **whom**                      b. **that**                      c. **which**                      d. **what**
64. There was an earthquake in the city and ..... house was damaged.  
 a. **half**                      b. **all**                      c. **both**                      d. **every**
65. I want to eat ..... meat or fish.  
 a. **both**                      b. **neither**                      c. **half**                      d. **either**
66. My house is ..... kilometre from my house.  
 a. **half**                      b. **half of a**                      c. **half a**                      d. **half of**
67. .... the information that you need is on the internet.  
 a. **Each**                      b. **All**                      c. **Either**                      d. **Both**
68. I'm enjoying my new job because ..... day of the week is different.  
 a. **either**                      b. **every**                      c. **all**                      d. **both**
69. The gardener said that my friends and I can ..... take a fruit from the apple tree.  
 a. **both**                      b. **each**                      c. **every**                      d. **either**
70. There are two hotels in the town and they are ..... comfortable.  
 a. **all**                      b. **both**                      c. **either**                      d. **each**
71. .... of my parents are at home today. It's a holiday.  
 a. **All**                      b. **Either**                      c. **Both**                      d. **Neither**
72. The shop assistant showed me two suits but I liked ..... of them.  
 a. **neither**                      b. **every**                      c. **both**                      d. **half**
73. She has two gadgets. .... of them is easy to use.  
 a. **All**                      b. **Every**                      c. **Each**                      d. **Both**
74. Both of the two machines need repairing. .... machine works properly.  
 a. **Either**                      b. **Each**                      c. **Neither**                      d. **Every**
75. Neither the girl nor her brothers ..... their study.  
 a. **neglects**                      b. **neglect**                      c. **has neglected**                      d. **is neglecting**
76. We all love our manager because he is friendly towards .....  
 a. **all us**                      b. **all we**                      c. **us all**                      d. **all of we**
77. .... the players in the team trains hard.  
 a. **Every of**                      b. **Every**                      c. **Each of**                      d. **Each**
78. Mona and Ola are clever students. .... are liked by their teachers.  
 a. **Either**                      b. **Both**                      c. **Neither**                      d. **None**
79. He gave me two novels, but neither ..... interesting.  
 a. **was**                      b. **were**                      c. **had**                      d. **been**
80. .... my friends like tennis.  
 a. **Half**                      b. **Each**                      c. **Every**                      d. **Neither**
81. My brother and I are very busy. .... us can go to the party.  
 a. **Either**                      b. **Both of**                      c. **Neither of**                      d. **Every of**
82. The hat wasn't ..... to wear.  
 a. **too big**                      b. **so big**                      c. **big enough**                      d. **such big**



83. It is ..... big car that all the family can travel in it.  
a. **such a**                      b. **such**                      c. **so**                      d. **so a**
84. It was ..... long time since he last saw his brother.  
a. **too**                      b. **so**                      c. **very**                      d. **such**
85. She's ..... charming that everybody likes her.  
a. **so**                      b. **very**                      c. **too**                      d. **such**
86. The camera is ..... for me to buy. I don't have enough money.  
a. **too expensive**                      b. **cheap enough**                      c. **expensive enough**                      d. **too cheap**
87. He is ..... to buy this expensive car.  
a. **poor enough**                      b. **so poor**                      c. **too rich**                      d. **rich enough**
88. This book is ..... interesting one that I read it twice.  
a. **such a**                      b. **such an**                      c. **such**                      d. **so**
89. I have ..... much work to do that I can't go on a picnic with my friends.  
a. **very**                      b. **so**                      c. **enough**                      d. **such**
90. The weather is too hot ..... out for a walk.  
a. **that going**                      b. **to go**                      c. **that go**                      d. **to going**
91. I was very happy to have the honour of meeting ..... great man.  
a. **so a**                      b. **such a**                      c. **so**                      d. **such**
92. He is ..... to make very few mistakes.  
a. **too careful**                      b. **careful enough**                      c. **such careful**                      d. **so careful**
93. The hotel ..... before the flats were built.  
a. **had been opening**                      b. **was opening**                      c. **has opened**                      d. **had been opened**
94. The road ..... . You must drive carefully on it.  
a. **is repaired**                      b. **is being repaired**                      c. **was repaired**                      d. **is repairing**
95. The Prisoner of Zenda was written ..... Anthony Hope.  
a. **for**                      b. **of**                      c. **by**                      d. **from**
96. Yehia Haqqi ..... of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story and novel.  
a. **still is thinking**                      b. **still is thought**                      c. **is still thought**                      d. **is still thinking**
97. The report ..... and sent to the manager.  
a. **has been written**                      b. **has written**                      c. **was writing**                      d. **writing**
98. The tower needs .....  
a. **to repair**                      b. **to be repaired**                      c. **to be repairing**                      d. **repaired**
99. I don't know who the problem ..... by.  
a. **was solved**                      b. **solve**                      c. **solves**                      d. **was solving**
100. Having ....., the car looked nice again.  
a. **repairing**                      b. **been repaired**                      c. **repaired**                      d. **being repaired**
101. Yesterday's accident is believed ..... because of great speed.  
a. **to happen**                      b. **happened**                      c. **to have happened**                      d. **happens**
102. I wouldn't like ..... given instructions.  
a. **to be**                      b. **being**                      c. **has been**                      d. **had been**
103. I'd like that letter ..... off at once, please.  
a. **send**                      b. **to send**                      c. **was sent**                      d. **to be sent**



104. I hate ..... at.  
a. **laughing**                      b. **being laughed**                      c. **be laughed**                      d. **to laugh**
105. The house ..... decorated yet.  
a. **hasn't**                      b. **hasn't been**                      c. **won't**                      d. **won't have**
106. It ..... that tourism will flourish again in Egypt in a few years.  
a. **expects**                      b. **has expected**                      c. **is expecting**                      d. **is expected**
107. The man is thought ..... from a dangerous disease.  
a. **he is suffering**                      b. **he suffered**                      c. **to be suffered**                      d. **to have suffered**
108. .... believed to have recovered from his illness.  
a. **It has**                      b. **He has**                      c. **It is**                      d. **He is**
109. People ..... wood to produce chemicals.  
a. **are burnt**                      b. **burn**                      c. **burning**                      d. **were burnt**
110. I remember ..... to many parties last month.  
a. **to be invited**                      b. **being invited**                      c. **been invited**                      d. **inviting**
111. When I returned home, I found out that the computer device .....  
a. **had been disappeared**                      b. **had disappeared**                      c. **has been disappeared**                      d. **has disappeared**
112. He went to the barber's to ..... his hair cut.  
a. **take**                      b. **do**                      c. **have**                      d. **make**
113. Please, don't shout at her. You'll only ..... her cry.  
a. **make**                      b. **cause**                      c. **allow**                      d. **get**
114. I hope the kidnappers will ..... the hostages go.  
a. **allow**                      b. **force**                      c. **permit**                      d. **let**
115. I ..... yesterday.  
a. **had my teeth checked**                      b. **had checked my teeth**  
c. **checked my teeth**                      d. **had my teeth were checked**
116. Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports .....  
a. **to type**                      b. **type**                      c. **typing**                      d. **typed**
117. I didn't ..... I did it myself.  
a. **prepare my meal**                      b. **have my meal prepared**  
c. **get my meal preparing**                      d. **have prepared my meal**
118. My mother ..... me tidy my room this morning.  
a. **caused**                      b. **got**                      c. **had**                      d. **forced**
119. I will get someone ..... me carry these bags.  
a. **to help**                      b. **helped**                      c. **be help**                      d. **help**
120. My mother had me ..... her do the shopping this morning.  
a. **help**                      b. **helps**                      c. **helped**                      d. **to help**
121. Ola promised that she ..... home tomorrow.  
a. **would have been**                      b. **will have been**                      c. **be**                      d. **will be**
122. She has just told me that they ..... to their friend's wedding tonight.  
a. **has gone**                      b. **have gone**                      c. **going**                      d. **are going**
123. Samy promised that he ..... me as soon as the plane landed.  
a. **phoned**                      b. **will phone**                      c. **had phoned**                      d. **would phone**



124. He said that it ..... a busy day.  
 a. **is being**                      b. **was**                      c. **will be**                      d. **is**
125. He said he ..... be able to help me the following day.  
 a. **won't**                      b. **will**                      c. **can't**                      d. **would**
126. The teacher told us that the Nile ..... the longest river in the world.  
 a. **has**                      b. **was being**                      c. **is**                      d. **will**
127. My uncle promises he ..... meet me at home.  
 a. **would**                      b. **will**                      c. **can**                      d. **may**
128. Can you ..... me why you were late?  
 a. **tell**                      b. **ask**                      c. **wonder**                      d. **say**
129. Ali said just now that he ..... a new novel.  
 a. **was read**                      b. **had read**                      c. **is reading**                      d. **was reading**
130. He explained that he ..... late because of road accident the previous day.  
 a. **will be**                      b. **has been**                      c. **had been**                      d. **would be**
131. Ahmed asked me where ..... the day before.  
 a. **did I go**                      b. **had I gone**                      c. **I went**                      d. **I had gone**
132. Mona promised she would not tell anyone what ..... said.  
 a. **I have**                      b. **had I**                      c. **have I**                      d. **I had**
133. He asked me whether ..... to Cairo Tower before.  
 a. **have I been**                      b. **I had been**                      c. **had I been**                      d. **I have been**
134. I wonder if ..... at home now.  
 a. **does he**                      b. **has he**                      c. **he has**                      d. **he is**
135. He asked me ..... I had written my report or not.  
 a. **weather**                      b. **if**                      c. **had**                      d. **whether**
136. He ..... her how she had spent the holiday.  
 a. **promised**                      b. **told**                      c. **asked**                      d. **wondered**
137. Can you tell me what ..... about your idea?  
 a. **do your parents think**                      b. **are your parents thought**  
 c. **your parents are thought**                      d. **your parents think**
138. My friend phoned me to know which university I ..... the following year.  
 a. **will join**                      b. **would join**                      c. **have joined**                      d. **had joined**
139. She has just said that she ..... her job.  
 a. **was leaving**                      b. **will leave**                      c. **leave**                      d. **would leave**
140. James said that he ..... England last summer.  
 a. **had visited**                      b. **would visit**                      c. **visited**                      d. **is visiting**
141. Mum asked me ..... the door open.  
 a. **if keep**                      b. **keep**                      c. **to keep**                      d. **whether keep**
142. She ..... if I wanted her help, she would give me a hand.  
 a. **asked**                      b. **told**                      c. **said to**                      d. **said**
143. He ..... me that we had an important meeting the next day.  
 a. **wondered**                      b. **reminded**                      c. **said**                      d. **denied**
144. She told me a moment ago that she ..... me next Friday.  
 a. **was visiting**                      b. **will visit**                      c. **had visited**                      d. **visited**



145. The boy said that he ..... a film then.  
a. **had watched**      b. **is watching**      c. **was watching**      d. **would watch**
146. He said to me, "Where .....?"  
a. **I had been**      b. **have I been**      c. **have you been**      d. **you have been**
147. She wondered ..... I was late.  
a. **where**      b. **whom**      c. **that**      d. **why**
148. I recommend ..... a night at a hotel.  
a. **that book**      b. **you booking**      c. **that you book**      d. **to book**
149. He suggested that I ..... a training course.  
a. **doing**      b. **do**      c. **to doing**      d. **to do**
150. The policeman instructed the people ..... fast.  
a. **don't drive**      b. **drive**      c. **not driving**      d. **not to drive**
151. My parents ..... me to work hard at school.  
a. **said**      b. **advised**      c. **explained**      d. **wondered**
152. The teacher suggested that Maria ..... the exercise again.  
a. **doing**      b. **do**      c. **to do**      d. **is done**
153. Ahmed says he ..... ready now to go shopping.  
a. **is being**      b. **is**      c. **was**      d. **had been**
154. They ..... about the price of a room at the hotel.  
a. **promised**      b. **threatened**      c. **admitted**      d. **inquired**
155. The doctor advised me ..... up smoking.  
a. **gave**      b. **giving**      c. **give**      d. **to give**
156. My neighbour ..... to complain to the police if I didn't turn the music down.  
a. **threatened**      b. **suggested**      c. **recommended**      d. **said**
157. He ..... me that he had had a busy day at work.  
a. **admitted**      b. **explained**      c. **told**      d. **said**
158. The employee ..... that he was not given fair treatment by the boss.  
a. **threatened**      b. **told**      c. **complained**      d. **asked**
159. The teacher wanted to know which exams I .....  
a. **had passed**      b. **passed**      c. **am passing**      d. **have passed**
160. He ..... the name of the product.  
a. **wanted to know**      b. **wondered**      c. **inquired**      d. **told**
161. The ship's captain ..... the sailors to work harder.  
a. **ordered**      b. **inquired**      c. **said**      d. **wondered**
162. The teacher warned us ..... our time.  
a. **no waste**      b. **not to waste**      c. **don't waste**      d. **not wasting**
163. My father decided ..... a new house.  
a. **being built**      b. **building**      c. **to build**      d. **to be built**
164. On my way to the station, I stopped ..... about my friend.  
a. **asked**      b. **ask**      c. **to ask**      d. **asking**
165. We expect ..... the English test this year.  
a. **to pass**      b. **to passing**      c. **passing**      d. **pass**
166. They suggested ..... for a picnic in the park.  
a. **goes**      b. **to go**      c. **has gone**      d. **going**



167. She often avoids ..... with strangers as she is very shy.  
 a. **speak**                      b. **speaking**                      c. **speaks**                      d. **to speak**
168. The lazy student admitted ..... his homework at home.  
 a. **leaves**                      b. **left**                      c. **leaving**                      d. **to leave**
169. He stopped ..... a long time ago.  
 a. **smoking**                      b. **to smoke**                      c. **smoked**                      d. **had smoked**
170. My teacher promised ..... me.  
 a. **visiting**                      b. **would visit**                      c. **to visit**                      d. **visit**
171. I was advised ..... by a doctor, but it was not possible.  
 a. **being seen**                      b. **to see**                      c. **to be seen**                      d. **seeing**
172. The heavy rain forced me ..... at home the last weekend.  
 a. **staying**                      b. **stay**                      c. **stayed**                      d. **to stay**
173. He never allows ..... in his office.  
 a. **smoke**                      b. **to smoke**                      c. **smoking**                      d. **smokes**
174. My sister hates ..... by air.  
 a. **flying**                      b. **to fly**                      c. **flies**                      d. **flew**
175. What do you expect her .....?  
 a. **doing**                      b. **done**                      c. **to do**                      d. **to doing**
176. Although my question was easy, he refused ..... it.  
 a. **answer**                      b. **to answer**                      c. **for answering**                      d. **answering**
177. Everyone agreed ..... at the airport.  
 a. **meeting**                      b. **to meeting**                      c. **met**                      d. **to meet**
178. I hope ..... the next reading competition.  
 a. **to win**                      b. **win**                      c. **to be won**                      d. **winning**
179. I dislike ..... to.  
 a. **lying**                      b. **be lied**                      c. **being lied**                      d. **to lie**
180. You should practice ..... Japanese before going to Japan.  
 a. **to speak**                      b. **speak**                      c. **speaking**                      d. **spoke**
181. I regret ..... you that your son is ill.  
 a. **telling**                      b. **told**                      c. **had told**                      d. **to tell**
182. I regret ..... to the cinema. The film wasn't interesting.  
 a. **had gone**                      b. **to go**                      c. **go**                      d. **going**
183. I must remember ..... dad when I reach the airport.  
 a. **to phone**                      b. **phone**                      c. **phoning**                      d. **will phone**
184. I remember ..... you before. I'm sure of that.  
 a. **to meet**                      b. **meet**                      c. **to be met**                      d. **meeting**
185. She forgot ..... the medicine so she took it again unnecessarily.  
 a. **to take**                      b. **take**                      c. **had taken**                      d. **taking**
186. He forgot ..... off the light before he slept so mum got angry with him.  
 a. **turned**                      b. **to turn**                      c. **turn**                      d. **turning**
187. When I told my father the problem, he advised ..... a course.  
 a. **take**                      b. **me take**                      c. **taking**                      d. **to take**



188. Doctors usually advise overweight people ..... less.  
a. eat                      b. that eat                      c. to eat                      d. eating
189. Children should be encouraged ..... after themselves.  
a. looking                      b. look                      c. to look                      d. to be looked
190. After ..... for three days, the criminal was finally arrested.  
a. chasing                      b. being chased                      c. had been chased                      d. had chased
191. You ..... try a piece of my cake.  
a. have to                      b. must                      c. would                      d. should
192. I ..... go to the dentist yesterday as I had a toothache.  
a. didn't have to                      b. had to                      c. need                      d. must
193. You ..... apologize to Ali. You don't want to lose him as a friend.  
a. needn't                      b. need                      c. have to                      d. ought
194. Ali ..... go to the cinema tomorrow. He hasn't decided yet.  
a. will have to                      b. might                      c. must                      d. should
195. It ..... very windy during the night. There are leaves all over the ground.  
a. must have been                      b. must be                      c. can't have been                      d. can't be
196. Winning the first prize last year ..... Ali very happy.  
a. will have made                      b. can't make                      c. must have made                      d. mustn't make
197. I can't remember where I left my mobile phone. I'm not sure, I ..... it at home.  
a. must have left                      b. must leave                      c. might have left                      d. can leave
198. That watch ..... have cost a lot of money. It is made of plastic.  
a. might                      b. can                      c. can't                      d. must
199. You ..... the door. It was open when I got home.  
a. can't have locked                      b. can't lock                      c. can have locked                      d. can be lock
200. He can hardly walk. He ..... be very ill.  
a. mustn't                      b. should                      c. must                      d. shouldn't
201. I traveled by train, but I ..... by car.  
a. might have travelled                      b. could travel                      c. could have travelled                      d. can travel
202. Retirement ..... be an unhappy event.  
a. need                      b. ought                      c. shouldn't                      d. mustn't
203. I ..... remember to email my cousin today. It is his birthday.  
a. ought to                      b. need                      c. must                      d. should
204. You ..... have brought food. We already have a lot.  
a. should                      b. must                      c. mustn't                      d. needn't
205. You ..... be 18 to get a driving licence in England.  
a. ought to                      b. have to                      c. need                      d. might
206. She looks ill. I think she ..... to see a doctor.  
a. can                      b. must                      c. ought                      d. should
207. There's a lot of traffic on the roads today, so we ..... late.  
a. might be                      b. can't be                      c. must have been                      d. ought to be
208. You ..... wash the car. I will wash it tomorrow.  
a. mustn't                      b. can't                      c. needn't                      d. might not



209. You ..... have put your coat on the floor. It was wrong.  
 a. **mustn't**                      b. **can't**                      c. **shouldn't**                      d. **may not**
210. The sign in the park says that people ..... walk on the grass.  
 a. **mustn't**                      b. **don't have to**                      c. **needn't**                      d. **don't need to**
211. When you go to Paris, you ..... visit the Eiffel Tower. It is amazing.  
 a. **have to**                      b. **must**                      c. **need**                      d. **ought**
212. You ..... to have made that mistake.  
 a. **ought not**                      b. **shouldn't**                      c. **mustn't**                      d. **might not**
213. I knew that the test will be postponed for next week so I ..... for it yesterday.  
 a. **didn't have to revise**                      b. **needn't revise**                      c. **needn't have revised**                      d. **don't have to revise**
214. You ..... sleep too much because it is bad for health.  
 a. **oughtn't**                      b. **shouldn't**                      c. **needn't**                      d. **might not**
215. You ..... worked so hard yesterday. Now you are tired!  
 a. **should**                      b. **shouldn't**                      c. **should have**                      d. **shouldn't have**
216. She ..... accept the offer. I have no idea.  
 a. **must**                      b. **might**                      c. **should**                      d. **has to**
217. Yesterday was a holiday so I ..... get up early.  
 a. **didn't need to**                      b. **needn't have**                      c. **mustn't**                      d. **don't have to**
218. Does she ..... take all this luggage?  
 a. **have to**                      b. **need**                      c. **must**                      d. **should**
219. You ..... forget to do your homework.  
 a. **needn't**                      b. **don't need**                      c. **mustn't**                      d. **don't have to**
220. I ..... buy my mother a present for her birthday. I've promised her.  
 a. **have to**                      b. **must**                      c. **ought**                      d. **need**
221. I don't know who's at the door. It ..... dad.  
 a. **must be**                      b. **can't be**                      c. **might be**                      d. **has to be**
222. Look, it's raining! I ..... have brought an umbrella.  
 a. **ought to**                      b. **must**                      c. **might**                      d. **shouldn't**
223. We can walk to the bookshop if you want, but we ..... The bus goes there.  
 a. **don't have to**                      b. **mustn't**                      c. **oughtn't**                      d. **can't**
224. She isn't late for school so she ..... hurry.  
 a. **mustn't**                      b. **needn't**                      c. **doesn't have**                      d. **can't**
225. He broke his leg yesterday and ..... to hospital.  
 a. **needn't go**                      b. **had to go**                      c. **must go**                      d. **might go**
226. In England, most people ..... work until they are 67.  
 a. **must**                      b. **have to**                      c. **need**                      d. **ought**
227. You ..... show your passport when you leave the country.  
 a. **should**                      b. **might**                      c. **have to**                      d. **can**
228. We ..... run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there.  
 a. **didn't have to**                      b. **needn't have**                      c. **mustn't have**                      d. **can't have**
229. If you can't dictate your conditions تفرض شروطك, you ..... negotiate تتفاوض.  
 a. **will**                      b. **should**                      c. **need**                      d. **ought**



230. If metal is heated, it .....  
 a. **will expand**      b. **expand**      c. **expands**      d. **would expand**
231. I always ..... a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer.  
 a. **will get**      b. **got**      c. **am getting**      d. **get**
232. If you regularly water a tree, it ..... better.  
 a. **should have grown**      b. **grows**      c. **would have grown**      d. **would grow**
233. I wouldn't have reached this stage unless she ..... me.  
 a. **helped**      b. **had helped**      c. **was helping**      d. **would help**
234. What ..... if he had left the meeting?  
 a. **would have happened**      b. **would happen**      c. **had happened**      d. **will happen**
235. .... he understand the lesson if he read the summary?  
 a. **Would**      b. **Did**      c. **Can**      d. **Will**
236. I would put on protective glasses if I ..... you.  
 a. **were**      b. **will be**      c. **had been**      d. **am**
237. If Wael lost his job, he ..... look for work in the city.  
 a. **will**      b. **would**      c. **will not**      d. **would not**
238. If it ..... so heavily, we would not have had floods.  
 a. **rain**      b. **rained**      c. **didn't rain**      d. **hadn't rained**
239. If you had an invitation to the party, you ..... in easily.  
 a. **would have been allowed**      b. **would have been allowing**  
 c. **would be allowed**      d. **would allow**
240. If you plant a tree, it ..... lovely in a few years.  
 a. **looks**      b. **is looking**      c. **will look**      d. **looked**
241. If I stay up late at night, I ..... tired the next day.  
 a. **will feel**      b. **have felt**      c. **feel**      d. **would feel**
242. I wish I ..... my time last weekend.  
 a. **didn't waste**      b. **hadn't wasted**      c. **wasted**      d. **had wasted**
243. Salwa is penniless مفلسة. She wishes she ..... spent all her money yesterday.  
 a. **hasn't**      b. **hadn't**      c. **didn't**      d. **doesn't**
244. I wish I ..... where I left my jacket.  
 a. **could know**      b. **knew**      c. **had known**      d. **know**
245. I wish I ..... go to the stadium tomorrow.  
 a. **can**      b. **could**      c. **will**      d. **may**
246. I ..... he would attend the next meeting.  
 a. **wish**      b. **want**      c. **hope**      d. **keen**
247. She's sorry now. She wishes she ..... to my advice.  
 a. **listened**      b. **would listen**      c. **could listen**      d. **had listened**
248. She wishes she ..... in my place now.  
 a. **is**      b. **was being**      c. **has been**      d. **were**
249. I wish global warming .....  
 a. **will stop**      b. **stop**      c. **stops**      d. **would stop**
250. Had it rained so heavily, we ..... floods.  
 a. **wouldn't have had**      b. **may have**      c. **would have had**      d. **would have**



251. .... raining, we won't be able to finish the game.  
 a. **If it didn't stop**      b. **Should it stop**      c. **If it stopped**      d. **Unless it stops**
252. .... studying hard, he would have got high marks.  
 a. **In case of**      b. **Provided**      c. **As long as**      d. **Without**
253. Were he ..... me the truth, I'd forgive him.  
 a. **tells**      b. **tell**      c. **told**      d. **to tell**
254. .... he arrived early yesterday, he could have attended the conference.  
 a. **Had**      b. **If**      c. **Hadn't**      d. **Unless**
255. .... it rain heavily, I'd stay indoors. (السودان 2015)  
 a. **Unless**      b. **Should**      c. **If**      d. **Providing**
256. .... he a proper plan, he wouldn't waste his time.  
 a. **If**      b. **Unless**      c. **Were**      d. **Had**
257. .... I in your position, I would accept the offer.  
 a. **Unless**      b. **If**      c. **Had**      d. **Were**
258. .... you hurry up, you won't catch the train.  
 a. **On condition that**      b. **Unless**      c. **In case**      d. **As long as**
259. .... your help, I would have lost my life.  
 a. **If it weren't for**      b. **Without**      c. **If it hadn't for**      d. **In case**
260. .... you are eighteen or older, you can't drive a car.  
 a. **Without**      b. **As long as**      c. **On condition that**      d. **Unless**
261. You can go to the park ..... you are home at eight o'clock.  
 a. **in case**      b. **provided that**      c. **supposing**      d. **as long**
262. Only use this device ..... danger.  
 a. **in case of**      b. **as long as**      c. **if**      d. **in case**
263. .... that you were an animal, what animal would you wish to be?  
 a. **Imagine**      b. **Supposed**      c. **Condition**      d. **As long**
264. You can watch TV ..... that you do your homework first.  
 a. **on condition**      b. **provide**      c. **case**      d. **long as**
265. I can lend you the money ..... as you promise to give it back soon.  
 a. **provided**      b. **as long**      c. **if**      d. **on condition**
266. You can't enter the cinema without ..... a ticket first.  
 a. **booked**      b. **book**      c. **to book**      d. **booking**
267. You can't enter the building ..... wearing a helmet.  
 a. **in case**      b. **unless**      c. **without**      d. **if not**
268. .... me, I would tell him.  
 a. **Had he asked**      b. **If he asks**      c. **Were he to ask**      d. **If he had asked**
269. He will catch the train ..... coming in time.  
 a. **if**      b. **unless**      c. **in case of**      d. **if it weren't for**
270. Leave the factory quickly ..... fire.  
 a. **in case of**      b. **in case**      c. **as long as**      d. **suppose**



## السؤال الثانى

### 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(10 Marks)

- \* تحتوي قطعة الفهم علي عدد من الكلمات يتراوح بين 260 إلى 280 كلمة.
- \* تتناول قطعة الفهم موضوعاً يرتبط بحقائق معينة أو يرتبط برواية أو نص وصفي أو جدلي أو خطاب أو بريد الكتروني أو محادثة ...
- \* يُطلب من الطالب الإجابة علي: (تخصص درجة واحدة لكل سؤال من الأسئلة العشرة)
- أ. ستة (6) أسئلة اختيار من متعدد (Multiple-choice Questions)
- ب. أربعة (4) أسئلة (مفتوحة النهايات) (Open-ended Questions) ... واحد أو اثنان منها عن التفكير النقدي.

### كيفية الإجابة على سؤال قطعة الفهم

1. الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ القطعة للمرة الأولى وافهمها جيداً.
2. الخطوة الثانية : اقرأ القطعة مرة ثانية من أجل مزيد من الفهم.
3. الخطوة الثالثة : اقرأ الأسئلة وافهم ما تطلبه جيداً.
4. الخطوة الرابعة : عُد إلى القطعة نفسها واستخرج الإجابة المناسبة للأسئلة العشرة حسب محتوى القطعة.
5. الخطوة الخامسة : إنقل الإجابات في ورقة الإجابة بطريقة منظمة.

### الخطوتين الأولى والثانية

- \* يتحقق الفهم الجيد للقطعة عن طريق: إتباع الأساليب التالية:
- 1. قراءة الأسئلة قبل قراءة القطعة لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية للموضوع:
- \* ذلك يساعد في تحديد المعلومات التي ستبحث عنها في القطعة والتركيز عند قراءة القطعة علي الجزئيات التي تستفسر عنها الأسئلة.
- \* لابد من تخزين ما تطلبه الأسئلة في ذهنك قبل أن تعود لقراءة القطعة.
- 2. تفسير الكلمات الصعبة بالقطعة والتي تحول دون فهمها بشكل جيد:
- \* لا تشغل كثيراً بالمفردات الصعبة الواردة في القطعة لأن وجودها سيحدث لا محالة والمهم فهمها خلال السياق وليس ترجمتها حرفياً.
- \* توقف عند نهاية كل جملة لتعرف معني ما قرأته و لا يُشترط الترجمة الحرفية للكلام ولكن عليك بفهم معني الجملة أو فكرتها.
- بعض الطرق التي تساعدك على تفسير الكلمات الصعبة بالقطعة
- أولاً. اهتم بفهم سياق الجملة أكثر من اهتمامك بترجمتها حرفياً:
- \* عليك بتفسير الكلمات الصعبة في كل جملة لتكوين معني للجملة وفهم سياقها الخاص في إطار السياق العام للموضوع.
- \* تذكر أنك لست مطالب بترجمة الكلمة الصعبة حرفياً بل فهم معناها في إطار سياق (معني) الجملة الكاملة التي جاءت فيها الكلمة.
- ثانياً. خمن معني الكلمات الصعبة عند القراءة:
- \* خمن معني الكلمة أو العبارة من السياق العام أو المعني العام للجملة نفسها أو الفقرة التي تتواجد فيها أو القطعة (الموضوع ككل).

مثال من اختبارات كتاب التدريبات على أهمية التخمين وكذلك سهولته خاصة ان كان في سؤال الاختيار من متعدد

\* Example (1): Workbook (Practice Test 1a):

\* الفقرة التي جاءت بها الكلمة:

He works for the Ministry of *Antiquities*, so he knows a lot about ancient Egypt.

\* السؤال الذي سأل عن الكلمة:

6. What does the word *antiquities* mean?

- a. very old things      b. farming      c. medicine      d. education

\* كيفية التعامل مع (حل) السؤال:

- \* الجملة داخل الفقرة تعني (هو يعمل في وزارة .....، لذلك هو يعرف الكثير عن مصر القديمة).
- \* بتجريب الاختيارات يجوز أن يصبح المعني هو يعمل في وزارة الأشياء القديمة، لذلك هو يعرف الكثير عن مصر القديمة.
- \* لا يجوز أن يصبح المعني هو يعمل في وزارة الزراعة (الطب) (التعليم)، لذلك هو يعرف الكثير عن مصر القديمة.



أمور تجعل التخمين سهلاً وممكنًا

أ. معرفة نوع الكلمة التي تخمنها: (الفعل - الاسم - الصفة - الظرف).

In 1982 an American policeman who had a heart attack **claimed** it was because he had spent time looking after the Tutankhamen Exhibition in San Francisco.

\* الكلمة (**claimed**) فعل ماضي قام به رجل شرطة أصيب بأزمة قلبية وتبعه كاتب القطعة بسبب الأزمة.  
\* هذا الفعل قد يعني "قال - إعترف - صرح" ... وهو في الأصل يعني "زعم - ادعى".

ب. تخمين الكلمات المترابطة: \* كثيراً ما يكون من السهل تخمين الكلمات التي تأتي في إطار سرد مجموعة من الأشياء المترابطة.

Extreme sports started long ago. **Hang-gliding, skydiving and hot-air ballooning** are just three of the many extreme sports practised.

\* يكفيك هنا أن تعرف خلال السياق أن الكلمات الثلاثة تشير جميعاً إلى أنواع معينة من الرياضات الصعبة (**extreme sports**).  
\* ليس ضرورياً ترجمة معاني الرياضات الثلاثة حرفياً.

ج. تخمين الكلمات المتناقضة: \* من السهل أيضاً تخمين الكلمات التي تأتي ضمن أفكار متناقضة.  
\* أي أننا نتعرف على الكلمة أو الكلمات الصعبة من تناقضها مع كلمة أو كلمات أخرى معروفة.

A single solar cell produces only a tiny current, **but** an **array** of cells connected together makes a useful amount of power.

\* بوجود تناقض في الفكرة باستخدام (**but**), تستنتج أن كلمة (**array**) تعني (مصفوفة - مجموعة - عدد من) لتناقضها مع كلمة (**single**) بمعنى (فردى).

د. تخمين الكلمات المفسرة (المعرفة) (الموضحة) (المشروحة): \* بعض الكلمات الصعبة تكون مشروحة في نفس فقرتها بطريقتين:  
أ. في الجزء الذي يليها مباشرة (إما في تعبير ما أو جملة كاملة).  
ب. في الجزء الذي يسبقها مباشرة (إما في تعبير ما أو جملة كاملة).

**Brain drain**, the action of having highly skilled and educated people leaving their country to work abroad, has become one of the developing countries concerns.

\* تبدأ القطعة بهذا المصطلح (**Brain drain**) (الذي قد يكون جديد علي الكثيرين) لكن بقراءة التوضيح الخاص به بين الفاصلتين تكتشف أنه يشير إلى (عملية هجرة المتعلمين والمهرة لبلادهم لأجل العمل بالخارج) (هجرة العقول).

ثالثاً: اهتم بالجملة كلها لا الكلمة الصعبة وحدها:

\* لا تدقق النظر في الكلمة الجديدة وحدها. \* اقرأ الجملة كاملة وترجمها في ذهنك وافهم سياقها بغض النظر عن الكلمة الصعبة.

Have you ever wondered how you would **grasp** the information taught in class? Our minds and bodies gather information in various ways.

\* لو نظرت إلى كلمة (**grasp**) وحدها لن تستطيع أبداً تخمين معناها لكنها في السياق العام للكلام تحمل معني "يفهم أو يستوعب" حيث أنها قد ألحقت بكلمات "المعلومات التي يتم تدريسها بالفصل".

رابعاً: تطويع (تعريب) الأفعال:

\* تستطيع في بعض الأحيان أن تطويع الأفعال كأن تقوم بتعريب الفعل وتحاول تمشيته مع المعني وهذا يساعدك علي التخمين.  
\* قد تبدو الطريقة غريبة لكنها موجودة في الحقيقة، فنحن ننطق في أحاديثنا اليومية أفعالاً مُعرّبة مثل (شَير) أي قام بالمشاركة (share) أو (يُفرمت) (يقوم بفعل إعادة التشكيل أو التكوين (format)). إلى آخر ذلك من أفعال ...



Since many of them usually play by themselves, they live rather isolated lives, with little opportunity to **interact** with other people.

\* الفعل (interact) قد يكون صعب لكن بتعريبية علي طريقة (إنترآكت مع بقية الناس)، يمكنك التعويض عنه بمعنى (يتواصل - ينسجم - يتفاعل مع بقية الناس) ...

خامساً: تجاوز الكلمات الصعبة جداً:

\* حين يصعب تخمين كلمة ما، يُمكنك تجاوزها بفرض معني وهمي أو تصنيف عام لها ...  
\* يمكنك أن تفرض معني جيد (حسن) أو معني (سيء) للكلمة الصعبة وتتجاوز الأمر حتي لا تضيع وقتك.

Capsaicin is the oil found in no other plant except hot pepper. It is colourless and **odourless**.

\* يمكن تجاوز الصفة (odourless) بفرض معني (بلا شيء ما) أو (بلا طعم - بلا رائحة) نظراً لأنها تتبع كلمة بمعنى (بلا لون).

\* في الخطوة الثالثة، عليك بقراءة الأسئلة جيداً ومعرفة المطلوب لكل سؤال من أجل الاستعانة بالقطعة لإجابته.

\* مجموعة من الأسئلة الهامة التي ترد كثيراً في قطع الفهم:

1. What does the underlined word (...) refer to / indicate / show? ماذا الذي تشير إليه (تبينه) الكلمة (.....) التي تحتها خط؟
2. Give (Put) (Write) (Suggest) a suitable title for the passage. اعط (اكتب) (اقترح) عنوان مناسب للقطعة.
3. What's the main idea of the passage / the text? ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية للقطعة / للنص؟
4. Pick out (Detect) (Find) words in the passage which mean: استخرج (أوجد) كلمات في القطعة تعني الآتي:
5. From the passage, give one word for each of the following. استخرج من القطعة كلمة واحدة تعبر عن المعاني الآتية.
6. Show (بين) / indicate (وضح) / illustrate (اشرح) / discuss (ناقش) / Name (اذكر) / compare (قارن)

\* نقل الإجابات من القطعة: عليك بما يلي:

1. تنقيح الإجابة التي تأخذها من القطعة وتطويرها لتناسب نمط السؤال نفسه.
2. تجنب نقل الإجابة بدون فهم جيد للسؤال. (فهم السؤال نصف الإجابة) (يجب أولاً إدراك الهدف من السؤال).
3. تقسيم الإجابة الي عناصر ان أمكن (لأجل تسهيل قراءتها علي المصحح وتجنب غموض الإجابة الذي قد يضعف درجة السؤال).
4. تجنب إضافة أي شيء للإجابة ليس له علاقة بالمطلوب في السؤال. (ذلك يقلل الدرجة ولا يضيف لها).

## Test yourself

### 1. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As watching a television programme will not need more effort on the part of the viewer than pressing a button and doing some adjustments to the set, television viewing has become the most popular form of entertainment. People who can see the best of the old and new films on the small screen, will not take the trouble of going to the cinema unless they prefer to spend an evening out of home for a change.

Unfortunately, however, with some people, television, as a pastime, has taken the place of reading or practising useful hobbies. It is said that, due to television, modern youths have limited general knowledge, for most of their spare time is taken by television watching.

Like TV viewing, recently watching movies and episodes on the internet has become popular. It is just as easy as watching TV. It also makes the viewer passive and lazy. It is thought by some experts



People who stay watching TV all the time tend to eat more and become obese. These people are now called “couch potatoes” for they get fatter and fatter sitting in front of TV and not doing any form of exercise.

Answer the following questions:

- 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

There are many kinds of headache. The most common is migraine. This affects only one side of the head and, for some unknown reason, attacks mostly women. It appears to run in families.



Men can be attacked by migraine, of course, but in men the most common form of headache is the cluster pain. This may attack a person for a few hours or a few days, but then it goes away and may not return for many months, or even years. The pain of cluster headaches is so severe that the sufferer may cry out in pain and walk restlessly up and down, unable to concentrate on work, study or pleasure.

What is the cause of headaches? Most medical experts agree that it is caused by blood vessels in the brain becoming too full of blood. Then a substance called neurokinin appears; this is a chemical that produces pain. Therefore, treatment is usually to reduce the amount of blood and of neurokinin. However, many questions remain without answers and the problems of headaches remain as a challenge to medical science.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What is neurokinin?
  - a. **It is a substance that kills pain.**
  - b. **It is a substance that relieves headaches.**
  - c. **It is a chemical that causes pain.**
  - d. **It is a chemical that eases pain.**
2. How can headaches be treated?
  - a. **Through reducing neurokinin.**
  - b. **Through increasing neurokinin.**
  - c. **Through transfusing blood.**
  - d. **Through filling up brain blood vessels.**
3. Which of the following statements is TRUE?
  - a. **Migraine attacks men more than women.**
  - b. **Cluster pain attacks women more.**
  - c. **Migraine attacks women more than men.**
  - d. **Cluster pains never attacks men.**
4. Migraine affects .....
  - a. **the whole head**
  - b. **all the body**
  - c. **part of the head**
  - d. **the head and the leg**
5. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
  - a. **headache**
  - b. **migraine**
  - c. **aspirin**
  - d. **Pain**
6. The underlined word "relieve" is close in meaning to .....
  - a. **reduce**
  - b. **trouble**
  - c. **increase**
  - d. **create**
7. Name two different kinds of headache.
8. What is a possible cause of headaches?
9. What three things might a person suffering from a cluster headache do?
10. When will we be able to end the problem of headaches?

**3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Since the beginning of time, man's life has been a continuous struggle. This struggle has always been connected with his daily needs. Much effort must be exerted by man to get these needs fulfilled. Nature doesn't give man what he desires easily. He has to push his way by himself and thus he has learned many skills and developed several methods of thinking throughout the ages.

At the beginning, man struggled to feed and clothe himself and to keep himself warm. So, he invented hunting weapons, weaving and making fire. As modern man's needs have grown more and more complex; his struggle has taken another shape. For example, he does not only struggle to make a fire to warm himself and cook his food, but seeks to control the hidden powers of nature that could run his machines and make his life easier and more comfortable. To achieve that, he has depended on



petroleum. But, as the price of petroleum is getting higher and higher and the supply is getting lower and lower man is now turning to other sources of energy such as the atom or the sun.

With the invention of modern technology, the struggle has been severer and more intense. Today, man is in a race with modern fast life which showers him with challenges all the time. Individuals and societies are competing to develop the most of modern technology and make the best benefit out of it. Today, you feel that the world is in a technological war. Unless people are aware of the fact that the purpose of the competition is mutual benefit based on collaboration and assistance, the matter will become worse and maybe one day some world countries will be fighting for a trademark or a new technological device!

**Answer the following questions:**

1. The writer thinks that unless world countries realize some facts, .....  

<b>a. the future will be full of achievements</b>	<b>b. the matter will be worse</b>
<b>c. life will become easier and faster</b>	<b>d. world countries won't ever fight</b>
2. In modern times man is struggling .....  

<b>a. to find different kinds of power</b>	<b>b. to obtain food</b>
<b>c. to hunt animals</b>	<b>d. to invent hunting weapons</b>
3. Man's struggle has always been connected with .....  

<b>a. technology</b>	<b>b. weapons</b>
<b>c. warmth</b>	<b>d. needs</b>
4. Why has man developed his skills?  

<b>a. To help nature</b>	<b>b. To control himself</b>
<b>c. To fulfill his desires</b>	<b>d. To fight the world</b>
5. Modern man .....  

<b>a. needs oil</b>	<b>b. lives uncomfortably</b>
<b>c. has several needs</b>	<b>d. hates technology</b>
6. Modern life .....  

<b>a. imposes many challenges on man</b>	<b>b. makes man not exert any effort</b>
<b>c. is slower than life in the past</b>	<b>d. doesn't require any kind of struggle</b>
7. Why does man always have to struggle?
8. For what purpose did man invent hunting weapons?
9. Find words in the passage which mean: **a. for instance** **b. power**
10. How has the struggle get with the invention of technology?

**4. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

One of the most popular literary figures in American literature is a woman who spent almost half of her long life in China, a country on a continent thousands of miles from the United States. In her lifetime she earned this country's most highly acclaimed literary award: the Pulitzer Prize, and also the most prestigious form of literary recognition in the world, the Nobel Prize for Literature.

Pearl Buck was almost a household word throughout much of her lifetime because of her prolific literary output, which consisted of some eighty - five published works, including several dozen novels, six collections of short stories, fourteen books for children, and more than a dozen works of nonfiction. When she was eighty years old, some twenty - five volumes were awaiting publication. Many of those books were set in China, the land in which she spent so much of her life. Her books and her life served



as a bridge between the cultures of the East and the West. As the product of those two cultures she became as she described herself, "mentally bifocal." Her unique background made her into an unusually interesting and versatile human being.

As we examine the life of Pearl Buck, we cannot help but be aware that we are in fact meeting three separate people: a wife and mother, an internationally famous writer and a humanitarian and philanthropist. One cannot really get to know Pearl Buck without learning about each of the three. Though honored in her lifetime with the William Dean Howell Medal of the American Academy of Arts and Letters in addition to the Nobel and Pulitzer prizes, Pearl Buck as a total human being, not only a famous author, is a captivating subject of study.

**Answer the following questions:**

- What is the author's main purpose in the passage?
  - To criticize the works of Pearl Buck.
  - To illustrate Pearl Buck's views on Chinese literature.
  - To indicate the background and diverse interests of Pearl Buck.
  - To discuss Buck's influence on the cultures of the East and the West.
- According to the passage, Pearl Buck is known as a writer of all of the following EXCEPT .....
  - novels
  - children's books
  - poetry
  - short stories
- Which of the following is NOT mentioned by the author as an award received by Pearl Buck?
  - The Nobel Prize
  - The Newberry Medal
  - The William Dean Howell medal
  - The Pulitzer prize
- Why was Pearl Buck was an unusual figure in American literature?
  - She wrote extensively about a very different culture.
  - She published half of her books abroad.
  - She won more awards than any other woman of her time.
  - She achieved her first success very late in life.
- Which of the following is TRUE?
  - Buck spent most of her life in America.
  - Buck was never honoured for her works.
  - Buck was only admired in China.
  - Buck connected two cultures together.
- The underlined word "versatile" means .....
  - stupid
  - skillful
  - pleased
  - ordinary
- Why did Pearl Buck describe herself as "mentally bifocal"?
- How do you think the writer feel towards Pearl Buck?
- What three separate people were inside Pearl Buck?
- What is the most important literary award in the world?

**5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income and provide youth with more work opportunities. In some European countries, tourism has brought in millions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions we have in Egypt.

We could, for instance, establish tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village near the Pyramids or in the New Valley for horse-riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like



rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would certainly help them get better, this is called curative tourism.

Our tourist today wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try out samples of our local food than to eat the international meals which are served in some places. This would be more interesting than having the same things he always eats in his own country.

It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hardworking employees. So what is needed is not expensive hotels but clean comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country. This is called home tourism.

On meeting tourists, Egyptian citizens have a big role to play to make these tourists want to visit our country again. They have to treat tourists in a friendly and polite way and give them as much help as they can. In fact the government and individuals have to cooperate for raising the number of foreigners visiting Egypt in order for economy to flourish.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Home tourism means .....
  - a. **people travelling around their own country.**
  - b. **serving international meals in our restaurants.**
  - c. **establishing expensive hotels.**
  - d. **establishing new tourist villages at cheap prices.**
2. To attract more tourists, we should .....
  - a. **try samples of local food.**
  - b. **serve international meals in our restaurants.**
  - c. **establish expensive hotels.**
  - d. **provide efficient and friendly service.**
3. In what way does the climate of Aswan and Helwan help tourism?
  - a. **It makes them feel worse.**
  - b. **It makes them feel better.**
  - c. **It makes them unhealthy.**
  - d. **It makes them earn money.**
4. The writer thinks that we could encourage Egyptians to see more of their country by .....
 

a. <b>lowering hotel prices</b>	b. <b>building many new hotels</b>
c. <b>making hotels more comfortable</b>	d. <b>building tourist villages</b>
5. The writer says that most of our tourists today are ..... people.
 

a. <b>rich</b>	b. <b>ordinary</b>
c. <b>business</b>	d. <b>poor</b>
6. The underlined word “**establish**” means .....
 

a. <b>set off</b>	b. <b>set down</b>
c. <b>set away</b>	d. <b>set up</b>
7. What is curative tourism?
8. Why should Egypt have flourishing tourism industry?
9. What can Egyptian people do to attract more tourists?
10. What does a tourist need nowadays?



## السؤال الثالث

## سجين زندا The Prisoner of Zenda

\* يُطلب من الطالب الإجابة على:

أ. أربعة (4) أسئلة اختيار من متعدد (Multiple-choice Questions) (4 درجات)  
 ب. ثلاثة (4) أسئلة (مفتوحة النهايات) (Open-ended Questions) تختبر التفكير النقدي ويجيب الطالب على اثنان منها. (3 درجات)

## أولاً: قائمة بأهم الكلمات الموجودة بالقصة

pretend	يتظاهر - يدعى	royal	ملكى / من أسرة ملكية	the pretend King	الملك المزيف
guard	حارس - يحرس	wicked (evil)	شرير	coronation	حفل تتويج
forgive	يسامح	legally	بشكل شرعى	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
bowed to	انحنى أمام	generous	لثيم (سخى)	hunting lodge	معسكر صيد
cheer	يهتف	lucky	محظوظ	swordsman	مبارز
reveal	يكشف	secretive	كتوم	opportunities	فرص
trust	يثق في	fair (just)	عادل (منصف)	responsibilities	مسئوليات
sign	يوقع	loyal (sincere)	وفى - مخلص	countess	كونتيسة
kidnap	يختطف	anxious	قلق جدا	castle	قلعة
bury	يدفن	furious	غاضب جدا	forest	غابة
support	يدعم - دعم	confident	واثق	inn owner	صاحبة الحانة
murder (kill)	يقتل	wounded (injured)	مجروح	throne	العرش
escape	يهرب	persuasive	مقنع	palace	القصر
offer	يعرض - عرض	practical	عملى	crown	التاج
shoot - shot	يطلق النار	skillful	ماهر	wedding	زفاف
stabbed	طعن	multilingual	متعدد اللغات	secret passage	ممر سرى
struck	ضرب بالسيف	jobless	عاطل	trap	فخ - مصيدة
remain (stay) King	يظل ملكا	thoughtful	مراع لشعور الغير	gate	بوابة
save (rescue)	ينقذ	bold	شجاع	spade	جاروف
shout	يصرخ - يصيح	adventurous	مغامر	duties	واجبات
trick (deceive)	يخدع	modest	متواضع	a stalemate	طريق مسدود
ignore	يتجاهل	passive	سلبي - كسول	permission	إذن - تصريح
lie to	يكذب على	lustful	شهوانى	fight/ fighter	يحارب / محارب
blame	يلوم	aspiring	لديه طموح	drawbridge	جسر متحرك
persuade	يقنع	cunning	ماكر	authority	السلطة
object to	يعترض على	emotional	سريع الانفعال	hunting	الصيد
look like	يشبه	bloody	دموى	mansion	منزل ريفى
suspect (doubt)	يشك في	reluctantly	بغير ارادته	prisoner	سجين
poison	يسمم	scheming (deceitful)	مخادع	spy	جاسوس
betray	يخون	selfish	أنانى	miracle	معجزة
tempt	يغرى	patriotic	محب للوطن	stone pipe	ماسورة حجرية
replace	يحل محل	dutiful	يعرف واجباته	pulse	النبض
signature	توقيع	observant	قوى الملاحظة	weapons	أسلحة
copy	ينسخ	cautious	حذر - حريص	moat	خندق
prove	يثبت - يبرهن	daring	جريء	guilt	ذنب
justify	يبرر	kind-hearted	طيب القلب	dodger	مراوغ



follow	يتبع	wise (sensible)	حكيم	principles	مبادئ
quicken	يصبح أسرع	far-sighted	بعيد النظر	moral	درس أخلاقي
plot against	ينقلب ضد	suspicious	شكاك	bandage	ضمادة جراح
lock	يحبس - يغلّق	fierce	شرس	veteran	محنك
cellar	القبو	vindictive	محب للانتقام	identity	الهوية
betrayal	الخيانة	rude	وقح	chains	سلاسل
identical	متطابق	villainous (dishonest)	غير أمين	strengths	نقاط القوة
double	قرين	hospitable	مضيف	weaknesses	نقاط الضعف
candle	شمعة	risk	مخاطرة	documents	وثائق
accent	لكنة - لهجة	imprison	يسجن	iron table	منضدة حديدية
obedient	مطيع	trust-worthy	جدير بالثقة	view	وجهة نظر

## ثانياً: أهم أسئلة التفكير النقدي بالقصة (شاملة أسئلة كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات) بإجاباتها

- What kind of novel is "The Prisoner of Zenda"?**  
It's an adventure novel.  
أي نوع من الروايات تكون رواية "سجين زندا"؟  
هي رواية مغامرة.
- What is the moral lesson of the story?**  
All people, with or without a position in society, had a duty to help other people.  
كل الناس، سواء لديهم مكانة في المجتمع أم لا، لديهم واجب مساعدة الآخرين.  
(WB) ما الدرس الأخلاقي للقصة؟
- What have you learnt from (The Prisoner of Zenda)?**  
The value of courage and honour.  
The importance of responsibility and work.  
ماذا تعلمت من رواية سجين زندا؟  
قيمة الشجاعة والشرف.  
أهمية المسؤولية والعمل.
- Which character in the story do you like most? Why?**  
Princess Flavia. Because she was popular, faithful, dutiful, patriotic and forgiving.  
الأميرة فلافا. لأنها كانت محبوبه، مخلصه، عندها احساس بالواجب، وطنية ومتسامحة.  
ما الشخصية التي تحبها كثيراً في القصة؟ لماذا؟
- How did good beat evil at the end of the novel?**  
The King restored his throne and the evil Duke was killed.  
كيف انتصر الخير على الشر في نهاية الرواية؟  
استرد الملك عرشه وقتل الدوق الشرير.
- Rudolf Rassendyll was jobless (idle). Explain.**  
He didn't do any job or anything useful.  
كان رودلف راسندل عاطلاً (فسر ذلك).  
لم يكن يؤدي أي وظيفة أو أي شيء مفيد.
- Rassendyll was secretive. Illustrate.**  
He didn't tell his family or his friends about his destination.  
كان راسندل كتوماً للأسرار (شرح ذلك).  
لم يخبر أسرته أو أصدقائه بمقصده.
- Rassendyll was a strict decision-maker. How?**  
He insisted on going to the summer house to meet Antoinette.  
كان راسندل صانع قرار صارف.  
أصر على الذهاب للمنزل الصيفي لمقابلة أنتوانيت.
- Give an example to show that Rassendyll was understanding (sensitive) (thoughtful).**  
He promised the King to leave Ruritania when Sapt and Fritz agreed he shouldn't attend the coronation.  
اعط مثال لتبين أن راسندل كان متفهماً (يراعي مشاعر الآخرين).  
وعد الملك أن يغادر دولة روريتانيا عندما اتفق سابت وفريتس أنه لا ينبغي أن يذهب إلى حفل التتويج.
- Rassendyll was brave (courageous) (bold) (risky). Explain.**  
He entered the old poor town alone.  
He killed three of Michael's men and saved the King.  
كان راسندل شجاعاً (جسوراً) (مخاطراً). (فسر ذلك).  
دخل المدينة القديمة الفقيرة وحده.  
قتل ثلاثة من رجال مايكل وأنقذ الملك.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

11. **Prove that Rassendyll had a sense of duty / was dutiful.** أثبت أن راسندل كان عنده احساس بالواجب كان وفيه.  
He insisted on going to Zenda to save the King. أصر علي الذهاب إلي زندا لإنقاذ الملك.
12. **Rassendyll was a man of principles (ethics) (morals) (honour) (fairness). Illustrate. (WB)** كان راسندل رجلاً ذو مبادئ (أخلاق) (أخلاق) (شرف) (عدل). اشرح ذلك  
He refused to ask the Princess to marry him or stay King forever because it wasn't fair for her. رفض أن يطلب من الأميرة أن تتزوجه أو أن يظل ملكاً للأبد لأن هذا لم يكن عدلاً لها.
13. **Rassendyll was helpful. Prove this.** كان راسندل متعاوناً أثبت ذلك  
He replaced the King and saved the throne. حل محل الملك وأنقذ العرش.
14. **Rassendyll was a good dodger. Explain.** كان راسندل مروغاً بارعاً كان ذلك  
He deceived Michael's men escaped from them. قام بخداع رجال مايكل وهرب منهم.
15. **Show that Rudolf Rassendyll was skillful.** بين أن رودلف راسندل كان ماهراً  
He was good at using a gun and a sword and riding a horse. كان جيد في استخدام المسدس والسيوف وركوب الخيل.
16. **Rassendyll was adventurous. Explain.** كان راسندل مغامر اشرح ذلك  
He replaced the King and had a great adventure in Ruritania. حل محل الملك وبدأ مغامرة كبيرة في روريتانيا.
17. **Rassendyll had an important position in society. Illustrate.** كانت مكانة راسندل في المجتمع هامة اشرح ذلك  
His family was rich and he had enough money to do anything. كانت أسرته غنية وامتلك مال كافي ليفعل أي شيء.
18. **Rassendyll was lucky. Illustrate. (WB)** كان راسندل محظوظاً. بين ذلك.  
He was rich and well-educated. كان غنياً ومتعلماً بشكل جيد.  
He had a chance to help Ruritania and was successful. حصل علي فرصة لمساعدة روريتانيا وكان ناجحاً.
19. **Rassendyll was sincere to Josef. Explain.** كان راسندل مخلصاً لجوزيف بين ذلك  
Rassendyll took revenge for Josef on Michael's men. انتقم راسندل لجوسيف من رجال مايكل.
20. **Rassendyll was a modest King. Discuss.** كان راسندل ملكاً متواضعاً اشرح ذلك  
He waved to the people who bowed to him. قام بالتلويح للناس الذين انحسوا أمامه.
21. **What were the strengths and weaknesses of Rudolf Rassendyll?** ماذا كانت نقاط القوة والضعف عند راسندل؟  
He was intelligent, compassionate, brave and honorable. كان ذكياً، طيباً، شجاعاً وشريفاً.  
He wasn't ambitious and didn't believe in the importance of work. لم يكن طموحاً ولم يكن يؤمن بقيمة العمل.
22. **How did Rassendyll teach the King how to be a real king?** كيف علم راسندل الملك كيف يكون ملكاً بحق؟  
He showed him how to run the country well, take responsibilities seriously and care for the poor. بين له كيف يدير الدولة بشكل جيد وكيف يتولى مسؤولياته بجدية وأن يهتم بالفقراء.
23. **The King of Ruritania had a weak character. Explain.** كان لدي ملك روريتانيا شخصية ضعيفة اشرح ذلك  
He didn't have opinions of his own. لم تكن لديه آراء خاصة به.  
He depended much on Sapt and Fritz. كان يعتمد كثيراً علي سابت وفريتس.
24. **The King of Ruritania led a passive life. Show how.** بين أن الملك كان كسولاً  
He preferred eating to action. كان يفضل الأكل علي الحركة.  
He only liked hunting and good food. كان فقط يحب الصيد والطعام الجيد.



## My New Friend

25. **Rudolf Elphberg was irresponsible. Show how.** كان رودلف إلفبرج مستهتراً بين ذلك.  
He lived abroad most of his life and didn't care about his people. عاش معظم حياته بالخارج ولم يهتم بشعبه.
26. **The King of Ruritania was unpopular. Explain.** لم يكن ملك روريتانيا محبوباً بين ذلك.  
Only the rich people supported him and the poor didn't like him. لم يكن يؤيده سوي الأغنياء ولم يحبه الفقراء.
27. **Prove that the King was generous.** اثبت أن الملك كان كريماً  
He invited Rassendyll to have dinner with him. دعا راسندل لتناول العشاء معه.
28. **Do you think Rudolf the Fifth was fair? Why/ Why not?** هل تعتقد أن ملك روريتانيا كان عادلاً؟ لماذا/ لماذا لا؟  
No, because he cared for the rich more than the poor. لا لأنه كان يهتم بالأغنياء أكثر من الفقراء.
29. **The Duke was ambitious (aspiring). Explain.** كان الدوق طموحاً/أشرف ذلك.  
He didn't like being only a duke and wanted to be King. لم يكن يحب أن يبقى مجرد دوق وأراد أن يكون ملكاً.
30. **Prove that Michael was emotional (irritable).** اثبت أن مايكل كان سريع الانفعال/سريع الغضب.  
He wasn't very good at hiding his feelings. لم يكن يعرف كيف يخفي مشاعره.  
He congratulated Rassendyll coldly at the coronation. هنا راسندل ببرود في حفل التتويج.
31. **The Duke of Strelsau was bloody (wicked). Illustrate.** كان دوق سترلساو دمويلاً/أشرف. اشرح.  
He planned to kill the real King to become king himself. خطط لقتل الملك الحقيقي لكي يصبح ملكاً.
32. **Michael was cunning (scheming) (deceptive) (deceitful). Discuss.** كان مايكل مكرراً/ناقش ذلك.  
32. **Michael had no sense of brotherhood. Explain.** لم يكن لدي مايكل أي مشاعر للأخوة/أشرح ذلك.  
He sent the King some poisonous cakes to poison him and be the King instead of him. أرسل إلي الملك بعض الكعك المسموم لكي يسممه ويصبح ملكاً بدلاً منه.
33. **Michael was brainy (intelligent) (a good planner). Explain.** كان مايكل ذكياً/مخططاً جيداً. فسر ذلك.  
He made perfect plans to get rid of the King and Rassendyll and be the King. قام بإعداد خطط رائعة للتخلص من الملك وراسندل ولكي يصبح ملكاً.
34. **Michael was selfish. How?** كان مايكل أناني/كيف؟  
He was greedy for power and wealth. كان يسعي وراء النفوذ والثراء.
35. **The Princess was faithful (loyal) (devoted) to her country. Explain.** كانت فلافيا مخلصه لبلدها/بين ذلك.  
She blamed Rassendyll for leaving his duties in Strelsau. لامت راسندل علي ترك مهامه في سترلساو.  
She agreed to be a Queen for Ruritania. وافقت أن تصبح ملكة من أجل روريتانيا.
36. **Show how Flavia was faithful for the King.** بين كيف كانت فلافيا مخلصه للملك.  
She asked the Marshal to take her to Tarlenheim to see the King after he was injured. طالبت المشير أن يأخذها إلي منزل تارلينهايم لكي تري الملك بعد أن جرح.
37. **Princess Flavia was forgiving. Illustrate.** كانت الأميرة فلافيا متسامحة/أشرح ذلك.  
She asked Rassendyll not to apologize for tricking her because he saved Ruritania. طالبت راسندل ألا يعتذر إليها علي خدعته لها لأنه أنقذ روريتانيا.
38. **Prove that Flavia was observant.** اثبت أن فلافيا كانت قوية الملاحظة.  
She noticed that Rassendyll was thinner, more serious and tired. لاحظت أن راسندل كان أنحف، جاد ومرهق.



39. **Flavia was very popular in Ruritania. Discuss.** كانت فلافيا محبوبة جداً في روريتانيا. اشرح ذلك.  
The people were happy when the King went to visit her. كان الناس سعداء حينما توجه الملك لزيارتها.  
The people were angry that the King hadn't married her yet. كان الناس غاضبين لأن الملك لم يتزوجها بعد.
- 
40. **Sapt was persuasive. Illustrate.** كان سابيت مقنعاً اشرح ذلك.  
He persuaded Rassendyll to take the King's place. أقنع راسندل بأن يحل محل الملك.
- 
41. **Sapt was trusted, loyal and dutiful. Illustrate.** كان سابيت شخصاً موثقاً (بمخلصاً) (لديه احساس بالواجب). اشرح ذلك.  
He did his best to prevent Michael from taking the throne. فعل ما في وسعه لمنع مايكل من أخذ العرش.
- 
42. **Prove that Sapt was cautious (careful).** اثبت أن سابيت كان حذراً (حريصاً).  
He didn't trust even the best of men. لم يكن يثق في أفضل الرجال.
- 
43. **Sapt was clever. Explain.** كان سابيت ذكياً فسر ذلك.  
He made a plan to save the throne. أعد خطة لإنقاذ العرش.
- 
44. **Sapt was wise (far-sighted). Explain.** كان سابيت حكيماً (بعيد النظر). اشرح ذلك.  
He knew that Michael wouldn't reveal Rassendyll's identity or kill the real King. كان يعرف أن مايكل لن يستطيع أن يكشف هوية راسندل أو أن يقتل الملك الحقيقي.
- 
45. **Prove that Sapt was a veteran.** اثبت أن سابيت كان رجلاً محنكاً.  
He knew everything about the palace and the country since the old King's time. كان يعرف كل شيء عن القصر والدولة منذ عهد الملك الراحل.
- 
46. **Sapt was loyal and sincere to the King of Ruritania. Explain.** كان سابيت وفياً ومخلصاً لملك روريتانيا. اشرح ذلك.  
He loved the King and hated anything bad to happen to him. كان يحب الملك ويكره أن يحدث له أي مكروه.  
He was worried when he didn't find the King in the hunting lodge. قلق عندما لم يجد الملك في معسكر الصيد.
- 
47. **Sapt was a good advisor to King Rudolf the Fifth. Explain.** كان سابيت ناصحاً جيداً للملك رودلف الخامس. اشرح ذلك.  
He advised the King not to eat much on the coronation night. نصح الملك ألا يأكل كثيراً ليلة التتويج.
- 
48. **Fritz was loyal to the king. Explain.** كان فريتس وفياً للملك. اشرح ذلك.  
He guarded the King's room a while Sapt was at the lodge. قام بحراسة حجرة الملك بينما كان سابيت في المعسكر.
- 
49. **Fritz was brave and daring. Illustrate.** كان فريتس شجاعاً وجريئاً. اشرح ذلك.  
He wanted to attack Michael after he had kidnapped the King. أراد أن يهجم علي مايكل بعدما اختطف الملك.
- 
50. **Prove that Fritz was anxious (nervous) (agitated).** اثبت أن فريتس كان قلقاً (عصبياً) (متوتراً).  
He was nervous when he met the Marshal at the station. كان عصبياً عندما قابل المشير في المحطة.  
He was very worried after the King was kidnapped. كان قلقاً جداً بعد أن تم خطف الملك.
- 
51. **Sapt and Fritz were different. Illustrate.** كان سابيت وفريتس مختلفان. اشرح ذلك.  
Sapt was wise and careful. كان سابيت حكيماً وحذراً.  
Fritz was unwise and nervous. كان فريتس غير حكيماً وعصبياً.
-



52. **Prove that Antoinette was helpful.**  
 She helped Rassendyll to escape from the summer house.  
 She told Rassendyll about Michael's plans.  
 She looked after the King while he was ill.  
 أثبت أن أنتوانيت كانت متعاونة  
 ساعدت راسندل علي الفرار من المنزل الصيفي.  
 أخبرت راسندل بخطط مايكل.  
 اعتنت بالملك خلال مرضه.
- 
53. **Antoinette was kind-hearted. Illustrate.**  
 She didn't like to see people being killed.  
 She didn't want Flavia to fall into the power of the Duke.  
 كانت أنتوانيت طيبة القلب اشرح ذلك.  
 لم تكن تحب أن تري الناس وهي تقتل.  
 لم تريد فلافيا أن تسقط في فخ الدوق.
- 
54. **Antoinette was loyal. Explain.**  
 She wanted to take revenge on Rupert for killing the Duke who had defended her.  
 كانت أنتوانيت وفية اشرح ذلك.  
 كانت تريد أن تنتقم من روبرت هنزاو لقتله الدوق الذي كان قد دافع عنها.
- 
55. **Detchard was a fierce fighter. Illustrate.**  
 Detchard was a much better swordsman than Rassendyll.  
 Detchard knew all the tricks.  
 كان ديتشارد محارباً شرساً اشرح ذلك.  
 كان ديتشارد مبارزاً أفضل من راسندل.  
 كان ديتشارد يعرف جميع الحيل.
- 
56. **Prove that Detchard was deceitful.**  
 He wanted to deceive Rassendyll in the summer house.  
 أثبت أن ديتشارد كان خادعاً.  
 أراد أن يخدع راسندل في المنزل الصيفي.
- 
57. **Rupert Hentzau was deceitful (tricky). Explain.**  
 He pretended to shake hands with Rassendyll and stabbed him in his shoulder.  
 كان روبرت هنزاو مخادعاً اشرح ذلك.  
 تظاهر أنه يصافح راسندل ثم طعنه في كتفه.
- 
58. **What do you think of Rupert?**  
 Rupert was the worst criminal of all the Six Men.  
 ما رأيك في روبرت؟  
 روبرت كان أسوأ مجرم في الرجال الستة.
- 
59. **Rupert Hentzau was a wicked (bloody) (cruel) (vindictive) character. Prove this.**  
 He wanted to kill four people to be the second man in the country.  
 كان روبرت هنزاو شخصية شريرة (دموية) (قاسية) (محبة للانتقام). اثبت ذلك.  
 أراد أن يقتل أربعة أشخاص ليصبح الرجل الثاني في الدولة.
- 
60. **Rupert Hentzau was brave (daring). Illustrate.**  
 He escaped from Rassendyll and his men in the woods.  
 He fought Michael and his men and killed Michael.  
 كان روبرت هنزاو شجاعاً اشرح.  
 هرب من راسندل ورجاله ف الغابة.  
 حارب مايكل ورجاله وقتل مايكل.
- 
61. **Explain how Rupert Hentzau was rude.**  
 He spoke rudely to Rassendyll in Tarlenheim.  
 اشرح كيف كان روبرت هنزاو وقحاً  
 تحدث بوقاحة مع راسندل في منزل تارلينهايم.
- 
62. **Rupert was quick and clever (intelligent). Illustrate.**  
 Rassendyll and his men couldn't catch him in the fight near the castle.  
 He escaped before Antoinette shot him.  
 كان روبرت سريعاً اشرح ذلك.  
 لم يتمكن راسندل ورجاله من الإمساك به في المعركة التي كانت قرب القلعة.  
 هرب قبل أن تطلق أنتوانيت عليه الرصاص.
- 
63. **Rupert Hentzau was dishonest (villainous). Explain.**  
 He planned to help Rassendyll and betray Michael.  
 كان روبرت هنزاو غير أمين اشرح ذلك.  
 خطط لمساعدة راسندل وخيانة مايكل.
-



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

64. **To what extent was Rose persuasive?** الي اي مدي كانت روز مقنعة  
Rose had a good way of persuasion and persuaded Rassendyll to take the job.  
كانت لديها طريقة جيدة للاقناع وأقنعت راسندل أن يأخذ الوظيفة.
65. **What kind of person was Robert Rassendyll?** ما سمات شخصية روبرت راسندل؟  
He knew his position in society had responsibilities.  
كان يدرك أن مكانته في المجتمع لها مسؤوليات.
66. **What do you think of Johann's character?** ما رأيك في شخصية يوهان؟  
Johann was a weak man but not a wicked one.  
كان يوهان شخص ضعيف لكنه لم يكن شريراً.
67. **Johann was helpful to Rassendyll. Illustrate.** كان يوهان متعاوناً مع راسندل اشرح ذلك.  
He worked as a spy for Rassendyll.  
عمل كجاسوس لراسندل.  
He gave Rassendyll information about the Duke's plans and the King's prison.  
أعطى راسندل معلومات عن خطط الدوق وسجن الملك.
68. **Johann had a weak character. Explain.** كانت شخصية يوهان ضعيفة اشرح ذلك.  
He worked for Michael because he was afraid of him.  
كان يعمل لدي مايكل لأنه كان يخاف منه.
69. **Josef was faithful for the King of Ruritania. Illustrate.** كان جوزيف وفياً لملك روريتانيا اشرح ذلك.  
Michael's men killed him when he defended the King.  
قام رجال مايكل بقتله عندما دافع عن الملك.
70. **The Marshal was obedient. Prove this.** كان المشير مطيعاً للأمر. اثبت ذلك.  
He obeyed Rassendyll's (the King's) orders when he wanted to enter the old part of Strelsau alone.  
أطاع أوامر راسندل (الملك) عندما أراد أن يدخل المنطقة القديمة وحده.
71. **Marshal Strakencz was trusted (trustworthy) (reliable). Discuss.** كان المشير ستراكنتش شخصاً موثقاً (بجدير بالثقة). اشرح ذلك.  
Rassendyll thought the Marshal would keep the future of Ruritania and Flavia safe.  
اعتقد راسندل أن المشير سوف يحافظ علي مستقبل روريتانيا وعلى فلافيا في أمان.
72. **Prove that the Marshal was observant.** اثبت أن المشير كان قوي الملاحظة  
He noticed that Rassendyll's handwriting was different from the King's.  
لاحظ أن خط يد راسندل كان مختلفاً عن خط يد الملك.
73. **Max Holf was evil (wicked). Discuss.** كان ماكس هولف شريكاً شريراً اشرح ذلك.  
He knew all about Michael's evil plans and helped in them.  
كان يعرف كل شيء عن خطط مايكل الشريرة وساعده فيها.
74. **Johann's mother was a wicked woman. Illustrate.** كانت أم يوهان سيدة شريرة اشرح ذلك.  
She worked as a spy for Michael in the hunting lodge.  
عملت كجاسوسة لمايكل في معسكر الصيد.
75. **The ten men that Rassendyll accompanied to Tarlenheim were trusted. Explain.** كان العشرة رجال الذين صاحبهم راسندل إلى منزل تارلينهايم رجال موثوقين اشرح ذلك.  
They were loyal and brave and they didn't ask any questions.  
كانوا اقوياء وشجعان ولا يسألون أسئلة.
76. **The doctor proved to be brave. Explain.** أثبت الطبيب أنه شجاعاً افسر ذلك.  
The doctor held Detchard to protect the King from him.  
أمسك الطبيب بديتشارد ليمنعه من قتل الملك.
77. **Fritz' relative was hospitable and generous. Explain.** كان قريب فريتس مضيافاً وكريمفسر ذلك.  
He allowed the King to use his house for hunting.  
سمح للملك باستخدام منزله لأجل الصيد.



78. **The innkeeper's daughter was obedient. Illustrate.**  
 She agreed to help Rassendyll find Johann.  
 كانت ابنة صاحبة الحانة مطيعة شرح ذلك وافقت أن تساعد راسندل في إيجاد يوهان.
79. **Prove that the King respected Sapt a lot.**  
 The King consulted Sapt and took his advice.  
 اثبت أن الملك كان يحترم سابث كثيراً كان الملك يستشير سابث ويأخذ بنصيحته.
80. **Do you agree that people who have a lot of money should do nothing? Explain your point of view.**  
 هل تتفق مع أن الناس الذين يملكون الكثير مبالغاً لا يجب أن يقوموا بعمل؟ اشرح وجهة نظرك  
 I don't agree. I think all people must have duties to do. لا. أعتقد أن الجميع ينبغي أن يملك واجبات ليؤديها.
81. **What do you think Rassendyll meant by saying "To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities"?**  
 في رأيك، ماذا كان راسندل يقصد بقوله، " بالنسبة لرجل مثلي، الفرص تعتبر مسؤوليات؟"  
 If an opportunity came, he would take it. إذا جاءت فرصة فسوف يغتنيها.
82. **Do you think a person like Rudolf Rassendyll is very serious about work or life? Why?**  
 هل تعتقد أن شخصاً مثل رودلف راسندل جاداً بشأن العمل والحياة؟ لماذا؟  
 No. Because he didn't work or have responsibilities. لا. لأنه لم يكن يعمل ولم تكن لديه مسؤوليات.
83. **Rassendyll's position in society gave him opportunities. Do you agree? Why? (WB)**  
 مكانة راسندل في المجتمع منحه فرصاً. هل تتفق مع ذلك؟ لماذا؟  
 Yes. It made him do no work and gave him the time to travel and enjoy himself.  
 نعم فقد جعلته لا يؤدي عملاً ومنحته الوقت ليسافر ويستمتع بوقته.
84. **Was Rassendyll right not to bear responsibilities in England? Why?**  
 هل كان راسندل محقاً حينما لم يتحمل مسؤولياته في إنجلترا؟ لماذا؟  
 No. Because everyone should bear responsibilities in life. لا. لأن علي كل فرد أن يتحمل المسؤوليات في الحياة.
85. **Why do you think Rose was angry that Rudolf Rassendyll didn't do any work?**  
 لماذا تعتقد أن روز كانت غاضبة لأن راسندل لم يكن يؤدي أي عمل؟  
 He was old enough to work and benefit himself and his society. كان كبيراً بشكل كافي ليعمل ويفيد نفسه ومجتمعه.
86. **Rudolf Rassendyll was a liar. Explain.**  
 رودلف راسندل كان كاذباً. اشرح.  
 He lied to his family about his destination and the book. كذب على أسرته بشأن مكان سفره والكتاب.
87. **Rassendyll said that his lie of writing a book showed how little people know about the future. Why do you think he said this?**  
 في رأيك، لماذا قال راسندل ان كذبه بشأن الكتاب الذي كان سيكتبه يبين أننا (نحن البشر) لا نعلم عن المستقبل سوى القليل؟  
 Although he didn't have a plan to write a book, he had to write one in Ruritania while replacing the King.  
 لم يكن راسندل في الحقيقة ينوي أن يكتب كتاباً لكنه اضطر الي كتابة كتاب في روريتانيا خلال تمثيله لدور الملك.  
 (يقصد أن ما حدث من مغامرات في روريتانيا كفيلاً بأن يكون كتاباً يستحق التدوين).
88. **If you were Rassendyll, would you prefer to travel to Ruritania or to stay in England to do useful work? Why? (WB)**  
 لو كنت راسندل، هل تسافر لوروريتانيا أم تبقي في إنجلترا وتؤدي عملاً مفيداً؟ لماذا؟  
 I would stay in England to do useful work. كنت سابقاً في إنجلترا لكي أقوم بعمل مفيد.  
 Because doing work is more important than travel and enjoyment. لأن القيام بعمل أهم من السفر والاستمتاع.
89. **Why do you think Duke Michael was his father's favourite son?**  
 في رأيك لماذا كان مايكل الابن المفضل لأبيه؟  
 Because he did more political duties than his brother. لأنه كان يؤدي واجبات سياسية أكثر من أخيه.



90. Why do you think the guards at the Ruritanian border stared at Rassendyll and his passport?  
 في رأيك، لماذا دقق الحراس عند حدود روريتانيا النظر إلي راسندل وجواز سفره؟  
 لأن راسندل كان يشبه ملك روريتانيا بالضبط. Because Rassendyll looked exactly like the King of Ruritania.
91. What do you think might have happened if the king had given more care to the poor Ruritarians?  
 في رأيك، ما الذي كان سيحدث إن أعطي الملك اهتمام أكبر للفقراء من دولة روريتانيا؟  
 كان الفقراء سيحبونه ويدعمونه. The poor people would have supported and loved him.
92. Why do you think the Duke built the drawbridge between the castle and the mansion?  
 في رأيك، لماذا قام الدوق ببناء الجسر المتحرك بين المنزل والقلعة؟  
 لمنع أي شخص من الوصول إلي القلعة. To prevent anyone from reaching the castle.
93. As well as what he looks, in what way is Rudolf Rassendyll like the King? (WB)  
 بالإضافة إلي الملامح، إلي أي مدى كان رودلف راسندل يشبه الملك؟  
 كلاهما يحيا حياة سهلة. They both have an easy life.
94. Do you think there might be a problem with the fact that Rudolf looks very much like the King?  
 في رأيك، هل ستكون هناك مشكلة في أن رودلف يشبه الملك كثيراً؟  
 نعم سيعتقد كثير من الناس أن راسندل كان الملك. Yes. Many people would think Rassendyll was the King.
95. Do you think the King of Ruritania was a good politician? Why / Why not?  
 هل تعتقد أن ملك روريتانيا كان سياسياً جيداً؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟  
 لا. أراد أن يصحب راسندل الذي يشبهه تماماً إلي حفل التتويج وهذا كان خطأ. No. He wanted to take Rassendyll who looked exactly like him to the coronation and this was wrong.
96. Why do you think the Duke tried to get rid of his brother by poisoning him instead of any other way? (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا حاول مايكل التخلص من أخيه بتسميمه وليس بأي وسيلة أخرى؟  
 لأنه سيكون من الصعب علي أي شخص أن يثبت أنه كان مسؤولاً عن التسميم. Because it would be difficult for anyone to prove that he was responsible for the poisoning.
97. Which character is wiser in your opinion, Sapt or Fritz? Say why. (WB)  
 في رأيك، أي شخص كان أكثر حكمة من الآخر، سابيت أم فريتس؟ اذكر السبب.  
 سابيت لأنه كان يخطط لكل شيء. Sapt because he planned for everything.  
 كان فريتس عفواً ويتخذ قرارات سريعة. Fritz was spontaneous and made quick decisions.
98. In your opinion, what made Rassendyll agree to replace the King during the coronation?  
 في رأيك، لماذا وافق راسندل علي أن يحل محل الملك خلال حفل التتويج؟  
 أدرك أن ليس لديه خيار عندما رأى الملك راقداً فوق الأرض. He realized that he had no choice when he saw the King lying on the floor.
99. Why do you think they went to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?  
 في رأيك، لماذا غادروا معسكر الصيد بسرعة ولم ينتظروا رجال مايكل؟  
 كي لا يخطفهم رجال مايكل أو يقتلونهم. So that the Duke's guards wouldn't kidnap or kill them.
100. Why do you think Fritz and Sapt locked up Johann's mother with the King? (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا قام سابيت وفريتس بحبس أم يوهان مع الملك؟  
 سمعت خطتهم وقد تخبر رجال مايكل. She had overheard their plan and would tell Michael's men about it.



## 101. Do you think Rassendyll was lucky to look exactly like the King of Ruritania? Why?

(WB) في رأيك، هل كان راسندل محظوظاً كونه يشبه ملك روريتانيا تماماً؟ لماذا؟

He was lucky to have the chance to replace the King and learn something new.

كان محظوظاً لحصوله علي فرصة أن يحل محل الملك ويتعلم شيء جديد.

He wasn't lucky to risk his life and face dangers by replacing the King.

لم يكن محظوظاً أن يخاطر بحياته ويواجه المخاطر وهو يحل محل الملك.

## 102. If you were Rassendyll, would you agree to risk your life and replace the King? Why?

(WB) لو كنت راسندل، هل كنت ستوافق أن تخاطر بحياتك وتحل محل الملك؟ لماذا؟

Yes, because if I didn't, the King would be killed or imprisoned. نعم لأنني إن لم أفعل فالملك إما سيقتل أو سيجن.

## 103. What do you think might have happened if Sapt and Fritz had been poisoned like the King?

(WB) في رأيك، ما الذي كان سيحدث إن تسمم سابت وفريتس مثل الملك؟

They wouldn't have saved the throne.

ما كان بإمكانهم أن ينقذوا العرش.

## 104. Why do you think that Sapt told Rassendyll the history of the King's life?

(WB)

في رأيك، لماذا قام سابت بإخبار راسندل عن تاريخ حياة الملك؟

To prepare him for playing the role of the King at the coronation. لكي يعده لتمثيل دور الملك في حفل التتويج.

## 105. Why do you think the Duke didn't come to the station to meet the King?

في رأيك، لماذا لم يحضر الدوق إلي المحطة لمقابلة الملك؟

He was waiting to hear from his men that they had kidnapped the King.

كان ينتظر أن يتلقى أخبار من رجاله بأنهم قد قاموا بخطف الملك.

## 106. Why do you think that Rudolf really believed that he was the King in the capital city?

(WB) في رأيك، لماذا اعتقد رودلف (راسندل) أنه كان الملك حقاً في العاصمة؟

Because the people in the capital welcomed him warmly.

لأن سكان العاصمة رحبوا به بحرارة.

## 107. Do you think the Marshal wanted to test the King "Rassendyll" by entering the old town? Why / Why not?

في رأيك، هل كان المشير يريد أن يختبر الملك بدخول المدينة القديمة؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

No, because the Marshal was loyal to the King.

لا لأن المشير كان موالياً للملك.

## 108. Do you think Rassendyll was right to enter the old town alone? Why? Why not?

هل تعتقد أن راسندل كان محقاً بدخوله المدينة القديمة وحده؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

Yes, because this would make the poor love and trust him.

نعم لأن هذا سيجعل الفقراء يحبوه ويثقوا به.

## 109. The Duke was popular with the poor people. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

كان الدوق محبوباً لدى الفقراء. هل تتفق مع ذلك؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

Yes, because there were many paintings of the Duke in their windows.

نعم لأنه كانت هناك لوحات عديدة للدوق في نوافذ منازلهم.

## 110. Why did Duke Michael's face turn white when he saw the King (Rassendyll)?

(SB)

لماذا تغيرت ملامح مايكل عندما رأى راسندل (الملك)؟

Because he didn't expect to see him there.

لأنه لم يتوقع أن يراه هناك.

## 111. Did Michael realise that this was not the real King? How do you know?

(SB)

هل أدرك مايكل أن راسندل لم يكن الملك الحقيقي؟ كيف عرفت ذلك؟

Yes. Rassendyll said that the Duke was the only one who realized he wasn't the king.

نعم. قال راسندل أن الدوق كان هو الوحيد الذي أدرك أنه لم يكن الملك الحقيقي.



112. Why did Flavia think that the people in the old part would appreciate the King's riding alone through their part? لماذا اعتقدت فلافيا أن فقراء المدينة القديمة يقدرّون دخول الملك وحده إلى مدينتهم؟  
They would know that their king trusted them. سيعرفون أن الملك يثق بهم.
113. Why do you think Sapt and Rassendyll left the palace through a secret tunnel? (WB) في رأيك، لماذا قام سابت وراسندل بمغادرة القصر عبر ممر سري؟  
So that no one would recognise Rassendyll. حتي لا يتعرف أحد علي راسندل.
114. What do you think the message "all is well" meant? في رأيك، ماذا تعني، "كل شيء علي ما يرام"؟  
Michael's men had the King in their hands at the castle. كان رجال مايكل قد أخذوا الملك بين أيديهم في القلعة.
115. If you were Rassendyll, would you be afraid to go back to Strelsau? Why / Why not? لو كنت في مكان راسندل، هل كنت ستخشى أن تعود إلي سترلساو؟ لماذا لا؟  
Yes, because the Duke and his men could tell people that he wasn't the real King. نعم لأن الدوق ورجاله يستطيعون أن يخبروا الناس أنه لم يكن الملك الحقيقي.
116. What did Sapt mean when he said about Michael's men, "We've got them!"? (SB) ماذا كان سابت يقصد عندما قال عن رجال مايكل، "نحن الذين نتحكم بهم"؟  
Michael and his men couldn't tell people that Rassendyll wasn't the real king because they would admit kidnapping the king and killing his servant. لن يستطيع مايكل ورجاله أن يخبروا الناس بأن راسندل لم يكن الملك الحقيقي لأنهم سوف يعترفون بخطف الملك وقتل الخادم.
117. What do you think it meant that Michael's were going to "hide their evil work"? (SB) في رأيك، ما المقصود بعبارة أن رجال مايكل كانوا سوف "يخفون جريمتهم الشريرة"؟  
That they wanted to prevent people from knowing that they killed the innocent person, Josef. كانت تعني أنهم أرادوا أن يمنعوا الناس من معرفة أنهم قتلوا الشخص البريء جوزيف.
118. What do you think Rassendyll meant when he said that some of those evil men should join Josef? (SB) في رأيك، ماذا كان راسندل يعني حينما قال أن بعض هؤلاء الرجال يجب أن يلحقوا جوزيف (في قبره)؟  
He meant that he and Sapt had to kill some of the men to be buried with Josef. كان يقصد أنه وسابت عليهم أن يقتلوا بعض هؤلاء الرجال لكي يتم دفنهم مع جوزيف.
119. Why did Sapt say to the servant at the secret door "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?" (SB) لماذا قال سابت للخادم عند الباب السري، "كل الشباب يحبون أن يتجولوا بخيولهم من حين لآخر، فلماذا لا يفعل الملك مثلهم؟"  
He didn't want Freyler to know the truth about Rassendyll's injury. لم يكن يريد فريلر أن يعرف إصابة راسندل.
120. Why do you think Rassendyll used a new servant who had never met the real King? في رأيك، لماذا استخدم راسندل خادم جديد في القصر لم يسبق له أن قابل الملك؟ (SB)  
He didn't want the new servant to recognize him. لم يريد هذا الخادم أن يتعرف عليه.
121. Why do you think that Rassendyll says that a pretend King's life is harder than a real King's? (WB) في رأيك، لماذا قال راسندل أن حياة ملك مزيف أصعب من حياة ملك حقيقي؟  
Because a pretend King does many duties besides hiding his identity. لأن الملك المزيف يقوم بواجبات عديدة بالإضافة إلي إخفاء هويته.
122. What did Fritz mean by saying, "It's a stalemate"? ما الذي جعل فريتس يقول، "ما هذا الجمود"؟  
Neither they nor Michael could fight one another. لا هم ولا مايكل يستطيعون العراك.



123. **Why do you think Rassendyll decided to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz?**  
 في رأيك، لماذا قرر راسندل أن يخفي بعض خططه عن سابيت وفريتس؟  
 He wanted to act like real Kings and his life was in danger. أراد أن يتصرف كملك حقيقي وكانت حياته في خطر.
- 
124. **Do you think it was a good idea for Rassendyll to give due care to the poor? Why?**  
 في رأيك، هل كانت فكرة جيدة لراسندل أن يعطي اهتماماً كبيراً للفقراء؟ لماذا؟ (WB)  
 Yes. The poor would support him if they liked him. نعم. سيدعمه الفقراء إن أحبوه.
- 
125. **Why did Duke Michael want Rassendyll to meet his special soldiers?** (WB)  
 لماذا أراد الدوق مايكل من راسندل أن يقابل الجنود الخاصين به؟  
 He wanted to frighten Rassendyll. أراد أن يخيف راسندل.
- 
126. **If you were Rassendyll, would you tell the Princess that you weren't the real king? Why / Why not?**  
 لو كنت في مكان راسندل، هل كنت ستخبر الأميرة أنك لست الملك الحقيقي؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟  
 Yes, because she should know what happened to her future husband. نعم لأنها يجب أن تعرف ما حدث لزوجها المستقبلي.
- 
127. **What do you think helped Rassendyll not to be discovered? أمره؟**  
 ماذا ساعد راسندل ألا يُكتشف أمره؟  
 He looked exactly like the real King. كان يشبه الملك بالضبط.  
 He pretended to forget rules and people. تظاهر بنسيان القواعد والناس.  
 He became popular so people forgave his mistakes. أصبح محبوباً لذا غفر الناس أخطائه.
- 
128. **How can you prove that Sapt cared much for Rassendyll's life?**  
 كيف يمكنك أن تثبت أن سابيت كان يحرص على حياة راسندل؟  
 Sapt made six men follow Rassendyll to protect him from Michael's men. سابيت جعل ستة رجال يتبعون راسندل ليحموه من رجال مايكل.
- 
129. **What did Sapt mean by saying to Rassendyll "If you disappear, the game's over"?**  
 ماذا كان سابيت يعني بقوله، "إن اختفيت، فسوف تنتهي اللعبة"؟ (SB)  
 If Michael's men caught Rassendyll, they would kill both him and the real King. إن قام رجال مايكل بالإمساك براسندل فسوف يقتلوه هو والملك الحقيقي.
- 
130. **If you were Rassendyll, would you go to the summer house? Why / why not?**  
 لو كنت راسندل، هل كنت ستذهب إلى المنزل الصيفي؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟  
 Yes, because Antoinette would be useful for them. نعم لأن أنتوانيت ستكون مفيدة لهم.
- 
131. **Why do you think that Sapt is worried now about Rassendyll that he is King?** (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا سابيت قلق على راسندل الآن وهو يمثل دور الملك؟  
 Because if Rassendyll disappeared, the game would be over. لأنه إن اختفى راسندل فسوف تنتهي اللعبة.
- 
132. **What do you think might have happened if Antoinette plotted against Rassendyll?**  
 في رأيك، ما الذي كان سيحدث إن انقلب أنتوانيت على راسندل؟ (WB)  
 The three foreigners would have killed Rassendyll in the summer house. كان الثلاثة الأجانب سيقتلون راسندل في المنزل الصيفي.  
 She wouldn't have told Rassendyll about Michael's plan. ما كانت ستخبر راسندل عن خطط مايكل.
-



133. Rassendyll told the Princess that when he was younger, he thought he didn't need to worry about society. Why did he say this? Why was it a mistake for him to say this?  
أخبر راسندل الأميرة أنه لم يكن يعتقد أنه مسئول عن المجتمع في صباه، لماذا قال هذا ولماذا كان هذا خطأ؟  
He forgot to act like the King and he thought he was talking about himself, Rassendyll.  
نسي أن يمثل دور الملك وظن أنه يتحدث عن نفسه، راسندل.  
This was a big mistake because he had always known he would be a king.  
كان هذا خطأ لأنه كان يعرف دوماً أنه سيصبح ملكاً.
- 
134. Why do you think that Sapt stopped Rassendyll telling Princess Flavia who he really was? (WB)  
في رأيك، لماذا قام سابت بمنع راسندل من اخبار الأميرة فلافيا بحقيقته؟  
He didn't want Rassendyll to finish the game.  
لم يكن سابت يريد راسندل أن ينهي اللعبة.
- 
135. Rassendyll cared much for Princess Flavia. Do you agree? Why / Why not?  
كان راسندل يهتم كثيراً بالأميرة فلافيا. هل تتفق مع ذلك؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟  
He asked the Marshal to guard and protect her.  
طالب المشير أن يحرسها ويحميها.
- 
136. Do you think that Rassendyll could have been King forever? Why? (WB)  
في رأيك، هل كان باستطاعة راسندل أن يبقى ملكاً للأبد؟ لماذا؟  
Yes. Because no one could recognise him.  
نعم. لأن لا أحد استطاع أن يتعرف عليه.  
He could kill the King and the Duke and remain King.  
كان يستطيع قتل الملك والدوق وأن يبقى ملكاً.  
(or)  
No. Because someone would recognize him.  
لا. لأن أحداً سيتعرف عليه.
- 
137. Do you think Rassendyll wanted to be the King forever? Why / Why not? (WB)  
في رأيك، هل أراد راسندل أن يبقى ملكاً للأبد؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟  
No. Because he thought that this wouldn't be fair for the Ruritarians or the Princess.  
لا. لأنه اعتقد أن هذا لن يكون عدلاً لشعب روريتانيا أو الأميرة.
- 
138. Do you think the innkeeper's daughter was right to apologize to Rassendyll (the pretend king) although she wasn't mistaken? Why? (WB)  
هل تعتقد أن ابنة صاحبة الحانة كانت محقة عندما اعتذرت إلي راسندل (الملك المزيف) برغم من أنها لم تخطيء؟ لماذا؟  
Yes, because she wanted to protect her mother who had said some bad things about the King.  
نعم لأنها أرادت أن تحمي أمها التي كانت قد قالت بعض الأشياء السيئة عن الملك.
- 
139. Why do you think Rassendyll refused the offer that Michael sent for him with Rupert Hentzau?  
في رأيك، لماذا رفض راسندل العرض الذي أرسله له مايكل مع روبرت هنزاو؟  
He wasn't greedy and he was loyal to the King.  
لم يكن طماعاً وكان وفياً للملك.
- 
140. Why do you think Rassendyll's pulse quickened at the thought of being King forever? (WB)  
في رأيك، لماذا أصبح نبض راسندل أسرع مع فكرة بقائه ملكاً للأبد؟  
He was excited by it.  
كان مثاراً.
- 
141. Why do you think Rassendyll sent Johann back to the castle? (SB)  
في رأيك، لماذا أرسل راسندل يوهان ثانية إلى القلعة؟  
Because Michael would look for him if he didn't return.  
لأن مايكل سيبحث عنه إن لم يعود.
- 
142. What do you think Rassendyll might have done if Johann had refused to work as a spy? (WB)  
في رأيك، ماذا كان راسندل سيفعل إن رفض يوهان أن يعمل كجاسوس؟  
He might have punished Johann severely.  
كان سيعاقب يوهان بقسوة.



143. In what way does Rassendyll realize that he can't have a quiet life anymore? (WB)  
 كيف أدرك راسندل أن حياته لن تكون هادئة فيما بعد؟  
 لأن مايكل سيظل للأبد يخطط لقتله.  
 As Michael would forever be planning to get rid of him.
144. Why do you think Rassendyll said that the situation in Ruritania was the strangest in the history of any country? (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا قال راسندل أن الموقف في روريتانيا كان الأكثر غرابة في تاريخ أي دولة؟  
 لأن أخو الملك وملك مزيف سوف يبدأون حرباً من أجل حياة ملك مريض خلال وقت سلم.  
 The King's brother and a pretend King started a war for the life of a sick King at a time of peace.
145. Why do you think that Rassendyll told the Police Chief to return in two weeks? (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا طلب راسندل من قائد شرطة العاصمة أن يعود بعد أسبوعين؟  
 اعتقد أنه سينقذ الملك قبل أن يمر الأسبوعين.  
 He thought he would save the King before the two weeks passed.
146. What do we learn about Rupert when Rassendyll catches up with him on his horse? (WB)  
 ماذا عرفنا عن روبرت عندما لحق راسندل به على حصانه؟  
 كان روبرت غير أمين ولم تكن عنده مبادئ لأنه وافق أن يعمل ضد مايكل.  
 Rupert was dishonest and had no principles as he agreed to work against Michael.
147. What do you think of the plan that Rupert made? Why? (WB)  
 ما رأيك في الخطة التي وضعها روبرت؟ لماذا؟  
 كانت شريرة ودموية وغير شرعية.  
 كانت ستقتل أناس أبرياء وتحقق أهداف غير شرعية.  
 It was evil, bloody and illegal.  
 It would kill innocent people and achieve illegal aims.
148. What reward do you think Rupert wanted to get from Rassendyll?  
 في رأيك، ما المكافأة التي أراد روبرت أن يحصل عليها من راسندل؟  
 أراد أن يصبح الرجل الثاني في الحكومة.  
 He wanted to be the second man in government.
149. A doctor had been brought to see the real King in his prison. Why do you think Duke Michael didn't let the doctor leave? (SB)  
 تم احضار طبيب ليفحص الملك في سجنه. في رأيك، لماذا لم يسمح مايكل للطبيب بالمغادرة؟  
 سريخبر الطبيب الناس بأن الملك كان مسجوناً.  
 The doctor would tell people the King was imprisoned.
150. Why was it important that the new servants at the castle didn't know the King was a prisoner there? (SB)  
 لماذا كان مهماً أن الخدم الجدد في القلعة لا يعرفون أن الملك كان مسجوناً هناك؟  
 حتي يعتقدون أن راسندل هو الملك إن رأوه.  
 So they would think Rassendyll was the King if they saw him.
151. Why do you think Rassendyll killed De Gautet with a sword and not with a gun? (SB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا قام راسندل بقتل دي جوتيت بسيفه وليس بمسدس؟  
 ترك مسدسه بين الأشجار قبل نزول الخندق.  
 He had left his gun in the trees before climbing into the moat.
152. What do you think might have happened if the King had not helped Rassendyll in his fight against Detchard? (SB)  
 في رأيك، ما الذي كان قد يحدث إذا لم يساعد الملك راسندل في عراكه ضد ديتشارد؟  
 كان ديتشارد سيقتل راسندل.  
 Detchard would have killed Rassendyll.
153. Why do you think the servants didn't obey Rupert's orders? (SB)  
 لماذا لم يتبع الخدم أوامر روبرت؟  
 لأن روبرت قتل قائدهم.  
 Because Rupert killed their leader.
154. Why do you think Antoinette wanted to take revenge for Michael on Rupert?  
 في رأيك، لماذا أرادت أنتوانيت أن تنتقم لمايكل من روبرت؟  
 لأن مايكل منع روبرت من معاقبتها.  
 Because Michael prevented Rupert from punishing her.



155. Why do you think Rassendyll said that he suspected if Antoinette wanted to shoot Rupert?  
 في رأيك، لماذا قال راسندل أنه كان يشك في أن أنتوانيت تريد أن تطلق الرصاص علي روبرت؟  
 He knew she didn't like to see people being killed. لأنه كان يعرف أنها تكره أن تري الناس يقتلون.
156. Why do you think that Rassendyll didn't follow Rupert's plan? (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا لم يتبع راسندل خطة روبرت؟  
 He was not greedy for power and he was loyal to the King. لم يكن طامعاً في السلطة وكان وفياً للملك.
157. Why do you think Rupert was not killed like the other guards? (WB)  
 في رأيك، لماذا لم يتم قتل روبرت مثل بقية الحراس؟  
 He was strong, brave, daring and very intelligent. كان قوياً، شجاعاً، جسوراً وذكياً جداً.
158. Do you think Rassendyll was right to pretend to be the King for the coronation? Was he right to continue to pretend to be the King for so long? (SB)  
 هل كان راسندل محقاً عندما قام بتمثيل دور الملك يوم التتويج؟ هل كان محقاً حينما استمر بدور الملك لفترة طويلة؟  
 I think Rassendyll was right to pretend to be the King for the coronation because if he hadn't done so, Michael would have taken the throne and killed the King.  
 أعتقد أن راسندل كان محقاً عندما قام بتمثيل دور الملك يوم التتويج لأنه لو لم يفعل ذلك كان مايكل سيستولي علي العرش ويقتل الملك.  
 I think it was right of him to continue pretending to be the King for so long because if he hadn't done so, he wouldn't have been able to save the King or his throne.  
 أعتقد أنه كان محقاً عندما أكمل تمثيل دور الملك لفترة طويلة لأنه لم يكن يستطيع أن ينفذ الملك أو عرشه.
159. Why didn't Rassendyll remain the King? If he was a wiser and better ruler than the real King, would it be wrong for him to remain King? (SB)  
 لماذا لم يبق راسندل ملكاً للأبد. وهل من الخطأ أن يكمل الدور وهو يملك الحكمة والحكم السليم؟  
 Rassendyll couldn't do that because it wouldn't be fair for either the Princess or the people of Ruritania.  
 لم يكن بإمكان راسندل أن يفعل ذلك لأن ذلك لم يكن عدلاً للأميرة أو لشعب روريتانيا.
160. In what way do you think the real King will rule differently after the end of the story? (WB)  
 في رأيك، كيف سيحكم الملك بشكل مختلف بعد نهاية القصة؟  
 He would run the country well and take responsibilities seriously. سيدبر الدولة جيداً ويتولى مسؤولياته بجد.  
 He would make all his people love him not just a few. سيجعل كل شعبه يحبه وليس فقط عدد قليل.

## Test yourself

\* Answer the following questions:

- Which character is better do you think, Rudolf Rassendyll or Robert Rassendyll?
- Was the woman at the inn right to support Michael? Why / Why not?
- Why do you think Johann was surprised when he saw Rassendyll in the inn?
- The Ruritanian King was greedy. How can you prove that?
- Why do you think Sapt said, "God save both Kings."?
- Do you think Fritz was a careful guard? Why / Why not?
- Why do you think Sapt wanted to worry Michael more?
- What might have happened if Sapt and Fritz had not helped the King?
- Why do you think Rassendyll and the King looked alike?
- Why didn't Sapt choose Fritz to accompany Rassendyll to the hunting lodge?
- Do you agree with Rupert that writing a book was important for Rassendyll? Why / Why not?



12. Duke Michael cared for Antoinette. **Discuss.**
13. Why do you think Rassendyll wished to meet Antoinette on the train?
14. In your opinion, why didn't Mauban leave Ruritania after knowing Michael's evil intentions?
15. What do you think Flavia would do if she discovered the truth before the King was saved?
16. The innkeeper and her daughter were different. **Discuss.**
17. Why do you think Rassendyll found it hard to kill Detchard?
18. Detchard was not lucky while fighting Rassendyll inside the King's prison. **Discuss.**
19. The five men of the Six who were killed deserved their fate. **Illustrate.**
20. Why do you think Fritz objected to Rassendyll's attending the coronation?
21. Why do you think Rassendyll trusted the Marshal to protect Flavia?
22. What would Rassendyll have done if Johann had refused to work as a spy?
23. What did the King's asking Sapt and Fritz's opinions all the time show?
24. Johann's mother meant to overhear Sapt's plan. Do you agree? Why or why not?
25. Why do you think Michael defended (fortified) the castle of Zenda well?
26. What would have happened if Rassendyll had been discovered on the coronation day?
27. Do you think Michael's plan to get rid of Rassendyll and the King was clever? Why?
28. Why do you think Sapt and Fritz were sure that the Duke poisoned the King?
29. If you were Rassendyll, would you accept the offers sent by Michael? Why or why not?
30. Why do you think Michael kept the Six men at his house all the time?
31. Why do you think Rassendyll waited in the forest with Fritz until it was dark?
32. Was the King to blame for what happened before the coronation? Why or why not?
33. Rassendyll was lucky while fighting Rupert in the forest. **Illustrate.**
34. Rupert sensed danger well. **Discuss.**
35. Why do you think Sapt covered the King's face while taking him to a room upstairs?
36. Why did Rassendyll need a permit to leave the city (Strelsau)?
37. Why do you think Hentzau killed the Duke?
38. In your opinion, why were the Ruritarians angry that the King had been away for long?
39. Why do you think the people of Ruritania were angry that the King and the Princess hadn't married?
40. Why do you think Johann agreed to work against Michael?
41. Do you think Rassendyll was right to worry when he saw Antoinette at the coronation? Why?
42. Who do you think shot Bernenstein in the woods?
43. Why do you think Rassendyll chose the inn owner's daughter to bring Johann?
44. Why do you think Rassendyll asked Rupert about Detchard's injury?
45. Was Rassendyll right to be careful while talking to the Princess? Why / Why not?
46. Why do you think Rupert smiled when Rassendyll spoke about Detchard's injury?
47. Do you think Sapt was really a veteran fighter as he had claimed? Why do you think so?
48. Why do you think the handwriting was really different?
49. Why do you think the Duke left for Zenda after the summer house fight?
50. Why do you think Antoinette's expression changed when she saw the King at the coronation?
51. Why do you think Antoinette plotted against the Duke?
52. Why do you think Rassendyll said he would knock the animal that bit him?
53. Was Sapt right to appoint six men to guard and watch Rassendyll? Why / Why not?
54. If you were Rassendyll, would you object to being followed by guards? Why / Why not?
55. Why do you think Rassendyll remembered very little of the coronation?
56. Why do you think the Princess asked Rassendyll to be careful? Why didn't she explain why?
57. Rassendyll was conceited مغرور at the beginning of the story. **Discuss.**



58. How did fate help the King against the Duke?  
 59. Sapt was good at negotiation / التفاوض / persuasion / discussion / argument. Prove this.  
 60. What do you think of Rassendyll's buying a flower from the poor girl?

ثالثاً: أهم أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد بالقصة كاملة

تشمل تمارين كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات ودليل التقويم وموقع لولوجمان وامتحانات الثانوية العامة

1. What special event is going to take place in Ruritania? (WB)
  - a. There will be a war.
  - b. There will be a new King.
  - c. There will be a new Duke of Strelsau.
  - d. Colonel Sapt is going to become ruler.
2. Who is the Duke of Strelsau? (WB)
  - a. He is the true King of Ruritania.
  - b. He is the King's father.
  - c. He is the King's half brother.
  - d. He is Rudolf Rassendyll's brother.
3. Why does Fritz von Tarlenheim say that he understands Rudolf Rassendyll well? (WB)
  - a. They are both officers for a King or Queen.
  - b. They both want to be King.
  - c. They both look like the King.
  - d. They both want to meet the Duke.
4. As well as how he looks, in what way is Rudolf Rassendyll like the King? (WB)
  - a. They are not kind men.
  - b. They both have an easy life.
  - c. They both like fighting.
  - d. They are both English.
5. What is the reason that Rudolf Rassendyll gives for being lazy? (WB)
  - a. Because he comes from an important family.
  - b. Because he doesn't have a good job.
  - c. Because he never helps in the house.
  - d. Because he never wants to travel.
6. What job does Rose persuade Rudolf Rassendyll to do? (WB)
  - a. work with an ambassador
  - b. write a book
  - c. teach children
  - d. work in a hotel
7. Which of these is *not* a reason that Rudolf Rassendyll decides to visit Ruritania? (WB)
  - a. He has six months before his job starts.
  - b. His family have relatives there.
  - c. Rudolf the Fifth is to become King of Ruritania there shortly.
  - d. He wants to be the ambassador to Ruritania.
8. Who do Fritz von Tarlenheim and Colonel Sapt work for? (WB)
  - a. Duke Michael
  - b. the King
  - c. Johann
  - d. Antoinette de Mauban
9. Why did Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim not eat much on the evening they had dinner at the hunting lodge? (WB)
  - a. They knew the food was poisoned.
  - b. They were not hungry.
  - c. They were very ill.
  - d. They did not want to eat much before the important coronation.
10. Why did the poor people in the capital want Duke Michael to become King? (WB)
  - a. They wanted things to change.
  - b. They wanted things to stay the same.
  - c. They thought he was a lazy man.
  - d. They wanted a war with the King.
11. The King has to return to the palace in the dark because ..... (WB)
  - a. they don't want people to know that he was ill.
  - b. he is not wearing the King's clothes.
  - c. the poor people would attack him if they saw him.
  - d. he is frightened of the Duke.
12. Rudolf has to leave the country before it's light so that ..... (WB)
  - a. the Duke can become King
  - b. nobody knows that he pretended to be the King.
  - c. he can write a story about what happened.
  - d. people don't think that he poisoned the King
13. Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King was? (WB)
  - a. He was stronger than the King.
  - b. He did not eat the same food as the King.
  - c. He did not eat as many cakes as the King.
  - d. He knew what was planned for the King.
14. How does Rassendyll feel about pretending to be the King? (WB)
  - a. He is looking forward to it.
  - b. He feels nervous.
  - c. He feels confident.
  - d. He loves it.



15. What was the city of Strelsau like? (WB)  
 a. It was modern. b. It was very old.  
 c. It was a mixture of old and new buildings. d. It was very poor.
16. Why do you think that Rassendyll was afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban on the balcony? (WB)  
 a. Because he thought that she might recognise him. b. Because she recognised him.  
 c. Because she wanted to marry the King. d. Because she knew that he was not the King.
17. What do Sapt and Rassendyll find when they return to the lodge in the forest? (WB)  
 a. the body of the King. b. the body of Josef.  
 c. the Duke. d. an empty house.
18. Why does Rassendyll have to continue pretending to be the King? (WB)  
 a. Because the real King has been kidnapped. b. Because he enjoys it.  
 c. Because Sapt wants him to become King. d. Because the Princess asks him.
19. Why can't the Duke kill the real King? (WB)  
 a. He is already dead. b. Because then Rassendyll stays as the King.  
 c. He doesn't know where he is. d. Because he loves his half brother.
20. After the King had been kidnapped, Sapt asked Rassendyll to go back to ..... (WB)  
 a. England. b. the Continental Hotel.  
 c. Strelsau and continue with the game. d. Strelsau and collect every soldier.
21. What did Rassendyll do to surprise Sapt and the Marshal when they first arrived in Strelsau? (WB)  
 a. He wanted to ride through the old town alone. b. He wanted to lead all the soldiers.  
 c. He wanted to meet Duke Michael. d. He wanted to marry Princess Flavia.
22. What did Princess Flavia think of the King (Rassendyll) after the coronation? (WB)  
 a. She thought that he was the same. b. She thought that he had changed.  
 c. She knew that he wasn't the King. d. She didn't like him.
23. How do Sapt and Rassendyll leave the palace? (WB)  
 a. through the city walls. b. through a large gate.  
 c. through a secret passage. d. through a cave.
24. Who are the Six Men? (WB)  
 a. They are the King's special soldiers. b. They are the Duke's best friends.  
 c. They are the Duke's special soldiers. d. They are men who work for Colonel Sapt.
25. How did Sapt know that the King was at the Castle of Zenda? (WB)  
 a. Because the King wrote to him. b. The drawbridge to the castle was always up.  
 c. The Six Men told him. d. He has saw him there.
26. Why did Antoinette de Mauban write the letter to Rassendyll? (WB)  
 a. She wanted to help him. b. She wanted to help the King.  
 c. Michael told her to write it. d. Sapt asked her to write it.
27. Antoinette de Mauban tells Rassendyll ..... (WB)  
 a. Michael's plan to become King. b. why she liked Michael.  
 c. why she liked the summer house. d. how to escape from Ruritania.
28. Rassendyll wants Princess Flavia to be the new ruler of Ruritania if anything happens to the King because ..... (WB)  
 a. he thought that she would be a good ruler. b. he wanted to marry her.  
 c. he thought that she is better than the King. d. this would stop Michael from becoming King.
29. What did Rassendyll think helped people to forgive his mistakes in Strelsau? (WB)  
 a. He was growing in popularity. b. He was good at pretending.  
 c. He forgot all the rules. d. They knew that he was not the King.
30. Why were three of the Six Men at the Castle of Zenda? (WB)  
 a. They were looking for the Duke. b. They were guarding the King.  
 c. They were looking for Rassendyll. d. They were repairing the drawbridge.



31. Antoinette de Mauban was no longer staying with Michael as his guest because ..... (WB)  
 a. they were now married. b. she wanted to leave Ruritania.  
 c. they had had a big argument. d. she was trying to catch Rassendyll
32. What did Rassendyll use to escape from the summer house? (WB)  
 a. a ladder. b. a metal table.  
 c. a chair. d. fifty thousand English pounds
33. Michael wanted to marry Princess Flavia because ..... (WB)  
 a. he loved her. b. he wanted to become King legally.  
 c. he wanted to stop the King marrying her. d. he wanted to stop Rassendyll marrying her.
34. What did Rupert do to Rassendyll out of the country house? (WB)  
 a. He asked him for lunch. b. He invited him to the castle.  
 c. He stabbed him in the shoulder. d. He killed him.
35. Where is the King kept in the castle? (WB)  
 a. on the drawbridge. b. in a room next to the castle moat  
 c. in a tower. d. in a country house.
36. Michael wanted his men to ..... if the castle was attacked. (WB)  
 a. kill the King and hide the body. b. let the King escape  
 c. say that he rescued the King. d. kill Rassendyll.
37. How did Rupert try to stop Rassendyll and his men from visiting the Castle of Zenda? (WB)  
 a. He said that the Duke had a dangerous illness. b. He said that there was nobody at the castle.  
 c. He said that the building was going to fall down. d. He said that the servants were all dangerous.
38. Why couldn't Rupert say that Rassendyll was not the real King in public? (WB)  
 a. Nobody would believe him. b. People would know that he had kidnapped the King.  
 c. He was frightened of Rassendyll. d. He was frightened of the Duke.
39. Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz decided to ..... (WB)  
 a. kill Rupert. b. make a move against Michael.  
 c. set Antoinette free. d. make Johann a spy.
40. Rassendyll saw that the guard inside the boat was ..... (WB)  
 a. Rupert b. Josef c. Max Holf d. Detchard
41. Rassendyll and his men could not wait any longer to try to save the King because ..... (WB)  
 a. The King was ill and might die. b. Rassendyll had to leave the country.  
 c. The Duke was going to kill him. d. Rupert would become King.
42. Rassendyll managed to listen to the King inside the Castle of Zenda when ..... (WB)  
 a. He went to his room. b. He hid in the castle.  
 c. He pretended to be Johann. d. He listened from the moat.
43. What happened to Rupert at the end? (WB)  
 a. Rassendyll killed him. b. Sapt captured him.  
 c. He escaped. d. He became King.
44. Who did the people of Strelsau think had killed the Duke? (WB)  
 a. Rupert b. Rassendyll c. the King d. Sapt
45. Who does Rassendyll hear talking when he swims round the castle moat? (WB)  
 a. the Duke and Johann. b. the King and Detchard.  
 c. Rupert and the King. d. Max and Johann.
46. Why is Antoinette de Mauban a prisoner in the Duke's mansion? (WB)  
 a. Because she wants to be Queen. b. Because she is a murderer.  
 c. Because the Duke cannot trust her. d. Because she wants to marry Rassendyll.
47. What does Rassendyll teach the real King? (WB)  
 a. what a real King should be. b. how to trick people.  
 c. how to find Rupert. d. how to fight.



48. Who kills the Duke in a fight? (WB)  
 a. Antoinette de Mauban    b. Rupert    c. Rassendyll    d. the King
49. Why had the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family? (SB)  
 a. Because the Elphbergs had red hair.    b. As Countess Amelia married one of the Elphbergs.  
 c. Because the Elphbergs were a royal family.    d. Because the Rassendylls loved Kings and Queens.
50. What sort (kind) of work did Rose suggest Rudolf should do? (SB)  
 a. To work as an ambassador.    b. To become a great writer.  
 c. To be an explorer.    d. To work with Sir Jacob Borrodaile.
51. What did the owner of the inn think of Michael, Duke of Strelsau? (SB)  
 a. She thought he was a bad person.    b. She loved him more than his brother.  
 c. She hated him much.    d. She wanted him to remain a Duke.
52. Where and when was The Prisoner of Zenda set? (SB)  
 a. In England in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.    b. In Ruritania in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.  
 c. In Europe in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.    d. In France in the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
53. Why didn't Rudolf Rassendyll work? (SB)  
 a. He was disabled.    b. He didn't need to work.  
 c. He was poor.    d. He couldn't find a job.
54. Why did Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day? (SB)  
 a. To see the castle and meet the King.    b. To hunt animals.  
 c. To hide from the innkeeper.    d. To search for his lost friend.
55. What did Rassendyll tell his family about his plans for the next six months? (SB)  
 a. He would travel to Ruritania.    b. He would go to the Alps.  
 c. He would attend the coronation.    d. He would go hunting.
56. Why did Rassendyll look like the King of Ruritania? (SB)  
 a. Because they were distant cousins.    b. Because they were brothers.  
 c. Because they were twins.    d. Because they were foes.
57. What made Rose angry when Rassendyll spoke about his family's important position? (SB)  
 a. Her family was richer than the Rassendylls.    b. She hated the Rassendylls.  
 c. Her family were less important than the Rassendylls.    d. The Rassendylls were fierce and vulgar.
58. Who did Rassendyll meet in the forest? (SB)  
 a. Sapt and Josef.    b. Sapt and Fritz.  
 c. Johann and Max.    d. The King and the Duke.
59. What happened at the end of the meal? (SB)  
 a. The King drank wine.    b. The King played chess.  
 c. The King ate poisonous cakes.    d. The King committed suicide.
60. Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban? (SB)  
 a. She might tell people he loved her.    b. She might recognize him.  
 c. She would try to kill him.    d. He knew she would hurt him.
61. When would Sapt get the King to Strelsau? (SB)  
 a. Two weeks after the coronation.    b. On the same day but later.  
 c. Three days after the coronation.    d. After getting rid of Michael.
62. What was the result of the King's eating the cakes the next day? (SB)  
 a. Rassendyll died.    b. The King died.  
 c. The King was poisoned.    d. The King turned mad.
63. What advice did Sapt and Fritz give the King on the coronation eve ليلة التتويج? (SB)  
 a. Not to eat too much.    b. Not to tell his secrets to Rassendyll.  
 c. Not to trust the Duke.    d. To get rid of Johann's mother.
64. Why did the Duke poison the King? (SB)  
 a. To rob his house.    b. To be a Lord instead of him.  
 c. To inherit his big palace.    d. To be crowned instead of him.



65. Who overheard Sapt's plan? (SB)  
a. Johann's sister. b. The Duke of Strelsau. c. The old man. d. The mother of Johann.
66. What was the first thing Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll did when they reached the capital? (SB)  
a. They sent a letter to Johann. b. They sent word to the palace.  
c. They told the Marshal the truth. d. They sent a telegraph for Flavia.
67. Why did they go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards? (SB)  
a. They wanted to have breakfast at the station. b. So that Michael's men wouldn't catch them.  
c. Rassendyll had to leave for England quickly. d. Sapt wanted to meet the Marshal at the station.
68. Why weren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them? (SB)  
a. They had arrived at the station an hour earlier. b. Michael ordered that no one would meet them.  
c. The Duke had prepared a trap for them. d. All people were doing work at the palace.
69. What did Sapt and Fritz do with Johann's mother? (SB)  
a. They killed her. b. They locked her with the King.  
c. They kept her in the palace. d. They sent her out of the cellar.
70. Why didn't many people know what the King looked like? (SB)  
a. He had always hidden in the forest. b. He had always lived abroad.  
c. He had always lived in Ruritania. d. He had always lived with them.
71. Rassendyll's face was ..... (SB)  
a. completely similar to the King's face. b. completely different from the King's face.  
c. a little similar to the King's face. d. a little different from the King's face.
72. What did the King invite Rassendyll to? (SB)  
a. To visit the jungles with him. b. To have breakfast with him.  
c. To attend the coronation with him. d. To eat with him in the lodge.
73. Whom did Sapt and Fritz believe to have poisoned the King? (SB)  
a. The Lord. b. The old woman. c. Michael Elphberg d. Rassendyll.
74. Which men hid the King in the cellar? (SB)  
a. Sapt and Rassendyll. b. Rassendyll and Johann's mother.  
c. Fritz and Josef. d. Two of the King's loyal men.
75. Who were locked in the cellar? (SB)  
a. The King and his brother. b. Rassendyll and Johann's mother.  
c. Rudolf Elphberg and the old woman. d. Josef and Johann's mother.
76. Rassendyll expected that Antoinette would .....  
a. say that Michael wanted to be the King. b. say Sapt was not loyal to the King.  
c. say that Rassendyll was pretending to be the King. d. tell people to save her from the balcony.
77. .... dressed Rassendyll in the King's clothes. (SB)  
a. The innkeeper. b. Sapt. c. The King's servant. d. Fritz von Tarlenheim.
78. What made Sapt throw water at Rassendyll? (SB)  
a. To wake him up. b. To have some fun.  
c. To make Rassendyll angry. d. To take revenge on Rassendyll.
79. What was Strelsau? (SB)  
a. The city where the King was killed. b. The capital of France.  
c. The capital of Ruritania. d. The city which the Duke conquered.
80. After the King was poisoned, what did Sapt want Rassendyll to do? (SB)  
a. Sapt asked Rassendyll to leave the country as soon as possible.  
b. Sapt wanted Rassendyll to kill the mother of Johann.  
c. Sapt asked Rassendyll to guard the hunting lodge with Josef.  
d. Sapt wanted Rassendyll to pretend to be the King.
81. Who rode with Rassendyll through the streets of Strelsau? (SB)  
a. Marshal Strakencz and Madame de Mauban. b. Flavia and Michael.  
c. Sapt and Fritz. d. The Colonel and the Marshal.



82. In the forest, who told the King who Rassendyll was? (SB)  
 a. Fritz.                                      b. The Duke.                                      c. Sapt.                                      d. Josef.
83. Josef was ..... (SB)  
 a. a loyal friend to the King.                                      b. a loyal friend to the Duke.  
 c. the son of the old woman.                                      d. a personal servant of the King.
84. Zenda was ..... (SB)  
 a. a place where the army camped.                                      b. The capital of Ruritania.  
 c. an important port in England.                                      d. a place where the Duke had a castle.
85. Johann's mother was ..... (SB)  
 a. a servant of Colonel Sapt.                                      b. an important person in the army.  
 c. a servant of the Duke.                                      d. a servant of the King.
86. What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do after the King was kidnapped? (SB)  
 a. To return to England immediately.                                      b. To complete his game in Strelsau.  
 c. To kill Duke Michael.                                      d. To take Fritz's place at the king's room.
87. Why was Sapt anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town? (SB)  
 a. Sapt hated people in the old part.                                      b. Sapt didn't want Rassendyll to become popular.  
 c. Sapt thought Rassendyll wanted to be the King forever.  
 d. Sapt's position would be difficult if Rassendyll was killed.
88. How did Sapt and Rassendyll get a permit from the King? (SB)  
 a. Rassendyll signed a King's form.                                      b. Sapt copied the King's signature.  
 c. Fritz did it for them.                                      d. Rassendyll imitated the King's handwriting.
89. What kind of people lived in the old part of the city? (SB)  
 a. High-class people.                                      b. Very old people.  
 c. Wealthy people.                                      d. Very poor people.
90. Rassendyll decided to ..... (SB)  
 a. really act like a King.                                      b. take the King's place forever.  
 c. marry the King's fiancée.                                      d. get rid of Sapt and Fritz.
91. Why did Duke Michael's face turn white when he saw "the King" (Rassendyll)? (SB)  
 a. He was angry to meet many people.                                      b. He was angry that the Princess was there.  
 c. He didn't expect to see the King.                                      d. He had a bad cold.
92. How did Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace? (SB)  
 a. Throw the window.                                      b. Through a secret panel in the wall.  
 c. Through the cellar.                                      d. Through the main door.
93. Why did Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city? (SB)  
 a. Michael was controlling the city.                                      b. The girl at the gate asked them to do so.  
 c. The city gates were open.                                      d. The King would be angry if they didn't take it.
94. What did Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge? (SB)  
 a. Josef was freed.                                      b. Johann's mother was killed.  
 c. The King was killed.                                      d. Josef was dead.
95. What did Rassendyll do when the Marshal wanted him to ride through the old part of town? (SB)  
 a. He obeyed the Marshal.                                      b. He asked Sapt about his opinion.  
 c. He insisted on entering the old part alone.                                      d. He entered the old town with soldiers.
96. What did the Princess say about Rassendyll after the coronation? (SB)  
 a. He was not the real King.                                      b. He had become fatter.  
 c. He had become funnier.                                      d. He had changed a lot.



97. What did Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll went to Zenda? (SB)  
 a. He guarded the King. b. He guarded the King's body.  
 c. He guarded the cellar. d. He guarded the King's room.
98. Which way did Michael and Max go at the fork in the road? (SB)  
 a. The way to the inn. b. The way to the lodge.  
 c. The way to the capital. d. The way to the castle.
99. Which way did Rassendyll and Sapt go at the fork in the road? (SB)  
 a. The way to the castle. b. The way to the inn.  
 c. The way to the lodge. d. The way to the mansion.
100. How long did Rassendyll expect to pretend to be the King? (Longman)  
 a. For two years. b. For two weeks.  
 c. For the coronation day only. d. For five months.
101. Who rode with Michael from Strelsau to Zenda? (SB)  
 a. Johann's brother. b. Colonel Max. c. Sapt. d. The Marshal.
102. Why did Rassendyll continue to pretend to be the King after the coronation day? (Longman)  
 a. Because the King was killed. b. As he wanted to marry Flavia.  
 c. Because he planned to be King forever. d. Because the King had been kidnapped.
103. What did Rassendyll remember of the coronation? (SEG)  
 a. The golden crown and the dancing. b. The music and the crown.  
 c. The cold welcome of the princess. d. The good welcome of Michael.
104. What did the six torn and dirty handkerchiefs on the ground indicate تبين? (SEG)  
 a. Michael's men killed Johann's mother. b. The Duke's men killed Josef.  
 c. The old woman was killed. d. Johann's mother was freed.
105. How did Sapt explain what had happened to the King? (SEG)  
 a. Michael had known everything from Flavia. b. Fritz had betrayed the King.  
 c. The Duke knew the truth from Johann. d. The old woman had told Michael's men the truth.
106. How did the people of the old part of the town react when they saw Rassendyll? (SEG)  
 a. All of them were angry to see the King. b. All of them cheered for the King.  
 c. All of them were happy and delighted. d. Some of them looked at him angrily.
107. According to Flavia, how had Rassendyll (the king) changed in appearance? (SEG)  
 a. He had become thinner and more funny. b. He became more serious.  
 c. He became fatter. d. His face was younger.
108. Who was Josef killed by? (SEG)  
 a. The King's men. b. The Duke. c. Johann's mother. d. Michael's soldiers.
109. Where was the kidnapped King taken to? (SEG)  
 a. The Castle of Zenda. b. The Palace of the King.  
 c. The ministry of culture. d. The hunting lodge.
110. The Princess said that Rudolf looked different but ..... (SB)  
 a. she thought he was not the King. b. she recognised him.  
 c. she thought he was the real King. d. she knew everything that happened.
111. On the way to Zenda, Sapt and Rassendyll heard ..... (SB)  
 a. carts getting near to them. b. horses coming behind them.  
 c. a coach carrying the princess behind. d. three troops coming behind.
112. .... left the palace to get the real King back. (SB)  
 a. Sapt and Rassendyll. b. Johann and Max.  
 c. Michael and Max. d. The Duke and the Colonel.



(SB)

113. Who was the new servant at the palace replacing?

- a. Johann                      b. Johann's mother      c. Max Holf                      d. Josef

114. What did Sapt plan to do in case the real king was dead?

(2014 دور ثان/نظام حديث)

- a. Rassendyll would marry Flavia.                      b. Fritz would be King.  
c. Rassendyll would stay King forever.                      d. Michael would be King forever.

115. Why did the men who came to the lodge have spades with them?

(Longman)

- a. To dig a hole in the ground.                      b. To bury Josef.  
c. To look for diamond.                      d. To collect some sand.

116. Where were the Six Men from?

(SB)

- a. Three of them were Ruritanians and the other three were local.  
b. Three of them were foreigners and the other three were Ruritanians.  
c. Four of them were local and two were from abroad.  
d. All of them were Ruritanian and loyal to the Duke.

117. Why were three of the Six Men only in Strelsau?

(SB)

- a. The other three were in the lodge.                      b. The other three were guarding the King.  
c. The other three were on a holiday.                      d. The other three left work with Michael.

118. Why did Rassendyll visit the Princess?

(SB)

- a. Because he loved her.                      b. As he wanted to marry her.  
c. He wanted her to fight with him against Michael.                      d. In order to benefit from her popularity.

119. What did Rassendyll do on the way to the Princess's palace?

(SB)

- a. He kissed an old man's hand.                      b. He bowed to the people.  
c. He bought a flower from a girl.                      d. He kissed the poor girl and gave her a flower.

120. What mistake did Rassendyll make while visiting Flavia?

(SB)

- a. He didn't ask Michael about his health.                      b. He didn't permit Michael to enter the room.  
c. He refused to shake the Duke's hand.                      d. He left the Duke waiting outside on purpose.

121. How did Rassendyll cover up his mistake at Flavia's house?

(SB)

- a. He sent Fritz to ask Michael in.                      b. He asked Flavia to let Michael in.  
c. He got Michael inside by himself.                      d. He apologized to Michael's men.

122. How did Rassendyll know that the Six Men also knew his secret?

(SB)

- a. Detchard told him he knew his real identity.                      b. Detchard smiled while they were talking.  
c. Bersonin laughed at Rassendyll's talk.                      d. De Gautet told him he knew everything about him.

123. Rassendyll decided to keep some plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What were those plans? (SB)

- a. He planned to take the throne.                      b. He planned to tell the truth to the Marshal.  
c. He planned to tell the truth to the Ruritanians.                      d. He planned to make himself popular.

124. Why couldn't Michael come into the room when the King was there?

(SB)

- a. Because the King didn't like Michael.                      b. Because the King didn't want to see him.  
c. Because Michael didn't want to meet the King.                      d. Because the King is royal and higher than him.

125. Why did princess Flavia send a servant to the palace?

(SEG)

- a. To see how the King was.                      b. To give a letter to the King.  
c. To convey a message to Sapt.                      d. To meet Sapt and Fritz.

126. Who did Michael introduce to the pretend king at the Princess Flavia's place?

(SEG)

- a. The Ruritanian Six Men.                      b. All the Six Men.  
c. Four special soldiers.                      d. The foreigner Six Men.

127. Who did Rassendyll go to after he heard of the two letters?

(SB)

- a. The Duke.                      b. The Marshal.                      c. The King.                      d. The Princess.



128. Rassendyll had never liked responsibilities. Then he had many. What responsibilities did he have? (SB)  
 a. Loving Flavia and planning to marry her. b. Running the country's affairs.  
 c. Planning to take the throne and kill the King. d. Reclaiming the Ruritanian desert.
129. What prevented people from noticing that Rassendyll was not the real King? (SB)  
 a. Rassendyll's skill at running the country. b. Rassendyll's being a good swordsman.  
 c. Rassendyll making mistakes. d. Rassendyll's pretending to forget rules.
130. Why did Rassendyll want to go to Zenda? (SB)  
 a. To save the King. b. To meet Flavia.  
 c. To marry the innkeeper. d. To buy the castle.
131. When Rassendyll talked to Detchard at the summer house, what did Detchard offer him? (SB)  
 a. A safe journey and a million pounds. b. A safe journey and a thousand pounds.  
 c. Fifty thousand English pounds and safety. d. A million gold pieces and safety.
132. What did Antoinette de Mauban tell Rassendyll in her letter? (SB)  
 a. To show the letter to Fritz. b. Not to tell Sapt about her.  
 c. To visit her in the summer house. d. To go and marry her.
133. Why did Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere? (SB)  
 a. So that Rassendyll wouldn't escape. b. So that Rassendyll wouldn't make mistakes.  
 c. To protect Rassendyll from Michael's men. d. Sapt wanted to get rid of Rassendyll.
134. How did the Princess react when Rassendyll said he didn't need to worry about society? (SB)  
 a. She praised him. b. She thanked him.  
 c. She was pleased. d. She was surprised.
135. What did Rassendyll tell Marshal Strakencz to do before he left Strelsau? (SB)  
 a. To kill the Princess. b. To kill Michael.  
 c. To guard Flavia. d. To guard the Duke.
136. Why did Rassendyll become good at pretending he had forgotten rules or people he had met? (SB)  
 a. To get some freedom. b. To act like a King.  
 c. To attract attention. d. To cover up his mistakes.
137. Who wrote a letter to Rassendyll? (SB)  
 a. The Duke of Strelsau. b. Princess Flavia.  
 c. The King of Ruritania. d. Madame de Mauban.
138. Who did Rassendyll suspect really wrote the letter? (SB)  
 a. Fritz von Tarlenheim b. The Duke of Strelsau  
 c. Rupert Hentzau d. Rudolf Elphberg
139. What did Rassendyll do when he heard of the two letters that Flavia received? (SB)  
 a. He asked Flavia to visit Michael. b. He planned to set a trap for de Mauban.  
 c. He ordered guards to watch Flavia. d. He asked Flavia not to do what the letters said.
140. The day after the ball, the Princess received two letters. Who were they from? (SB)  
 a. Michael and the Marshal. b. Sapt and Fritz.  
 c. The Colonel and the King. d. Antoinette and the Duke.
141. Sapt brought news of the real King. What was it? (SB)  
 a. The King was already dead. b. The King was injured.  
 c. The King was kept in the castle. d. The King was killed by Rupert.
142. How did Rassendyll come out of the summer house alive? (SB)  
 a. He killed Michael's three men. b. He killed Antoinette and escaped.  
 c. He fought the men with an iron table. d. He protected himself with a blanket.



143. Why had Sapt and Fritz prepared a ball for the Princess?  
 a. So that the Princess would love the King more.  
 b. So that Rassendyll would dance with the Princess.  
 c. So that Rassendyll would enjoy his time.  
 d. So that Rassendyll would ask the Princess to marry him.
144. What did Antoinette tell Rassendyll when he went to the summer house?  
 a. The Duke's plan to get rid of him.                      b. The Duke's wish to marry her.  
 c. Sapt's plotting against the King.                      d. The Six Men's love to Rassendyll.
145. How did Sapt react when Rassendyll almost told Princess Flavia the truth of who he was? **(LM)**  
 a. He appeared and told Rassendyll that someone wanted to meet him.  
 b. He shouted and ordered Rassendyll not to do so.  
 c. He hid behind the window and prayed to God to prevent Rassendyll.  
 d. He became happy that the Princess knew everything.
146. What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do at the ball? **(Longman)**  
 a. To dance with the Princess.                      b. To play cards with the Duke.  
 c. To tell Flavia to marry him.                      d. To show his care for the Princess.
147. According to Sapt, what would happen if Rudolf Rassendyll was killed? **(SEG)**  
 a. The game would be over.                      b. Michael would be sad.  
 c. Fritz would kill himself.                      d. Michael would be worried.
148. What did Antoinette de Mauban ask Rassendyll to do in her letter? **(SEG)**  
 a. To visit the summer house with a friend.                      b. To visit the summer house alone.  
 c. To ask Fritz about her identity.                      d. To ask Michael about her name.
149. Why didn't Colonel Sapt want Rassendyll to go to the castle? **(SEG)**  
 a. Rassendyll would stay there forever if he did.                      b. Rassendyll didn't know the castle well.  
 c. Rassendyll was not a good fighter.                      d. Rassendyll was a traitor and would escape.
150. What was Duke Michael's plan to trap and kill Rudolf Rassendyll? **(SEG)**  
 a. He would invite him to the castle and kill him there.  
 b. His men would kill Rassendyll and throw his body in the old town.  
 c. He would make Sapt and Fritz kill Rassendyll.  
 d. He would attack Rassendyll in the street and kill him.
151. What did Rudolf Rassendyll ask Marshal Strakencz to do to protect Flavia? **(SEG)**  
 a. To keep her in the castle.                      b. To hand her to Michael and his men.  
 c. To prevent Michael's men from meeting her.                      d. To marry her to Colonel Sapt.
152. What happened when Rudolf Rassendyll was about to tell Flavia about himself? **(SEG)**  
 a. Fritz prevented him.                      b. Flavia said she knew everything.  
 c. Max shot at him.                      d. Sapt prevented him.
153. What was written on the back of the letter? **(SEG)**  
 a. Antoinette wanted Rassendyll to marry her.  
 b. Antoinette asked Rassendyll not to get near to the summer house.  
 c. Antoinette wanted Rassendyll to ask Sapt about her.  
 d. Antoinette wanted Rassendyll to leave for England as soon as possible.
154. What did the letter warn Rassendyll about? **(SEG)**  
 a. His life would be in danger if he didn't go to the summer house.  
 b. Sapt was planning to plot against Rassendyll.  
 c. Antoinette was planning to kill Colonel Sapt.  
 d. Rassendyll's life would be in danger if he fought Michael.



155. According to Sapt and Rassendyll, who wrote that letter? Why? (SEG)
- Flavia, because she hated the King.
  - Antoinette, because she didn't like to see people being killed.
  - The Duke, because he was careful about Rassendyll's life.
  - Michael, in order to make a trap for Rassendyll.
156. What did Rassendyll want to tell Flavia when Sapt interrupted him? (SEG)
- That the King didn't love her.
  - That he was not the real King.
  - That Sapt wished to marry her.
  - That he himself loved her.
157. When did Sapt agree that Rassendyll would go to the summer house?
- When Rassendyll begged him to allow for this to happen.
  - When Rassendyll told him Antoinette would be useful.
  - When Rassendyll said that they didn't have time.
  - When Rassendyll threatened to go back to England.
158. What happened when Rupert was leaving the Tarlenheim house? (SB)
- He thanked Rassendyll for his hospitality.
  - He spoke rudely to Rassendyll.
  - He shook hands with Rassendyll.
  - He stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder.
159. No one went into the castle without ..... (SB)
- Rupert or Michael's permission.
  - a permit from the King.
  - a message from Antoinette.
  - a letter from Sapt.
160. What had Rassendyll asked Marshal Strakencz to do? (SB)
- To protect Flavia.
  - To be the ruler of the country.
  - To attack the palace.
  - To save the King.
161. What reason did Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau? (SB)
- He was going to have fun.
  - He was going to hunt the Duke.
  - He was going to rescue the King.
  - He would go mountain climbing.
162. What reason did Duke Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle? (SB)
- the Duke liked no one to visit his mansion.
  - the Duke had some household jobs to do.
  - the mansion was not secured.
  - the Duke had a dangerous illness.
163. What message did Rupert Hentzau bring to Tarlenheim? (SB)
- A threat from the Duke.
  - An offer from the Duke.
  - An invitation for Rassendyll.
  - A letter from Antoinette.
164. Rassendyll's writing was different from the King's. What reason did Rassendyll give? (SB)
- He was not the King.
  - He didn't know how to write.
  - He was tired.
  - His finger still hurt.
165. Where did Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip? (SB)
- in the hunting lodge.
  - in Tarlenheim.
  - in the Duke's mansion.
  - in the castle of Zenda.
166. Where was Tarlenheim house? (SB)
- On top of a hill opposite to the Castle.
  - On top of a hill behind the mansion.
  - On top of a hill next to the inn.
  - Besides the castle of Zenda.
167. What did Rassendyll and his men learn from Johann? (SB)
- The Duke's health condition.
  - The Duke's plans.
  - The King's place of interest.
  - The King's plans.
168. How did Rassendyll reply to the message that Rupert brought? (SB)
- He refused the offer.
  - He accepted the offer.
  - He said he would think about it.
  - He said he would reply within a week.



169. Rassendyll was sad to say goodbye to ..... (SB)  
 a. the Princess                      b. the King                      c. Michael                      d. the Duke's men
170. Who did Tarlenheim country house belong to? (SB)  
 a. Fritz.                      b. Sapt.                      c. A relative of Sapt.                      d. A relative of Fritz.
171. What would Michael's men do with the King's body after killing him? (SB)  
 a. They would bury it under the ground.                      b. They would stuff it.  
 c. They would throw it into the moat.                      d. They would move it to the mansion.
172. What was Michael's plan if the castle was attacked? (SB)  
 a. His men would hide in the mansion.  
 b. His men would kill the King and throw his body down the pipe.  
 c. His men would say that they would no longer work for him.  
 d. His men would kill the King and Rassendyll at the same time.
173. What happened to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll were out? (SB)  
 a. A fierce dog bit him.                      b. He was killed.  
 c. He was shot in the arm.                      d. He saw a ghost.
174. What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he didn't come back? (SB)  
 a. To marry Sapt.                      b. To leave the country at once.  
 c. To look for another fiancé.                      d. To be the ruler of the country.
175. Why might the difference in the handwriting be a problem for Marshal Strakencz? (SB)  
 a. Michael would accuse the Marshal of betrayal.  
 b. People would not believe it was a real order from the King.  
 c. Flavia would blame the Marshal for that.  
 d. Sapt would charge the Marshal with forging the signature.
176. Why did Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda? (SB)  
 a. To have dinner.                      b. To meet the innkeeper.  
 c. To drink wine.                      d. To find Johann.
177. Where was Bernenstein when he was shot? (Longman)  
 a. in the castle.                      b. in the forest.                      c. in the palace.                      d. in the capital.
178. Why did the King's prison have a large stone pipe leading to the moat? (Longman)  
 a. So that the King's body would be thrown through it.                      b. So that more air would get into the room.  
 c. Because it made the window look beautiful.                      d. Michael was hiding some gold and diamond in it.
179. What news arrived at Tarlenheim the next day? (SB)  
 a. The people were worried about the King.                      b. Flavia did not care about the King's injury.  
 c. Flavia would marry the Duke.                      d. The Duke had asked the Princess to visit him.
180. Who got killed in the fight in the woods? (SB)  
 a. Rupert and Lauengram.                      b. Three of Michael's men and three of Rassendyll's.  
 c. Krafstein and Detchard.                      d. Three of Sapt's men and two of the Six Men.
181. Who got away in the fight in the woods? (SB)  
 a. Fritz                      b. De Gautet                      c. Robert                      d. Rupert
182. Why was Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke? (SB)  
 a. The Duke wanted to marry her.                      b. The Duke wanted her to help the King.  
 c. The Duke no longer trusted her.                      d. The Duke knew she loved Rassendyll.
183. Why did Rassendyll kill Max Holf? (SB)  
 a. It was war.                      b. Rassendyll loved killing sleeping people.  
 c. Max was weak.                      d. Max Holf shot at Rassendyll.



184. Why did Rassendyll and the others go to the castle at night? (SB)  
 a. To meet Michael. b. To meet Antoinette.  
 c. To meet the King. d. To have a look at the pipe and the prison.
185. Why were Rassendyll's bags found at a train station near Zenda? (SB)  
 a. He had sent them there and had not gone to take them.  
 b. He had lost them in the station when he first arrived in Ruritania.  
 c. The inn owner had sent them there.  
 d. Michael had sent them there to reveal Rassendyll's identity.
186. Why was the Chief of Police looking for Mr. Rassendyll? (SB)  
 a. Sapt had ordered him to do so. b. Michael had ordered him to do so.  
 c. The people were looking for him. d. The ambassador reported his disappearance.
187. A doctor had been brought to see the real King in his prison. Why didn't Duke Michael let the doctor leave? (SB)  
 a. Because the Duke wanted the King to be well again.  
 b. Because the doctor would help kill the King.  
 c. Because the doctor would tell the people what the Duke had done.  
 d. Because the Duke loved keeping doctors as prisoners.
188. Why did Rassendyll ask Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at two o'clock in the morning? (SB)  
 a. So that all the people in the castle would runaway.  
 b. So that someone might rescue her from Rupert Hentzau.  
 c. So that Michael would go to her room and Sapt could catch him.  
 d. So that Michael would go to her room and kill her.
189. Why did the seven gentlemen go with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle? (SB)  
 a. To protect them and their horses. b. To meet the Duke and frighten him.  
 c. To kill the King and make the Duke happy. d. To have a swim in the moat.
190. Rassendyll met Rupert the next day while they were out riding. What plan did Rupert offer to Rassendyll? (SB)  
 a. Rupert would kill the Duke and return the King to his throne.  
 b. Rupert would be the King and Rassendyll would get a reward.  
 c. Rassendyll would be a King and reward Rupert.  
 d. Rassendyll would kill the King and make Michael King.
191. What happened at the house at Tarlenheim on the night Rassendyll's men attacked the castle?  
 a. The house collapsed. b. It was filled with music.  
 c. The Marshal locked it. d. The Duke guarded it.
192. What was the Princess reaction on hearing about the King's injury? (SEG)  
 a. She didn't care about what had happened. b. She said she was pleased with this news.  
 c. She asked the Marshal to take her to see him. d. She sent her servant to ask after the King.
193. How many men might have taken part in the plan of saving the King? (SEG)  
 a. Eleven b. Five c. Six d. Three
194. What was Rassendyll's offer to Johann? (SEG)  
 a. Fifty thousand pieces of gold. b. Fifty thousand English pounds.  
 c. A million pounds. d. A million gold pieces.
195. Who was the Chief of Police looking for? (SEG)  
 a. Rudolf Elphberg b. The real King.  
 c. The British Ambassador. d. Rudolf Rassendyll.



196. What orders did Rassendyll give to Johann? (SEG)  
 a. To give a letter to Michael and open the back gate.      b. To tell the King not to worry.  
 c. To tell Antoinette she would be rescued.      d. To give a letter to Antoinette and open the door.
197. Why did Rupert Hentzau feel safe enough to ride out on his horse? (SEG)  
 a. Because there were no wild animals.      b. As the police chief was in town.  
 c. As Rassendyll gave him safety.      d. As he was a good fighter.
198. Why was the house at Tarlenheim filled with lights and music? (SEG)  
 a. Because Flavia wanted to have some fun.      b. As the Marshal loved singing and dancing.  
 c. So that Michael would attend the ball.      d. So that people would think there was a ball.
199. Why did Rupert Hentzau go back to the mansion secretly? (SB)  
 a. To stay up with Michael.      b. To punish Antoinette.  
 c. To have dinner with Michael.      d. To kill the real King.
200. Rassendyll had asked Antoinette to cry for help at two o'clock. Why did she do it earlier? (SB)  
 a. She wanted to set a trap for Michael.      b. She wanted to sleep early.  
 c. She was attacked by Johann.      d. She was attacked by Rupert.
201. Who got killed in the first room of the King's prison? (SB)  
 a. Detchard      b. Rupert      c. De Gautet      d. Bersonin
202. Who got killed in the room where the King was? (SB)  
 a. The King and the doctor.      b. The doctor and Bersonin.  
 c. Bersonin and Detchard.      d. Detchard and the doctor.
203. Who got wounded in the room where the King was? (SB)  
 a. The King and the Duke.      b. Rassendyll and the Duke.  
 c. Rassendyll and the King.      d. The King and Rupert.
204. Why did Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll? (SB)  
 a. Because he couldn't fight two men.      b. Because he had an appointment.  
 c. As Rassendyll had a gun.      d. As Rassendyll cut him in the cheek.
205. Why did Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered? (SB)  
 a. Because the King had an infectious disease.      b. So that the servants wouldn't recognize the King.  
 c. Because the King had had a bad tooth.      d. The King didn't want to be seen while he was injured.
206. Where was Rassendyll when he saw Rupert going into the mansion? (SB)  
 a. In the moat.      b. In the mansion      c. In the castle.      d. By the drawbridge.
207. Why did Rassendyll kill De Gautet with a sword and not with a gun? (SB)  
 a. In order not to make noise.      b. Because De Gautet was strong.  
 c. Rassendyll preferred this way of killing.      d. Because they were in the moat.
208. What did Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the prisoner? (SB)  
 a. The prisoner was killed while defending the King.      b. The prisoner killed the Princess and escaped.  
 c. The prisoner ran after Rupert in the forest.      d. The prisoner was set free by the Marshal.
209. What did Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King? (SB)  
 a. The King rescued the prisoner and killed the Duke.      b. The king was killed in a fight with the Duke.  
 c. The King was injured by the Marshal.      d. The King ran after Rupert Hentzau in the forest.
210. Where did Rassendyll wait for it to be two o'clock? (SB)  
 a. By the drawbridge gate.      b. Inside the King's prison.  
 c. Inside the castle.      d. In Antoinette's room.
211. Whose cry did Rassendyll hear while he was running after Rupert in the forest of Zenda? (SEG)  
 a. Rupert      b. Antoinette      c. A young boy      d. A strange girl



212. Why didn't the King fight Detchard directly? (SB)  
 a. He was chained in a corner. b. He didn't like fighting.  
 c. The doctor asked him not to do. d. Rupert defended him.
213. How did the King help Rassendyll against Detchard? (SB)  
 a. He stroke Detchard with a sword. b. He shot Detchard with his gun.  
 c. He attacked Detchard with a table. d. He pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body.
214. Why did Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree? (SB)  
 a. So that the Marshal wouldn't know the truth. b. So that Rassendyll wouldn't be shocked.  
 c. So that the Duke wouldn't go with her. d. So that the young boy would leave the place.
215. How did Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison? (SB)  
 a. He took them from Johann. b. He found them with Bersonin.  
 c. He took them from the Duke. d. He found them in De Gautet's clothes.
216. How did the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll? (SB)  
 a. He told the Princess that Rassendyll was not the King.  
 b. He told the Princess that Fritz was guarding the King.  
 c. He told the Princess that the King was behind the tree.  
 d. He told the Princess that Sapt had deceived her.
217. Why did Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle? (SB)  
 a. So that no one would recognize him. b. So as to sleep in the forest for some time.  
 c. So that Fritz could put a bandage on his cuts. d. Because he hated visiting the castle by day.
218. What did Rassendyll learn from his adventures? (SB)  
 a. About love and relationships. b. About travel and exploration.  
 c. About experience and knowledge. d. About duties and responsibilities.
219. What two people were with the King when Rassendyll entered the King's prison room? (Longman)  
 a. Detchard and the Duke. b. Antoinette and Flavia.  
 c. The doctor and Detchard. d. Bersonin and De Gautet.
220. Why did Rassendyll ask Princess Flavia to forgive him? (SEG)  
 a. Because he didn't love her. b. Because he didn't tell her the truth.  
 c. Because he couldn't help her. d. Because he couldn't save the King.
221. Why did the real King want to see Rassendyll? (SEG)  
 a. To introduce him to his men. b. To blame him for not helping him.  
 c. To thank him for his help. d. To punish him before he left the country.
222. What has Rassendyll shown the king? (SEG)  
 a. What a true King should be. b. How to fight bravely.  
 c. How to deal with horses. d. How to hunt animals well.
223. What happened at one o'clock in the morning in the mansion? (SEG)  
 a. Antoinette called to Rassendyll. b. Rupert killed Antoinette.  
 c. Rupert attacked Flavia's room. d. Antoinette cried for help.
224. How was the doctor killed? (SEG)  
 a. The King killed him by mistake. b. Rassendyll stabbed him to death.  
 c. Rassendyll stroke him with a sword. d. Detchard broke free and killed him.
225. How did Rassendyll try to catch Rupert Hentzau the moment he jumped into the water? (SEG)  
 a. He shot him with a gun. b. He swam after him.  
 c. He threw a stone at him. d. He waved his sword at him.



## السؤال الرابع

## 4. Finish the following dialogue:

(6 Marks)

- يتكون هذا السؤال من محادثة تحتوي علي ستة فراغات يُطلب من الطالب إكمال تلك الفراغات بإجابات تناسب المحادثة.  
- ثلاثة فراغات تطلب مثيرات (افتتاحيات حديث – أسئلة) لإجاباتهم.  
- ثلاثة فراغات أخرى تتطلب ردوداً لإجاباتهم.

## كيفية التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة:

1. اقرأ عنوان المحادثة جيداً حتى تتعرف منه علي الفكرة العامة التي تدور حولها المحادثة.
2. اقرأ المحادثة كاملة للمرة الأولى وتأكد من تحديد ما يلي:  
(أ) الفكرة العامة للمحادثة (الموقف الذي يدور في المحادثة). (ب) المتحدثين. (ج) مكان المحادثة. (د) زمن المحادثة.
3. اقرأ المحادثة كاملة للمرة الثانية وتأكد من معرفة تفاصيل الموضوع الذي تدور حوله.
4. حاول أن تتوقع الإجابات المحتملة أي (حاول أن تملأ الفراغات شفهيّاً في البداية).
5. يجب أن تعرف المطلوب في كل فراغ، فقد يكون المطلوب: جملة خبرية / سؤال عادي / سؤال مزيل، فانتبه لعلامات الترقيم.
6. تخيل أنك أنت المتحدث لتضمن صحة الإجابة. 7. يُفضل أن تكون الإجابات التي تكتبها في الفراغ مختصرة.
8. لابد وأن تتفق الإجابة مع سياق الموضوع الذي تتناوله المحادثة (يجب أن تساعد الإجابة علي تسلسل الحديث ولا تُعطله).
9. يجب استخدام زمن صحيح في الإجابة ... (مضارع – ماضي – مستقبل).
10. يجب أن تكون ملماً بطرق تكوين الأسئلة العادية والأسئلة المُذيلة وكيفية الإجابة عليهما.

## هناك أربعة أنواع رئيسية للسؤال:

- \* سؤال بمعنى (هل). / يُستخدم هذا السؤال عندما تبدأ الإجابة بما يلي: السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد

Yes	نعم	Well	حسناً	Sure / I'm sure	بالتأكيد
No	لا	Of course	بالطبع	Certainly / Definitely	بالتأكيد

?بإكمال الجملة + الفعل الأساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد

\* كيف يتكون السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد:

Question	..... (1)? (Do you know a good place for shopping?)
Answer	Yes, I know a good place for shopping.

## 2. Wh-Questions السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام

- \* يستفسر هذا السؤال عن معلومة ويبدأ بنفس معني (أداة الاستفهام) التي تأتي في أوله.  
\* يُستخدم هذا السؤال عندما تبدأ الإجابة بجملة خبرية كاملة أو عبارة واحدة أو كلمة واحدة.

?بإكمال الجملة + الفعل الأساسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + أداة استفهام

\* كيف يتكون السؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة استفهام:

Question	How many books did you buy?
Answer	I bought three books.

- \* عندما تكون الإجابة عبارة واحدة أو كلمة واحدة: \* نقوم بحذف العبارة الواحدة أو الكلمة الواحدة.  
\* نستخرج الفعل المساعد من ذهننا حسب مسار المحادثة: لأن الإجابة ليست جملة كاملة وليس بها فعل لنستخرج منه الفعل المساعد.  
\* لو هناك محادثة بين شخصين عن أجازة الصيف القادمة والمكان الذي سوف يذهب إليه كل منهما ووجدت الجزء التالي بالمحادثة:

A: .....

B: In Alex.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

\* من خلال فهمك للسياق تستطيع تحويل العبارة القصيرة (in Alex) إلى جملة كاملة كما يلي:

\* I will spend the next summer holiday in Alex.

\* بعدها ستستطيع أن تكون سؤال صحيح وكامل كما يلي:

\* Where will you spend the next summer holiday?

### 3. Tag Question السؤال المذيل

\* معنى السؤال المذيل: (أليس كذلك؟). \* شكل إجابة السؤال المذيل: يُستخدم هذا النوع من السؤال عندما تبدأ الإجابة بما يلي:

Yes	نعم	Well	حسناً	Sure / I'm sure	بالتأكيد
No	لا	Of course	بالطبع	Certainly / Definitely	بالتأكيد

؟ ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد

\* كيف يتكون السؤال المذيل:

\* يُستخدم هذا النوع من الأسئلة إذا كان المتحدث في المحادثة يريد أن يتأكد من معلومة من متحدث آخر.

\* يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً إذا كانت الجملة الرئيسية منفية ومنفياً إن كانت مثبتة.

\* يُشترط أن تكون صيغة السؤال المذيل المنفي مختصرة: كأن نسال بـ (haven't) وليس بـ (have not).

Question	You bought a new dress, ..... (1)? (didn't you?)
Answer	Yes, I did.

### 4. Indirect Questions الأسئلة الغير مباشرة

\* نضطر الى استخدام الأسئلة غير المباشرة اذا كان الفراغ المراد اكماله ينتهي بنقطة (full stop) وبحاج الفراغ إلى سؤال.

\* داخل السؤال الغير مباشر لا نضطر إلى تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل. \* هناك نوعان من الأسئلة الغير مباشرة:

1. أسئلة غير مباشرة تهدف إلى الحصول على معلومات:

? جملة خبرية + أداة استفهام + سؤال افتتاحي

. جملة خبرية + أداة استفهام + جملة خبرية افتتاحية

\* Could you tell me where the manager is?

\* I want to know what you are going to do after school today.

2. أسئلة تهدف إلى الحصول على إجابة بنعم أو لا:

.....? (or not) + جملة خبرية + if (whether) + سؤال افتتاحي

. (or not) + جملة خبرية + if (whether) + جملة افتتاحية خبرية

\* Do you know if (whether) she will participate in the contest (or not)?

\* I'd like to know whether you have passed your driving test or not.

\* إذا كانت الإجابة بعد (No) مثبتة فإننا نقوم بعكس معنى السؤال (أي نعكس أحد أجزاء الجملة).

Question	Have you visited Egypt before?
Answer	No, this is my first visit to Egypt.

\* أحياناً يمنحك واضع سؤال المحادثة هدية عندما يضع المطلوب في الجملة التالية للفراغات وغالباً يتبعه بعلامة تعجب....

A: Where have you been?

B: ..... (1).

A: Paris!

\* من المؤكد أن الإجابة المطلوبة في الفراغ رقم (1) هي (Paris).



## Test yourself

### 1. Finish the following dialogue:

Between a doctor and a patient.

- Doctor : ..... (1)?  
 Patient : I have a sore throat.  
 Doctor : ..... (2)?  
 Patient : Yes. I also feel some pain in my chest.  
 Doctor : How long have you felt like that?  
 Patient : ..... (3).  
 Doctor : Why didn't you come earlier then?  
 Patient : ..... (4).  
 Doctor : This is not an excuse. Health is more important than work. Let me examine you.  
 Patient : ..... (5)?  
 Doctor : No, nothing is serious. But ..... (6).  
 Patient : How long will I have to do that?  
 Doctor : For three days, and I'll write down now recommending that for your boss.  
 Patient : Thank you, doctor.

### 2. Finish the following dialogue:

Samy is asking for his friend Ali's help.

- Samy: ..... (1)?  
 Ali : Of course, I will if I can. .... (2)?  
 Samy: I want to get a driving licence but ..... (3).  
 Ali : Don't worry, I will certainly give you good instruction.  
 Samy: Thank you. .... (4)?  
 Ali : The day after tomorrow. Will that be OK?  
 Samy: Of course, it will. .... (5)?  
 Ali : Not less than a fortnight.  
 Samy: ..... (6).  
 Ali : You don't have to do so. We can use my car.  
 Samy: That's very kind of you.

### 3. Finish the following dialogue:

Between Ibrahim and his friend Munir about a football match that has just ended.

- Ibrahim: How do you feel about the match?  
 Munir : ..... (1).  
 Ibrahim: I did, too. And ..... (2)?  
 Munir : I think our team played positively for most of the match.  
 Ibrahim: Yes, we deserved to win, ..... (3)?  
 Munir : Yes, we did. But ..... (4).



Ibrahim: I hope he will train hard again to regain his known good level.

Munir : But the final match is near and the coach must try another striker if ..... (5).

Ibrahim: You're right. When will the final match be?

Munir : Next Friday. .... (6)?

Ibrahim: Of course, we will. Let's arrange it next Thursday.

Munir : That's OK.

#### 4. Finish the following dialogue:

Between a receptionist and a customer.

Receptionist: Can I help you, sir?

Customer : Yes, ..... (1).

Receptionist: ..... (2)?

Customer : For a week.

Receptionist: Single or double, sir?

Customer : ..... (3). I'm alone.

..... (4)?

Receptionist: The one you will stay in overlooks the Nile.

Customer : Nice. .... (5)?

Receptionist: 200 pounds a night.

Customer : Ok, I will book it.

Receptionist: ..... (6)?

Customer : By credit card.

Receptionist: OK, give me the number of the card, please.

#### 5. Finish the following dialogue:

Between an interviewer and an applicant in a computer company.

Interviewer: Good morning. Please sit down.

Applicant : Thank you.

Interviewer: First of all: ..... (1)?

Applicant : I had a degree in IT from Cairo university three years ago.

Interviewer: ..... (2)?

Applicant : Very Good.

Interviewer: Great! What have you been doing since you left university?

Applicant : I've been working in a small computer company in my district.

Interviewer: ..... (3)?

Applicant : Because I'm quite ambitious and want to work for a company with good reputation. Also,

..... (4).

Interviewer: We pay our employers well, but ..... (5).

Applicant : I'm ready to do any extra work, sir.

Interviewer: That's good. Your chances will be good. .... (6).

Applicant : Ok, sir. I'll be waiting for you. Thanks.



## السؤال الخامس

5. Write a paragraph of about ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

5. Write an e-mail to a friend of about ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

- ✗ يُطلب من الطالب، كتابة موضوع إنشاء أو بريد إلكتروني (الإيميل) من حوالي 120 كلمة.
- ✗ يختار الطالب موضوع واحد (1) من بين موضوعين.

### كيفية التعامل مع سؤال موضوع الانشاء

خطوات كتابة موضوع الانشاء:

1. **الخطوة الأولى:** قراءة عنوان الموضوع وترجمته جيداً حتى تستطيع منه تحديد ما يلي:
  - أ. الفكرة العامة للموضوع.
  - ب. نوع الموضوع: وصفي /روائي /تنبؤي.
  - ج. زمن الموضوع: هل هو مضارع أم ماضي أم مستقبلي. /لأن كل نوع من الموضوعات له زمن خاص به.
  - د. توجه الموضوع: يتناول موضوع واحد /يتناول موضوعين أو عنصرين) كالمزايب والعيوب / يتناول ثلاث موضوعات.
2. **الخطوة الثانية:** اعداد مسودة (في آخر ورقة الإجابة) عن الموضوع تشمل: (أفكار الموضوع /الروابط والإضافات التي ستستخدمها)
3. **الخطوة الثالثة:** البدء في كتابة الموضوع (أي تحويل الجمل التي في المسودة إلي جمل كاملة):

\* هناك أربعة أنواع من موضوعات الانشاء:

#### 1. Descriptive Paragraphs الموضوعات الوصفية:

- \* وفيها نتحدث عن حقائق أو عادات أو أشياء تحدث بالفعل بشكل دائم. \* نستخدم فيها غالباً زمن المضارع البسيط.
- \* أمثلة: الفقر /التلوث /الإرهاب /الشباب /المرأة /الرياضة /استصلاح الصحراء /استكشاف الفضاء /الوظيفة التي تحلم بها .....

#### 2. Narrative Paragraphs الموضوعات الروائية:

- \* وفيها نتحدث عن أشياء قد حدثت بالفعل في الماضي (حكاية / قصة / رواية). \* نستخدم فيها غالباً زمن الماضي البسيط.
- \* أمثلة: قصة حدثت لك أو لغيرك /تجربة لن تنساها/ زيارة أو رحلة إلي مكان ما / شيء تعودت علي فعله في الماضي.

#### 3. Futuristic Paragraphs الموضوعات المستقبلية:

- \* وفيها نتحدث عن شيء متوقع في المستقبل أو مرتب له أو مخطط لحدوثه في المستقبل. \* نستخدم فيها غالباً زمن المستقبل البسيط.
- \* أمثلة: الحياة في المستقبل (بعد خمسين عام من الآن) / مستقبل استكشاف الفضاء / كيف تري مصر في المستقبل؟

#### 4. Age comparison-based Paragraphs الموضوعات القائمة علي المقارنة بين عصرين:

- \* يتم فيها مقارنة حالة في زمن معين بحالة أخرى في زمن آخر. \* تحتاج فيها إلي المزج بين زمنين.
- \* أمثلة: الحياة الآن وفي الماضي / الحياة الآن وفي المستقبل / مصر اليوم ومصر في الماضي / النقود في الماضي وفي الحاضر

\* هناك ثلاث مكونات رئيسية لموضوع الإنشاء:

#### 1. The introduction المقدمة:

\* تتكون المقدمة من: (جملة افتتاحية / تعريف العنصر الرئيسي / جملة شاملة ومختصرة عن الموضوع).

1. **جملة افتتاحية:** عبارة عامة تستطيع تقديم أي موضوع بها، لكنها لا تكفي وحدها لتقديم الموضوع. /// مثل:

\* A great and hard challenge is the one our minds and pens face when trying to give such a good topic the most of our ideas and the best of our words.

تحد كبير ذلك الذي تواجهه عقولنا وأقلامنا حين نحاول أن نعطي مثل هذا الموضوع الجيد أغلب أفكارنا وأفضل كلماتنا.

2. **تعريف للعنصر الرئيسي في الموضوع:** \* يساعدك التعريف التالي علي تقديم أي موضوع:

is (are) + one of + the most important (most dangerous/ best/ worst) + جملة + who/ which/ that/ when/ where + اسم تصنيفي (شامل)

\* Tolerance is one of the most important qualities which people in society should have.

\* Pollution is one of the most dangerous problems which we face nowadays.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

3. جملة شاملة و مختصرة عما سيتم كتابته في الموضوع:

\* وهنا يتم عرض الأفكار الرئيسية للموضوع في جملة واحدة.

\* إذا كنت ستكتب عن مزايا و عيوب التكنولوجيا الحديثة، يمكنك كتابة جملة شاملة كما يلي:

**Modern technology has many advantages, but at the same time it has some disadvantages.**

\* إذا كنت ستكتب عن أنواع وأسباب وأثار وحلول مشكلة التلوث، يمكنك كتابة جملة شاملة كما يلي:

**There are many types of pollution whose causes and effects are many, so we have to find solutions to such a dangerous problem.**

### 2. The body الموضوع نفسه

\* يتكون من الأفكار الرئيسية التي تضعها في المسودة. \* كل فكرة تُحول إلى جملة أو أكثر.

\* يتم دعم كل فكرة بـ: أدلة / أمثلة / تفاصيل / تفسيرات / أسباب. \* يمكن استخدام الروابط التالية بين الجمل لتقوية المعنى.

First, .....	أولاً، .....	In other words, .....	بمعنى آخر، .....
Second, .....	ثانياً، .....	In addition to that, ....	بالإضافة إلى ذلك، .....
Third, .....	ثالثاً، .....	Furthermore, .....	بالإضافة إلى ذلك، .....
Finally, .....	أخيراً، .....	Moreover, .....	بالإضافة إلى ذلك، .....
On one hand, .....	من ناحية، .....	It is known that	من المعروف أن
On the other hand, .....	من ناحية أخرى، .....	In fact/ In truth	في الحقيقة
Regarding (Concerning)	بخصوص .....	..... and so forth so on.	إلخ. ....

\* كيفية الانتقال من فكرة إلى فكرة أخرى داخل الموضوع:

\* يمكنك أن تضع تمهيد للفكرة الداخلية التي ستحدث عنها باستخدام الصيغة الآتية:

The question which must be asked is: سؤال يعبر عن الفكرة To answer such a question, we can say that + شرح الفكرة في جمل متتالية

\* إذا أردت تقديم فقرة عن دور المرأة في المجتمع، يمكنك أن تفعل ذلك كما يلي:

The question which must be asked is: What role can women play in society? To answer such a question we can say that women + ثم نشرح مظاهر الدور الذي تلعبه المرأة في المجتمع في جمل بسيطة

\* عبارات هامة يمكن استخدامها داخل الموضوع:

We have to pave the way to .....	علينا أن نُمهد الطريق لـ .....
It's necessary for us to make the best use of .....	من الضروري أن نستغل .... الاستغلال الأمثل.
It's important we do our best to + مصدر.	من الضروري أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا من أجل ....
Great efforts must be exerted for the sake of + V.ing.	يجب أن تُبذل جهود عظيمة لأجل .....
It's our responsibility (duty) to + مصدر.	من مسؤوليتنا (واجبنا) أن .....
All mass media should throw the light on .....	يجب على كل وسائل الإعلام أن تُسلط الضوء على ...
We need to put an end to .....	علينا أن نضع حد (نهائية) لـ .....
We ought to find an urgent solution to .....	علينا أن نجد حلاً عاجلاً لـ .....
People must spare no effort to + مصدر.	يجب على الناس ألا يدخرون وسعاً في .....

### 3. The conclusion الخاتمة

\* يمكن استخدام ما يلي في تقديم الخاتمة:

From all that has been mentioned, we can conclude that .....	وما سبق ذكره، يمكننا أن نختم بأن .....
So the conclusion of this topic is that...	وختام هذا الموضوع هو أن .....

\* يمكن إضافة الجملة الآتية بعد كتابة الخاتمة:

\* Finally, I'd say that such subject needs more and more paragraphs to be completely discussed.

في النهاية أعتقد أن موضوع كهذا يحتاج إلى موضوعات انشاء أكثر وأكثر كي يتم مناقشته تماماً.

- لا يجب أن تحتوي الخاتمة على فكرة جديدة لم يتم تغطيتها داخل الموضوع.



نصائح ينبغي اتباعها عند كتابة موضوع الانشاء:

1. يجب كتابة عنوان الموضوع بين قوسين في منتصف السطر.
2. لا تنسى أن تترك مسافة في أول سطر من الموضوع.
3. ضع علامات ترقيم صحيحة للجمل التي تكتبها.
4. لا تُقرط في استخدام الروابط داخل الموضوع.
5. اجعل خطك واضحاً وحسناً قدر الإمكان.
6. تجنب تكرار الجمل داخل الموضوع.
7. الالتزام بزمان الموضوع: الحقائق (مضارع بسيط) / الحكايات (ماضي بسيط) / التنبؤات والتوقعات (مستقبل بسيط).
8. عدم الخروج عن الموضوع.
9. التناسق بين الأفكار المختلفة داخل الموضوع وترتيب الفقرات قبل الكتابة عنها.
10. ابتعد عن الكلمات والعبارات التي لا تعرف الهجاء (spelling) الصحيح لها.
11. لا تنس أن تراجع الموضوع كله بعد كتابته.
12. تجنب الشطب الكثير داخل الموضوع.
13. انتقي كلمات بسيطة ومعبرة.
14. اصنع التشويق للمصحح بطرح أسئلة واستخدام أدلة وأمثلة.
15. اختار موضوع تستمتع وأنت تكتبه لتصنع أفكار وجمل شيقة.
16. استخدم جمل قصيرة (بسيطة) تحتوي علي (grammar/ spelling) صحيحين.

موضوعات مكتوبة Written paragraphs

1. Charity work العمل الخيري (الامتحان التجريبي الأول 2019)

Charity is means giving help to people who are in need of it. People can do charity work by either joining a charity or giving help to the needy by themselves and through their own plans. Charity work is a humanitarian act عمل انساني. It involves giving needs, time and effort. It is done in a voluntary way. In other words, the person who does charity work doesn't expect anything in return. Charity work takes many forms like raising money for the ill, donating blood for patients who need it, giving shelter for homeless people in winter, giving money or food to poor people, starting campaigns حملات to help refugees of wars لاجئين الحرب, teaching an orphan يتيم and providing medical care. Poor, sick, injured or homeless people are generally considered the proper people to whom charity should be given. When such people are not supported, they often begin begging, which is directly asking for help from people they do not know. Charitable organisations collect money and goods and then give them to those in need. Most charities are concerned with providing basic needs, such as food, water, clothing, health care and shelter. The most common form of charity is donating money. The money is then used to buy these basic needs. Charitable giving is a responsibility in many religions. Doing charity work creates solidarity التضامن, brotherhood الأخوة and coherence of society تماسك المجتمع.

2. The effects (benefits) of technology in our life تأثيرات (فوائد) التكنولوجيا في حياتنا (الامتحان التجريبي الأول 2019)

**It's a fact that modern technological inventions have made the world a smaller place through a number of means of communication.** Modern inventions have made our life more comfortable than before. Work in factories is done accurately and quickly with the help of modern machines and under the control of computers. Modern means of communication, like the internet, satellites, telephones and fax machines, have linked all parts of the world together in one unit. People can travel to any place in modern planes in a very short time. Space ships and rockets carry people to space to explore it and discover its secrets. TV and internet programmes help people know news and events and give them entertainment. Modern houses contain convenient equipment to make housework less tiring and more perfect. Modern inventions help man to extend the scope of his mind. Man can't do without inventions of modern technology, which play an essential part in his life. However, these inventions have made man passive and unhealthy. **Therefore, they should be wisely used.**

3. Our duty towards the environment واجبنا تجاه البيئة (الامتحان التجريبي الثاني 2019)

Keeping the environment clean and healthy is the responsibility of all of us. This includes both the individuals and the authorities السلطات. **We, individuals,** have to rely on يعتمد علي clean sources of energy. It's necessary to reduce our use of non-renewable sources of energy which pollute the environment. We



have to stop throwing rubbish in the streets. Farmers mustn't spray يرش farmland with poisonous pesticides, insecticides and herbicides. People should drive their cars only when they need. People can plant trees along streets and roads to help the world to breathe pure and fresh air. **The government** should take strict measures إجراءات صارمة to keep a safe and clean environment. The government must ban تمنع using harmful chemicals that damage the environment. Factories should stop dumping their waste فضلات. Factories must be moved to unpopulated areas to avoid the deadly effects of smoke, waste and noise. Ships should be banned from throwing waste and oil into seas to protect marine life الكائنات البحرية. **It can be concluded that keeping our surroundings sound and beautiful will be an easy matter if we insist on doing it.**

4. **What it would be like in a world without trees** كيف ستكون الحياة في عالم بدون اشجار (التجريبى الثانى 2019)

The world will be a difficult place to live in if it doesn't have trees. **This is because trees are of the most important elements of nature.** They help both the environment and the people in many ways. They provide shade in summer and shelter in winter. They provide people with fruits, sap, wood and chemicals. People use wood from trees to build house, cook and heat. There are many other things that can be made out of trees. They include furniture, sports equipment, pencils, magazines and cardboard boxes. In addition to that, trees help the earth to breathe and protect us from global warming as they take in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen. Trees add a touch of beauty to the place they are planted in. They attract more people to visit gardens and public parks. In hospitals, they make patients relax and help them recuperate. They give people some relief of spirit and peace of mind. **Finally, without trees, we wouldn't manage to do many things.**

5. **Terrorism** الارهاب

**Terrorism is considered to be one of the most serious problems which face all the world. It has different kinds, causes and effects, therefore it must be well studied to find an outlet of the big crisis it has caused.**

It takes two forms: terrorist peoples and terrorist bands الجماعات الارهابية. The Israelis are the perfect example of terrorist peoples. Terrorist bands in any country threaten the life of people there. Young people join these bands because either they are unemployed or have some own political, social and religious beliefs different from those existing in their societies.

Terrorism has many bad effects on human societies. It increases the level of instability عدم الاستقرار and conflict and forces people to leave their houses and immigrate to somewhere safe. It has a bad influence on tourism which needs an atmosphere of safety, stability and security to flourish.

The individuals have a duty to help the government face this very serious problem. The government should give a hand to the young to be able to sacrifice for this country, not to damage it. People must report the police about anyone they suspect to be a terrorist. From all that has been mentioned in the above lines, we can conclude that the problem of terrorism needs an urgent solution.

6. **The New Suez Canal** قناة السويس الجديدة

The Suez Canal is one of the most important global waterways. Tenth of the world's trade passes through it. Most Egyptians feel proud when they remember President Nasser nationalizing يؤمم the canal in the 1950s to finance the High Dam in Aswan. In 2015, a major development project in the area was launched. It aimed at widening and deepening the current canal, digging a new parallel canal in addition to digging a few tunnels under the canal. The new project received huge media coverage as a national project. Millions of investment certificates were raised from the public to finance the project. Experts and



government officials expect it to achieve good results. However, these results need many years to materialize. Finally, we can conclude that the new Suez Canal project is one of the greatest development projects in Egypt.

#### 7. The African Nations Cup hosted in Egypt كأس الأمم الأفريقية التي يتم استضافتها في مصر

Hosting important continental sports championships brings about several benefits for the hosting country. Egypt has been granted the right to host and organize the African Nations Cup Championship this year because it is considered to be the most important country in Africa in different fields including, politics, science, sports and so on. The championship is the most important in Africa. All participating teams, including Egypt, hope to win and raise their flag high in such an important sports event. The government has prepared all facilities to make the organization successful and honorable. They have provided stadiums with all needs and prepared luxurious hotels for all the guests; teams and supporters. Egyptian citizens have taken their own steps towards sharing in the success of the championship. All sides must do their best so that the event has the greatest appreciation from millions of people who will be watching it throughout the world. Such an event increases the good reputation of our country and will make both economy and tourism flourish. We all hope that the event will pass peacefully and smoothly so that the whole world still respects us as it always does.

#### 8. The continuous rise in prices الزيادة المستمرة للأسعار

Nowadays we all suffer from the high rise in prices which is a nightmare that frightens the Egyptian families all the time. It is a serious problem that has many causes and needs cooperative efforts to be solved.

There are many different reasons for the continuous rise in the prices of goods and articles السلع. The increasing population makes the land available for farming limited so the agricultural production decreases. This makes our country import most crops from other countries and this of course needs a lot of hard currency. Therefore, the prices of goods are usually higher. Unemployment is another reason for the problem. Unemployed people only eat, drink and wear. They are consumers not producers مستهلكين لا منتجين.

The government has to employ unemployed people to play their role in national production. It should issue تصدر strict laws to prevent people from building houses on farmland. It is a must to devise a plan to reclaim the desert areas to meet the increasing needs of the Egyptian people. We must limit importing goods to only the necessary ones like medicines and materials necessary for industry. The government must raise the salaries of its employees. The authorities السلطات must keep an eye on تراقب the market to face greedy traders. Last but not least, prices won't be reduced unless we increase our products and reduce our imports.

#### 9. The national projects carried out in Egypt المشروعات القومية التي يتم تنفيذها في مصر

##### 9. The new administrative capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

The government has been constructing many new national projects all over the country in order to develop the economy and solve many housing and social problems. These projects are several but two of the most important projects carried out recently are the New Suez Canal and the New Administrative Capital. The new capital is a large-scale project. It is located east of Cairo. According to the plans, the city will become the new administrative and financial capital of Egypt, housing the main government departments and ministries, as well as foreign embassies. It will have a population of five-to-seven million people. It was established to relieve congestion الزحام in Cairo. It will be built as a smart city having



skyscrapers, many massive buildings, modern airports, a parliament building, government ministries and foreign embassies. It has the biggest Mosque and the biggest church in Africa and the Middle East. These were built to show the value of religious tolerance among all sects طوائف of the people الشعب. The project has cost a lot of money but it is expected that it will bring about numerous benefits for the country. Like other national projects, it will raise the standard of living and the national income for the Egyptian people. The government spares no effort لا تدخر وسعا in solving the problems of poverty, unemployment, housing and congestion all over the country. It is hoped that many more national projects will be carried out in the future for the good of Egypt and its citizens.

#### 10. The importance of reading أهمية القراءة

Reading is one of the most amusing means of spending leisure time. Books are man's best friends as they give the human good advice about a sound life, sensible suggestions for hard crisis and perfect solutions for serious problems. Books are seas whose ideas are like waves that a reader swims through and explores new worlds. Reading widens the scope of people's thinking. It increases people's information and knowledge in life. Readers are usually introduced to different peoples, countries, cultures, customs, habits, beliefs and religions. Through reading, older people can pass on knowledge to young generations. Educational books teach us new facts and principles about different fields such as medicine, engineering, history, geography, law, art, literature ....etc. Cultural books show people good morals and ideal behaviours that help build a civilized society. Novels and other forms of fictional books teach us a lesson. Humorous books الكتب الفكاهية give us pleasure and joke and can also advise us about life. Briefly speaking, without reading and books, life would be meaningless and boring.

#### 11. The problem of unemployment مشكلة البطالة

Unemployment is one of the most serious problems that face our society. It has a disastrous effect on the society, which makes it obligatory إجباري for the government to find a solution to it.

Unemployment has many disadvantages for both the individual and the whole society. It can turn our life upside down and make life conditions unbearable. Unemployed people usually feel frustrated محبط, desperate يائس and aimless. An idle person الشخص العاطل sees himself like a parasite طفيل which does nothing useful. It leads to less production and depressed economy. Some unemployed people commit crimes like theft, murder and suicide الانتحار. Some of them may join terrorist groups and take part in destroying the society.

Facing the problem of unemployment must be a priority أولوية for the government. It must find immediate and urgent solutions for this continuous crisis. The government should provide more job opportunities for youth and set up new projects. They should give youth the chance to reclaim the desert by giving them loans and facilities.

#### 12. The role of the Egyptian youth today دور الشباب المصري اليوم

As a matter of fact, youth are the backbone of civilized nations. They play an important and vital role in the development in their societies. The prosperity of our country depends on their efforts. The responsibility of achieving progress lies on their shoulders. The country's ability to produce relies on the ability of youth. Youth can render fruitful services in all fields for the welfare of the Egyptian society. Students in schools and universities should study hard and concentrate on learning. Graduates should be ready to serve their country and do their best to protect it from dangers. Every employee and worker should do their duties efficiently. A teacher should bring up a good generation. A doctor must help relieve the pains of his patients. A baker should be conscientious and feed people healthy bread so that



they would return the favour to him. Everyone should participate in building a prosperous society. Young men should make good use of their spare time. They should be enthusiastic, energetic, honest and loyal to their country. The government should do its best to look after young people. It should provide them with good education. It should let them share in making decisions. It should also give them loans and facilities to start new projects. Finally, youth can do a lot for this society, therefore they should be given due care.

### 13. Pollution (The dangers of pollution)

*In fact, pollution is one of the worst problems that may damage our life and our environment. It's a very serious problem.* There are different kinds of pollution such as air pollution, water pollution and noise pollution. *The causes of pollution are countless.* It is mainly caused by exhaust fumes of means of transport and the smoke from factories. Careless people dump rubbish and waste in streets or seas. *Pollution has disastrous effects on people's health and lives.* It damages people's lungs and causes dangerous heart illnesses. People can't enjoy their lives as long as the environment around them is polluted. *An urgent solution should be found for this bad problem.* People have to stop dumping their waste in streets. Factories should be moved to unpopulated areas. Mass media should spread awareness among citizens about the dangers of polluting the environment. The government should issue strict laws that prevent people from causing pollution and punish those who do so. *Finally, all efforts should be combined to combat مكافحة and get rid of pollution.*

### 14. Why tourism is important for Egypt. لماذا السياحة هامة لمصر (WB)

**Tourism is the second earner of foreign currency for Egypt. Millions of tourists come from all over the world to visit Egypt every year. They come to Egypt for many reasons. They want to enjoy the warmth of the weather and visit all ancient monuments.**

*Tourism has many advantages for our country.* It is a main source to increase national income and develop national economy. Tourists add a lot of money to the income of our country. They spend money on flights, hotels, museums, restaurants and transport. This provides our country with hard currency and provides jobs for the unemployed. Tourism is also important to make visitors know more about our history, culture, customs, traditions and language.

We should increase the number of people visiting Egypt every year by fighting terrorism which is tourism's great enemy. We have to be civilized and friendly to tourists. The government should set up modern hotels and offer accommodations at reasonable prices. **Last, but not least, it is a must that we do our best to benefit from tourism.**

### 15. The person you admire most الشخص الذي تعجب به كثيراً

**The person I admire most is and regard as a hero is Professor Magdi Yacoub.** He is a world-famous heart surgeon. He was part of the team which did the first British heart transplant operation. He was born in Egypt in Belbis in 1935. I admire him most because he is successful, perfect, hard-working and experienced. He is also very clever and good at his work. He has the qualifications and experience to do many great things. Although he retired as a surgeon in 2001, he is still researching new treatments. He is now the head of the Magdy Yacoub Heart Foundation مؤسسة, which is one of the largest charity organizations in Egypt. The foundation treats many Egyptian patients with heart problems, including small babies, free of charge مجاناً. Professor Yacoub is a great example to be followed يُحتذى به. He has showed me that you can do a lot of things even in your old age. I hope I will be a great surgeon like him. I love him very much. He deserves to be respected and loved.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

### كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

#### شكل البريد الإلكتروني The shape of an e-mail

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل  
To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه  
Subject (About) : موضوع الإيميل

Hello ...../ Dear .....,

الموضوع

Best wishes,  
اسم المرسل

### إيميلات مكتوبة Written e-mails

#### 1. the important role of women in society.

Hello .....,

How are you? I am writing this e-mail to tell you about the important role women play in society. Women are half the society. They say that behind every great man lies a woman backing him up تشجعه. Women share responsibilities with men. The Egyptian woman plays a pivotal محوري and outstanding بارز part in developing our social, cultural, economical and political life. Women are the backbone of the family besides men. The woman can occupy يشغل high-ranking positions مراكز مرموقة in society. Egyptian women do a lot of social work through women associations and unions that support worker women and their rights. Women bring up coming generations and teach them how and why to love their homeland الوطن. In economy, they have proved to have a good ability to run institutions يديروا المؤسسات as efficiently as men do. They can enter the field of work and they really have qualifications for that. They now take part in the political affairs and processes taking place in Egypt. They can choose political leaders and representatives through voting التصويت in elections الانتخابات. They can be elected as parliamentary members أعضاء برلمان too. Finally, all evidences show the basic role a woman does for humanity, that's why the Egyptian woman should always be given the chance to serve her society.

Best wishes,

#### 2. a job I would like to do and why.

Hello .....,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about the job I'd like to do. Everyone wants to have a good job so that they can do some kind of service خدمة for society المجتمع. After I finish my education, I would like to be a heart surgeon جراح قلب. This is because it's a great job which will give me an important position مكانة in my society. This job will also help me to adapt to تكيف مع different situations and meet different people. Surgeons make a difference to يحدثون فارق في people's lives, so I want to be one of them. The job of a surgeon will allow me to research أبحث في new treatments all the time. Although it is a hard job which requires تتطلب working for long hours in hospitals and medical centres المراكز الطبية with other doctors and nurses around me, I love it very much. This job creates تخلق an atmosphere of جو من cooperation and teamwork العمل الجماعي. When I become a heart surgeon, I'll feel proud to help people with heart problems to start a new life with healthy hearts. I'll always try to do my work properly بشكل جيد to share in the rise رفعة of my society. Finally, I hope I will be able to achieve my dream one day.

Best wishes,



## السؤال السادس

يُطلب من الطالب ترجمة جملتين منفصلتين من الإنجليزية إلى العربية.

6. A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English. (2 Marks)

\* يُطلب من الطالب أن يختار جملة واحدة من بين جملتين ويترجمها من العربية إلى الإنجليزية

**كيفية التعامل مع سؤال الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية**

1. اكتب بلغة عربية فصيحة سليمة ولا تكتب بالعامية العربية أبداً.
2. تذكر أن الجملة العربية جملة فعلية: تبدأ بالفعل ثم الفاعل ثم المفعول.
3. إذا كان فعل الجملة الانجليزية (am / is / are / have / has) فإننا نبدأ الجملة العربية بالفاعل.
- \* Reading has many benefits. المصريون ودودين. \* Egyptians are friendly.
4. حاول أن تُخمن معني الكلمة الانجليزية التي لا تعرفها وحاول أن تعوض عنها بكلمة عربية قريبة منها.
- Ex: In most developed countries, there's no discrimination between men and women.
- \* تشعر بأن معني (discrimination) يقترب من معني (تفرقة / تمييز / عنصرية).

**كيفية التعامل مع سؤال الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية**

1. يجب قراءة قطعة الترجمة كلها مرة واحدة وفهم موضوعها ومُجملها. (حتى تستطيع التعويض عن الكلمة الصعبة بكلمة قريبة)
2. عند الترجمة نترجم حسب المعنى (سياق الكلام) وليس ترجمة حرفية.
- \* علينا أن **نتمسك** بالقيم. \* نتمسك هنا (adhere to / stick to) وليست (catch). (We should adhere to / stick to values).
3. إذا كان هناك كلمة عربية لا تعرف معناها الإنجليزي فحاول أن تستخدم **كلمة مرادفة** لها.
- \* **نصبو جميعاً إلى مستقبل مفعم بالأمل.** / استبدل (نصبو إلى) بـ (نسعى إلى / نتطلع إلى / نريد) و(مفعم بـ....) بـ (مليء بـ...).
- \* We all seek to (look forward to / want) a future full of hope.
4. تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول ثم باقي الجملة. / تجنب أن تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بفعل ...
- \* يحلم المصريون بحياة خالية من الفساد. / نبدأ بالفاعل قبل الفعل. (Egyptians dream of a life void of rot).
5. قم في البداية بتفصيل (تقسيم) الجملة العربية إلى أجزائها الأربعة (الفاعل / الفعل / المفعول / باقي الجملة) وحدد مكونات كل جزء.
- \* ان محور قناة السويس الجديدة سيغير موازين القوى في منطقة الشرق الأوسط.
- \* الفاعل: (محور قناة السويس الجديدة). \* الفعل: (سيغير). \* المفعول: (موازين القوى). \* باقي الجملة: (في منطقة الشرق الأوسط).
- \* The new Suez Canal section will change the scales of power in the Middle East area.
6. يجب مراعاة ترجمة الجملة العربية إلى نفس الزمن في الجملة الإنجليزية.
- \* **تتبنى (بنت / سوف تبني)** الدولة العديد من المصانع في كل أنحاء مصر.
- \* The state **builds** (built / will build) a lot of factories all over Egypt.
7. ترجمة الصفة: \* في اللغة العربية تأتي الصفة بعد الموصوف. \* في اللغة الانجليزية تأتي الصفة قبل الموصوف.
- \* قرأت كتاباً عن الحرب الباردة في أوروبا الأسبوع الماضي. I read a book about the cold war in Europe last week.
- \* إذا وجدت صفتان أو مجموعة صفات غير منفصلة بأدوات ربط فإننا نترجم الصفة الأخيرة أولاً ثم نكمل.
- \* إذا وجدت صفتان أو مجموعة صفات منفصلة بأدوات ربط فإننا نترجم الصفة الأولى أولاً ثم نكمل.
- \* مؤتمرات طبية دولية (international medical conferences) / جميلة ونظيفة ومتطورة. (beautiful, clean and developed).
8. لا تُترجم الأفعال (يعمل على / يعكف على / يقوم بـ) بل تُشتق فعل من الاسم الذي يلحق بهم ويُستخدم هذا الفعل كفعل أساسي للجملة.
- \* تقوم المدارس بتزويد الطلاب بكل مستلزمات عملية التعلم.
- \* Schools provide students with all the requirements of the learning process.
9. في ترجمة الجملة المنفية تقوم بنفي الفعل المساعد. / في ترجمة السؤال تقوم بتقديم الفعل المساعد علي الفعل.
- \* لن تحل الكتب الالكترونية محل الكتب الورقية تماماً في المستقبل.
- \* E-books won't replace paperback books completely in the future.
- \* ما نوعية الأنشطة التي تحب ممارستها خلال العطلة الصيفية؟
- \* What kind of activities do you like to practice during the summer vacation?



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

10. هناك ضمائر مستترة في اللغة العربية يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

\* علي أن تتناول المزيد من الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة يومياً.

\* You should eat a lot of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

11. إذا بدأت الجملة العربية بلام الملكية أو احتوت على كلمة (له / لها / لنا ..... الخ.) فإننا نعتبر فعل الجملة بمعني (يمتلك).

\* سيكون لاستخدام التكنولوجيا في التعليم أثره العظيم في التقدم.

\* Using technology in education will have a great effect on progress.

12. لا تُترجم اللغات (إن / قد / لقد) لأنها كلمات تأكيدية تؤكد الجملة فقط لا غير. / لا تُترجم كلمة (أن) إذا جاءت بعد فعل ناقص.

كلمة (أن) في منتصف الجملة وبعدها جملة كاملة تترجم (that). / كلمتي إنه / إنها (في أول الجملة) تعني (من) وتترجم إلي (It's).

كلمة (أن) التي تأتي بعد فعل عادي تترجم إلي (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) أو (V.ing + حرف جر).

\* ينبغي أن يُشارك جميع المصريون في تحمل مسؤولية وطنهم.

\* All Egyptians should share in bearing the responsibility for their homeland.

\* قررت الحكومة أن ترفع رواتب الموظفين ابتداء من الشهر القادم.

\* The government decided to raise the salaries of the employees starting next month.

\* You should avoid mixing with bad friends.

\* عليك أن تتجنب أن تختلط بأصدقاء سوء.

\* It's war that turns peoples' lives into hell.

\* إنها الحرب التي تحول حياة الناس إلي جحيم.

13. كيفية ترجمة الفعل التابع لكلمتي (قد / لقد):

قد / لقد + فعل ماضي + كلمة من كلمات الماضي.	التصريف الثاني للفعل	* قد + فعل مضارع.	مصدر + may
* كان قد / كان بالفعل قد + فعل ماضي.	had + P.P	* قد / لقد + فعل ماضي (بدون كلمة ماضي).	have / has + P.P

\* علينا أن نجد بديلاً للبترول لأنه قد ينفذ في المستقبل القريب.

\* We have to find an alternative for oil because it may run out in the near future.

\* لقد نجح الإنسان في غزو القمر واكتشاف بعض أسرارهِ. .... Man has succeeded in invading space and

\* لقد اجتاز أخي اختبار قيادة السيارة بالأمس. My brother passed a driving test yesterday.

\* عندما حضرت إلي المحطة، كان القطار بالفعل قد غادر إلي مقصده.

\* When I arrived at the station, the train had already left for its destination.

14. ترجمة الفعل التابع لكلمات (لم / لن / ليس):

لن يكون	won't be	لم + فعل مضارع.	مصدر + didn't
ليس / ليست / ليسوا + اسم / صفة	isn't / aren't	لم يكن	wasn't / weren't
ليس / ليست / ليسوا + فعل	don't / doesn't + مصدر	لن + فعل مضارع.	مصدر + won't

\* لم تكن الحرب ولن تكون أبداً السبيل الوحيد لحل النزاعات.

\* War wasn't and won't ever be the only way to settle disputes.

15. الفعل (يكون) (Be) لا يظهر في اللغة العربية في حالة المضارع لكنه يظهر في الماضي والمستقبل:

\* مصر من أجمل بلدان الدنيا. (Egypt is one of the most beautiful countries in the world.)

\* ستكون سيناء مركزاً سياحياً هاماً في المستقبل. (Sinai will be an important tourist attraction (centre) in the future.)

16. لا يوجد في اللغة الإنجليزية مفعول مطلق: (ف عند الترجمة نختر الفعل والاسم في فعل فقط ثم نحول الصفة إلي ظرف)

\* تسعى مصر سعياً جاداً لنشر السلام في الشرق الأوسط. (Egypt seeks hard to spread peace in the Middle East.)

17. فعل الشيء (القيام بالشيء) يترجم إلي (make / do / have / go / take) حسب الشيء الذي نقوم به:

\* (make) يستخدم مع صناعة الأشياء والمنتجات. \* (do) يستخدم مع القيام بالأنشطة.

\* يُستخدم (have) مع الأجازات والجلسات والمناقشات. \* (go + V.ing) فيستخدم في القيام بالأنشطة.

\* نستخدم (take) مع الخطوات (steps) والإجراءات والتدابير (measures) \* نستخدم (pay a visit) بمعني يزور.

\* قام العلماء بالعديد من التجارب علي مرض السرطان. (Scientists did several experiments on cancer.)

\* قام علي بوضع خطة للذاكرة ونجح في تنفيذها. Ali made a plan for study and succeeded in carrying it out.

18. المفعول لأجله يمكن ترجمته إلي (مصدر + to) أو (V.ing) أو (جملة + because):

\* يذهب الطلاب إلي المدرسة طلباً للعلم والتعلم. Students go to school to seek science and learning.

\* أأدرب يومياً أملاً في الوصول إلي لياقة بدنية جيدة. I do exercise every day because I hope to get good fitness.



19. ترجمة المضاف والمضاف إليه: \* عليك بتقسيمه إلي (اسم مالك / اسم مملوك). \* ثم تترجم كالآتي:

اسم مالك + of + اسم مملوك / the اسم مملوك + اسم مالك

\* رفع مستوي المعيشة من أهم أهداف الحكومة.

\* Raising the standard of living is one of the most important goals of the government.

\* Raising living standard is one of the most important government goals.

20. هناك أفعال في اللغة العربية تحتوي علي حرف جر لكنها لا تأخذ حرف جر في الإنجليزية:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	eliminate	يقضي علي
admit	يعترف بـ	reach	يصل إلي

\* ذهبت إلي الأوبرا واستمتعت بالاستماع إلي الموسيقي. \* I went to the opera and enjoyed listening to music.

21. لاحظ أن طبيعة حرف الجر في الإنجليزية تختلف عنها في العربية:

interested in	مُهتم بـ	complain of	يشكو من
encourage ... to	يُشجع .... علي	prefer .... to ....	يُفضل .... علي ....

\* فاز أخي بجائزة في كتابة الشعر. \* My brother won a prize for writing poetry.

22. ترجمة حرف (اللام):

\* (لـ + عاقل / غير عاقل) بمعنى (لأجل) تترجم إلي (for). \* لام (الملكية) تُترجم إلي الفعل (have / has).

\* (اللام الغرضية) أو (لام التعليل) تترجم إلي (مصدر + so as to / in order to / to) أو (جملة + so that) أو (for + V.ing).

\* تحاول الدولة توفير فرص عمل للشباب. \* The state tries to provide work chances for youth.

\* للتكنولوجيا الحديثة أثر كبير علي حياتنا. \* Modern technology has a big effect on our life.

23. عندما يأتي فعل ملحقاً بمفعول لابد من الفصل بينهما بضمير وصل مثل (who / which / that) عند الترجمة إلي الإنجليزية:

\* نتطلع إلي نهضة اقتصادية تتمثل في مؤسسات اقتصادية كبيرة.

\* We look forward to an economic renaissance which is represented in big economic institutions.

24. ترجمة حرف (الفاء):

\* عند ترجمة (الفاء) إلي الإنجليزية، ضع في الاعتبار أنها قد تعني (لذلك، لأن، لكن، بعد ذلك .... الخ) حسب السياق

بعد ذلك then / لكن (however) but / لأن (since - as) because / لذلك (therefore) so

\* لسنا ضد الفكرة، فنحن من مؤيديها. \* We aren't against the idea, but we support it.

\* ساند الحق دوماً، فهو ينتصر في النهاية. \* Always support the right, as it will win victory in the end.

\* الماء أصل الحياة، فلا تسئ استخدامه. \* Water is the origin (source) of life, so you shouldn't misuse it.

25. ترجمة الكلمات المكررة: \* الكلمات المكررة غالباً لا تترجم.

\* أثارنا مصدر من مصادر الدخل القومي. \* Our monuments are a source of our national income.

26. ترجمة ضمير الملكية (whose):

\* نعرفه من ضمير الملكية المتمثل في حرف الهاء ويتم ترجمته كما يلي: (المملوك + whose + المالك):

\* أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة أخبارها متاحة.

\* The world has become a small village whose news is available.

27. ترجمة كلمة (هناك):

There is (are)	هناك	There must be	يجب أن يكون هناك
There was (were)	كان هناك	There should be	ينبغي أن يكون هناك
There will be	سيكون هناك	There may be	قد يكون هناك
There used to be	اعتدنا أن يكون هناك	There might be	من الممكن أن يكون هناك

\* اعتدنا أن يكون هناك فندق في هذا المكان لكنه لم يعد موجوداً الآن.

\* There used to be a hotel in this place but it is no longer there now.

\* سيكون هناك الكثير من التطورات في مجال جراحة القلب في المستقبل.

\* There will be a lot of developments in the field of heart surgery in the future.

\* يجب أن يكون هناك قوانين صارمة تحد من الاعتداء على حرية الآخرين.

\* There must be strict laws to prevent abusing others' freedom.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

### كلمات هامة للترجمة

peace	سلام	war	حرب
current events	أحداث جارية	terrorism	الإرهاب
struggle	يكافح - كفاح	developed countries	الدول المتقدمة
freedom (liberty)	الحرية	developing countries	الدول النامية
democracy	الديمقراطية	security	أمن
the armed forces	القوات المسلحة	sacrifice	يضحي - تضحية
double edged weapon	سلاح ذو حدين	atomic power	الطاقة الذرية
justice	عدالة	nuclear power	الطاقة النووية
decade	عقد (عشر سنوات)	aggression	عدوان
the state	الدولة (الحكومة)	election	انتخاب
slogan (motto)	شعار	prevail	يعم - يسود
immigration	الهجرة	affairs	شئون
crisis (crises)	أزمة (أزمات)	legend / myth	أسطورة
equality	المساواة	factors	عوامل
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	banned	مُحرم (محظور)
effort	مجهود	comprehensive / overall	شامل
public opinion	الرأي العام	aspire / seek to / long for	يسعى إلى
unite	يتحد	disputes	مُنازعات
evidences	أدلة	disaster	كارثة
lead to	يقود إلى / يؤدي إلى	resort to	يلجأ إلى
respond to	يستجيب لـ	victory	انتصار
civilized	متحضر	results / consequences	نتائج
civilization	الحضارة	adjustments	تعديلات
benefits	فوائد / منافع	constitution	الدستور
revolution	ثورة	honor	يتشرف - شرف
contribute to	يساهم في	vital	حيوي
progress	التقدم	hard currency	العملة الصعبة
renaissance	النهضة	marketing	التسويق
development	التنمية	consumption	استهلاك
management	الإدارة	national income	الدخل القومي
glory	المجد	flourish	يزدهر - ازدهار
annual	سنوي	facilities	تسهيلات
finance (fund)	يمول	reclamation	استصلاح
financial	مالى (مادى)	require	يتطلب
capital	رأس المال	rationalization	ترشيد
self-sufficiency	اكتفاء ذاتي	birth control	تحديد النسل
profits	أرباح	family planning	تنظيم الأسرة
loss	خسارة	cut out	يحد من
loans	قروض	distribute	يوزع



exploit	يستغل	birth rate	معدل المواليد
deepen	يعمق	famine / starvation	مجاعة
gift	هبة	saving	الادخار
backbone	العمود الفقري	blessing	نعمه
impose taxes	يفرض الضرائب	welfare	رفاهية
irrigation	الري	double	يتضاعف
debts	ديون	reconstruction	التعمير
housing	الإسكان	insurance	التأمين
aspects	نواحي	budget	ميزانية
standard / level	مستوى	prosperity	رخاء
growth	النمو	sanitation	الصحة العامة
in a great need of	في أمس الحاجة إلى	hygiene	النظافة الشخصية
fields	مجالات	wonders / marvels	عجائب
privatization	الخصخصة	purify	ينقى
manners	أخلاق	supplies	إمدادات
health awareness	وعى صحي	wisdom	حكمة
addiction	الإدمان	costs of living	تكاليف المعيشة
national team	الفريق القومي	deviation	انحراف
convenient	ملائم	infection	العدوى
conflict	صراع	infectious	مُعدي
precautions	احتياطات	drugs	مخدرات
monuments	آثار	explosion	انفجار
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	explode	ينفجر
main / essential / basic	رئيسي	sporting spirit	روح رياضية
individuals	الأفراد	supporters	مشجعون
heritage	التراث	feast	عيد
standard of living	مستوى المعيشة	carelessness	إهمال
wastefulness	الإسراف	relaxation	استرخاء
cadres	كوادر	traveling abroad	السفر للخارج
backward	متخلف	book fair	معرض الكتاب
alarming	مزعج / مخيف	revenge	ينتقم / انتقام
pollution / contamination	تلوث	humanity	البشرية
dilemma	مأزق	treasures	كنوز
necessities	ضروريات	hatred	الكراهية
ideological	فكري	greatness	عظمة
reap	يجنى - يحصد	practices	ممارسات
vast	واسع - شاسع	uproot	يستأصل
disastrous	كارثي	thug	بلطجي
geniuses	عابرة	matchless	لا يضاهي / لا نظير له



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

numerous	عديد	side with	ينحاز لـ
human needs	الحاجات الإنسانية	sweat	العرق (الجهد)
charming	ساحر	bombings	تفجيرات
desert invasion	غزو الصحراء	feelings	مشاعر
shoulder	يتكاتف	work opportunities	فرص عمل
smuggle	يهرب (بضائع)	carry out	يُنفذ
profiteer	يستغل / استغلالي	selfishness	أنانية
ash	رماد	promising	واعد
mist	الضباب	humour	الفكاهة
aspirations	تطلعات	pioneering	ريادى
domination	السيطرة / الهيمنة	martyr	شهيد

### تعابير هامة للترجمة

have great effect upon (on)	له تأثير كبير علي
a means to an end	وسيلة لغاية
go side by side with	يسير جنباً إلى جنب مع
it is time	حان الوقت أن
spare no effort	لا يدخر جهداً (وسعاً)
put an end to .....	يضع نهاية لـ
in the absence of	في غياب
on the grounds of	علي أساس
by all means	بكل الوسائل - بشتى السبل
part and parcel	جزأ لا يتجزأ
with the aim of	بهدف - بغرض
sooner or later	أجلاً أم عاجلاً
go to great lengths to .....	يقطع شوطاً كبيراً نحو ....
pay attention to	ينتبه إلي (يهتم بـ)
on the occasion of	بمناسبة .....
from cradle to grave	من المهد إلي اللحد
do my best	أبذل قصاري جهدي
make great efforts	يبذل جهود عظيمة
for the sake of	لأجل - لصالح
put into consideration / bear in mind	يضع في الاعتبار
at the expense of	علي حساب
stand as an obstacle	يقف كعقبة
make great contributions to	يقدم إسهامات كبيرة في
which in turn means	وهذا بدوره يعني
on a large scale / on a small scale	علي نطاق واسع / على نطاق ضيق
give priority to	يعطي الأولوية لـ
witness a great shift	يشهد نقلة كبيرة
at an incredible rate	بمعدل لا يمكن تصديقه
at a great speed	بسرعة مذهلة
make good use of	يستغل استغلالاً جيداً
devote time and effort	يكرس الوقت والجهد
in all possible means / on any account	بكل السبل الممكنة / بأى حال من الأحوال



## تمارين ترجمة من الإنجليزية الى العربية

1. Choosing the right job is important for you because you need to enjoy your work to do it properly.
2. Children must be armed with good qualities to become good citizens who have a sense of belonging.
3. Some people do illegal actions and harm others in order to achieve their ambitions and this is unfair.
4. Globalization is thought to serve progressive countries more than developing ones.
5. Artificial intelligence is the science of having machines do activities which need human intelligence.
6. Healthy food should include vitamins and proteins. It has to be fresh and low in fat and salt . It should contain no harmful chemical additives.
7. Keeping pace with developed countries is an aim that Egypt is seeking hard to achieve.
8. Loans are given to young people so that they can start their own projects to solve unemployment.
9. Pushing terrorism out of Sinai and reconstructing it is a priority for the government.
10. Optimism leads to success while pessimism ends up with failure so you shouldn't ever lose hope.
11. National unity between Muslims and Christians in Egypt is a remarkable thing that makes life peaceful and stable.
12. The critical situation in Egypt requires that all citizens prefer public interests to private ones.
13. The internet gives people access to various sources of information, news and studies.
14. Holidays are forms of escapism that help people to relax and renew their energies.
15. Egyptian schools should be provided with all modern appliances and facilities so that the new educational system succeeds and reaps its fruits.
16. Smoking is a fatal habit that ends the lives of thousands of people so doctors warn people against it.
17. Desert reclamation is one of the means to provide housing and employment for graduates.
18. Teachers are role-models and sources of inspiration and encouragement for their students.
19. The Egyptian Knowledge bank will be one of the most important information resources in the world.
20. What most teachers fail to teach inside their classrooms can easily be taught in the playgrounds.
21. Parents must get their children to exploit their leisure time in a useful way not in doing trivial things.
22. Egypt's strong cultural history is the shield which protects it from any foreign cultural invasion.
23. Every nation has its own distinctive culture, customs, traditions and style of music.
24. Curbing terrorism is a joint responsibility between the government and the individuals.
25. Nobody can deny that transplantation of body organs has developed greatly through the recent years.
26. Youth are suffering from a modern trend which is being addicted to their mobile phones all the time.
27. The more unemployed people we have in society, the more crimes we will be obliged to face.
28. If we destroy the environment, our children won't be able to enjoy it. Our heritage is very valuable.
29. The job candidates have to be fluent in English and skilled at using computers and the internet.
30. It's necessary to stimulate Arab and foreign businessmen to invest their money inside Egypt.
31. Earthquakes, volcanoes and floods are natural phenomenon but they are all hazardous.
32. Conserving water is a necessity because in the future most of world wars will be over water.
33. A true friend is someone who is trustworthy, faithful, helpful and secretive.
34. Industrialization is one of the main causes of the spread of contamination everywhere.
35. Thanks to mass media and social media, we are now acquainted with all the important events that take place everywhere throughout the world.
36. Subversion of public properties doesn't solve problems but makes them worse.
37. Those with special needs must receive good treatment so that they become involved more in society.
38. Besides the admirable and fascinating monuments, Egypt has a splendid weather in winter.
39. Eating junk food is harmful to health so experts everywhere recommend eating organic products.
40. Road accidents are common in big cities. This doesn't mean that pedestrians and drivers are released from blame.



تمارين ترجمة من العربية الى الإنجليزية

1. في كثير من الأحيان تتسبب مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى في المجتمع.
2. تهدف المشروعات القومية التي يتم تنفيذها حاليا في مصر الى دفع عجلة الإنتاج وتقليل حجم الاستيراد من الخارج.
3. تقديم العون للآخرين ومشاركتهم افراحهم وأحزانهم من أسمى السمات التي يجب أن يتحلى بها كل فرد في مجتمعنا.
4. يمارس الشباب الرياضات والألعاب المختلفة لأنها تساعد في بناء الجسم والشخصية والحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية.
5. الأشجار هامة جدا في حياتنا فهي تمنحنا الظل وتقينا من المطر وتساعد على تنقية الهواء الذى نتنفسه.
6. لا يستطيع المال أن يشتري الكثير من الأشياء المعنوية كالسعادة والحب وراحة البال والهدوء والسلام النفسى.
7. تستطيع الشعوب المتحضرة أن تصل بسلوكياتها وأخلاقها الى تحقيق الرقى والنهضة والرخاء والتقدم في كل المجالات.
8. تساعد ممارسة الرياضة في تقوية القيم الضرورية للمجتمع كالتعاون والأمانة والتنافس الشريف والعمل الجماعى.
9. أكبر مشكلة تواجه الذين يقومون بالعمل المستقل هو أنهم لا يحصلون علي عمل بشكل منظم.
10. على الشباب أن يستمعوا الى نصائح كبار السن الذين يملكون الكثير من الخبرات في الحياة.
11. الإرهاب لا دين له فهو يقتل أي من البشر ويحرق ويدمر المجتمعات دون تمييز لذا ينبغي محاربته في كل مكان.
12. تلعب وسائل الاعلام دور كبير في تشكيل الرأي العام لذا ينبغي أن تقدم برامج هادفة ومفيدة تنمى روح المواطنة.
13. سوف تسهم المشروعات القومية العملاقة كقناة السويس والعاصمة الإدارية الجديدة في جعل مستقبل المصريين أفضل.
14. ينبغي على الدولة أن تنفق المزيد من المال على تطوير التعليم وتطبيق أحدث النظريات التعليمية لمسايرة التقدم في العالم.
15. يعتمد النجاح في الحياة أساسا على الصبر والعمل الجاد والثقة بالنفس والسعى الدائم وراء تحقيق الأهداف.
16. يحتاج الخريجين الى تطوير مهاراتهم طوال الوقت من خلال الدراسة والتدريب لكي يظلوا مؤهلين للتوظيف.
17. أخی أحد المتحمسين للعبة التنس فهو اما يمارسها أو يشاهدها علي التلفاز طوال الوقت.
18. الهجرة غير الشرعية أمر في غاية الخطورة يؤدي الى هلاك الشباب ويدمر أحلامهم وآمال أسرهم فيهم.
19. من المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد المصرى تحسن كبير في المستقبل كما سترتفع قيمة الجنيه المصرى أمام باقى العملات.
20. تحدث الفيضانات في أماكن مختلفة من العالم لأسباب متنوعة وتجبر الآلاف من الناس على ترك منازلهم.
21. ينبغي أن تصدر الدولة قوانين رادعة تحد من الإرهاب والتطرف والتعدى على حريات الآخرين.
22. تعاني العديد من دول العالم من مشكلة اللاجئين الذين تجبرهم ظروف الحرب والصراع الداخلى الى ترك أوطانهم.
23. الحياة خليط من الأمل واليأس والنجاح والفشل والصواب والخطأ والسعادة والحزن لذا ينبغي التعايش مع كل ذلك.
24. يساعد الحوار بين الثقافات في توحيد وجهات النظر ومنع صدام الحضارات وبالتالي وقف الحروب وسريل الدماء.
25. لمواجهة مشكلة ارتفاع أسعار السلع وجشع التجار تقوم الحكومة بشن حملات لضبط المخالفين.
26. العمل التطوعى الخيرى يساعد في خلق نوع من التضامن والتكافل بين جميع فئات المجتمع ويؤدى الى تماسكه.
27. كل عام يتوافد المئات من الشباب من مختلف الجنسيات الى مصر للمشاركة في فعاليات مؤتمر الشباب العالمى.
28. إعادة بناء المواطن المصرى القادر على مواجهة التحديات هي أحد الأولويات التي تشغل الدولة حاليا.
29. ينبغي أن نزيد من حجم الانفاق على البحث العلمى لكى نساعد في تحويل أفكار وطاقت المبدعين الى حقائق ومشاريع.
30. يستطيع المبدعين تقديم أفكار جديدة تساعد على التوصل لمزيد من الابتكارات والاختراعات والاكتشافات.
31. التغير المناخى المحتمل وزيادة درجة حرارة الأرض مخاطر كارثية تتطلب حلول عاجلة على المستوى الدولى.
32. حرية الرأي مكفولة للجميع بشرط أن يحترموا حقوق الآخرين وأن يقوموا بواجباتهم تجاه الوطن.
33. تمتلك مصر مزيج من الأعمال الهندسية المبهرة القديمة والحديثة والتي تجعلها متميزة وفريدة.
34. ينبغي أن تربط الجامعات عدد الخريجين بمتطلبات سوق العمل حتى لا يزداد عدد العاطلين كل عام.
35. من واجبنا أن لا نفسد مياه النيل أو نلوث البيئة كي نحافظ على الموارد للأجيال القادمة.
36. كان الموقف معقد جدا لدرجة أننا طلبنا العون من أصدقائنا كي يساعدوننا في إيجاد مخرج للأزمة.
37. بوجود التعلم عن بعد وإتاحته عبر الانترنت يستطيع الانسان أن يواصل تعليمه مدى الحياة.
38. اهدار الوقت في أنشطة غير مفيدة لا يمكن أن يساعد شباب مصر على صنع التنمية الذاتية أو النهضة القومية.
39. ينبغي أن يتعامل الناس مع التكنولوجيا بحرص شديد لأنها سلاح ذو حدين.
40. إن استثمار الطاقة البشرية و تنميتها هي بوابة أي تقدم لأن البشر هم الذين يصنعون الحضارة.



## الجزء الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

عزيزى طالب الأزهر الشريف بقسميه (العلمي والأدبي): تتشابه مواصفات امتحانك بنسبة كبيرة جداً مع مواصفات امتحان الثانوية العامة ... لذا ينبغي أن تقوم بمراجعة الأجزاء الستة السابقة (سؤال الاختيارى للكلمات والقواعد – سؤال القطعة – سؤال القصة لطلاب القسم العلمي فقط – سؤال المحادثة – سؤال البراجراف والايمل – سؤال الترجمة) بعد مراجعة تلك الأجزاء الوافية ....

## نقدم لك في هذا الجزء:

1. مراجعة سريعة للمختارات الإسلامية (Islamic Selections) الخاصة بالقسم الأدبي فقط.
  2. اختبارين هامين للأزهر الشريف حسب مواصفات الأزهر هذا العام ... (اختبار للقسم العلمي / اختبار للقسم الأدبي).
- لا تنسى أن:** جميع شروح وتمارين وامتحانات هذه الملزمة تخصك وتهمك فلا بد من مراجعتها جميعاً وحل تمارينها ثم التركيز في مواصفة امتحانك التي سنعرضها داخل الامتحانات في نهاية هذا الجزء.

## أهم الأسئلة المقالية لمنهج المختارات الإسلامية

1. What was Islam's success fundamentally based on?  
The Will, Power, Support and Guidance of Allah.  
ما الذي اعتمد عليه نجاح الإسلام في الأساس؟  
إرادة وقوة وتأييد وهداية الله.
2. What did many Arabs in Arabia worship before Islam?  
Idols.  
ماذا كان يعبد الكثير من العرب في شبه الجزيرة العربية قبل الإسلام؟  
الأصنام.
3. Why was Omar's adoption of Islam a surprise?  
Omar hosted enmity, hatred and spleen for Muslims.  
لماذا كان اعتناق عمر للإسلام مفاجأة؟  
كان عمر يحمل العداوة والكراهية والحقد للمسلمين.
4. What wrong impression did the unbelievers have of Prophet Muhammad?  
Muhammad had caused severe harm to the Tribe of Quraysh.  
ما الانطباع الخاطي للكفار عن النبي محمد؟  
النبي محمد تسبب في أذى شديد لقبيلة قريش.
5. What did Omar Ibnul-Khattab do out of his hatred to the Prophet?  
He took his sword and went to seek the Prophet to kill him.  
ماذا فعل عمر بن الخطاب كنتيجة لكرهه للنبي؟  
أخذ سيفه وذهب يبحث عن النبي ليقتله.
6. Why couldn't Omar Ibnul-Khattab kill Muhammad?  
Because Prophet Muhammad was immunized by Allah.  
لماذا لم يستطيع عمر بن الخطاب قتل محمد؟  
لأن النبي محمد كان محصناً من الله.
7. How did Omar feel on hearing of his sister's adoption of Islam?  
He was outraged.  
ماذا كان شعور عمر بمجرد سماعه اعتناق أخته للإسلام؟  
كان غاضباً بشدة.
8. What did the guest do when he heard Omar's voice? Why?  
The guest hid himself because he was afraid of Omar's rage.  
ماذا فعل الضيف بمجرد سماعه صوت عمر؟ لماذا؟  
اختبأ الضيف لأنه كان خائفاً من غضب عمر.
9. What did Omar do when Fatima tried to stop him from beating her husband?  
Omar's blows struck at Fatima's face so her cheeks bled.  
ماذا فعل عمر عندما حاولت فاطمة منعه من ضرب زوجها؟  
نزلت ضربات عمر علي وجه فاطمة فنزفت خدودها.
10. What made Fatima fearlessly admit her adoption of Islam?  
She had firm Belief, courage, self-confidence.  
ما الذي جعل فاطمة تعترف بشجاعة باعتمادها للإسلام؟  
كان لديها إيمان قوي وشجاعة وثقة بالنفس.
11. What was Fatima's reaction when Omar wanted to take the sheet?  
She refused to give him the sheet until he washed and purified.  
ماذا كان رد فعل فاطمة عندما أراد عمر أن يأخذ الصحيفة؟  
رفضت أن تعطيه الصحيفة حتي يغتسل ويتطهر.
12. What happened when Omar read the sheet Fatima was reading?  
He changed from disbelief to Belief and from aberrance to Guidance.  
ماذا حدث عندما قرأ عمر الصحيفة التي كانت تقرأها فاطمة؟  
تحول من الكفر إلي الإيمان ومن الضلال إلي الهداية.
13. What did Omar do after he heard the Prophet hoped he would adopt Islam?  
He went to "House of Al-Arqam" to declare adopting Islam.  
ماذا فعل عمر بعد أن سمع أن النبي كان يتمني اعتناقه للإسلام؟  
توجه إلي (دار الأرقم) لكي يعلن اعتناقه للإسلام.
14. What did Omar's adoption of Islam show?  
Allah accepted the prayer of the Prophet to support Islam with either Omar Ibnul-Khattab or Amr Ibn-Hisham.  
ماذا بين اعتناق عمر للإسلام؟  
الله قد قبل دعوة النبي بأن يُعز الإسلام بواحد من عمر بن الخطاب أو عمرو بن هشام.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

15. Who was the first person in the world to embrace the religion of Islam?  
من كان أول شخص في العالم يعتنق الإسلام؟  
السيدة خديجة بنت خويلد.  
Lady Khadeeja Bint-Khuwaylid.
16. Why did Lady Khadeeja rightly gain the honour of being "Mother of the believers"?  
لماذا استحققت السيدة خديجة الحصول علي شرف أن تكون أم المؤمنين؟  
كانت أول شخص بالعالم يؤمن به.  
She was the first person in the world to believe in him.
17. Why did Lady Khadeeja need (search for) an honest man?  
لماذا كانت السيدة خديجة تحتاج (إلى البحث عن) رجل أمين؟  
كانت تحتاج إلي رجل أمين لكي يعتني بتجارتها.  
She needed an honest man to look after her business.
18. What did Muhammad win by managing Lady Khadeeja's business honestly?  
ما الذي فاز به محمد بإدارة عمل السيدة خديجة بأمانة؟  
فاز بثقة واحترام السيدة خديجة.  
He won Lady Khadeeja's confidence, trust and respect.
19. What the rich Meccans who longed to marry Lady Khadeeja after?  
وراء ماذا كان يسعى أثرياء مكلفزواج من خديجة؟  
ثروة السيدة خديجة.  
Lady Khadeeja's wealth.
20. What did the Arabs worship before the advent of Islam?  
ماذا كان العرب يعبدون قبل مجيء الإسلام؟  
كانوا يعبدوا الأصنام.  
They worshipped idols.
21. What did Muhammad think of in the Cave of Hira?  
فيم كان محمد يفكر في غار حراء؟  
الكون وخالقه.  
The universe and its creator.
22. Why did Allah (Glory be to Him) create the Jinns and the mankind?  
لماذا خلق الله (سبحانه وتعالى) الجن والإنس؟  
لكي يعبدوه.  
To worship him.
23. How was Muhammad's heart filled up with Heavenly Light and Guidance?  
كيف امتلأ قلب محمد بالنور السماوي والهداية؟  
خلال نور وإرادة وقوة ودعم وهداية الله.  
Through The light, The Will, The Power, The Support and the Guidance of Allah.
24. What did Gabriel do when he visited Mohamed in the Cave of Hira?  
ماذا فعل جبريل عندما زار محمد في غار حراء؟  
عانقه عدة مرات.  
He embraced him several times.  
أوحى إليه أول آيات القرآن الكريم.  
He revealed to him the first verses of the Holy Quran.
25. What was Mohammed's reaction when Gabriel visited him in the Cave of Hira?  
ماذا كان رد فعل محمد عندما زاره جبريل في غار حراء؟  
امتلاً قلب محمد بالرهبة.  
Muhammad's heart was filled with awe.  
أسرع إلي البيت يرتعد.  
He hurried home trembling.
26. What did Muhammad's wife Lady Khadeeja do after he came back from the Cave?  
ماذا فعلت زوجة النبي محمد السيدة خديجة بعد عودته الغار؟  
هدأت من روعه.  
She pacified and calmed him down.
27. Who was Waraqa Ibn-Nawfal?  
من كان ورقه بن نوفل؟  
كان ابن عم السيدة خديجة وكان عالم مثقف.  
He was Lady Khadeeja's cousin and a cultured scholar.
28. What did Waraqa Ibn-Nawfal say (assure) when he listened to Muhammad?  
ماذا أكد ورقة عندما استمع إلي محمد؟  
من المؤكد أن محمد كان النبي المذكور في الكتب المقدسة القديمة.  
Muhammad must have been the prophet who was mentioned in the old scriptures.
29. Which rare sublime qualities did Lady Khadeeja have?  
ما الصفات السامية النادرة التي كانت تمتلكها السيدة خديجة؟  
Truthfulness, sincerity, good-heartedness, stability, balance and thoughtfulness.  
الصدق والإخلاص وطيبة القلب والثبات والتوازن ومراعاة مشاعر الغير.  
Objectivity, sublimity, enlightenment, illumination and brightness.  
الموضوعية والسمو والتنوير والتفتح والذكاء.  
Clarity, courage, justice, logic and nobility.  
الوضوح والشجاعة والعدل والمنطق والنبيل (الشرف).
30. How did Lady Khadeeja stand by Muhammad?  
كيف وقفت السيدة خديجة بجانب محمد؟  
كرست حياتها لخدمته ومساعدته.  
She devoted her life to his service and his help.  
شاركت همومه ومتاعبه ومعاناته وآلامه.  
She shared his cares, troubles, sufferings and pains.
31. What was the message sent to Lady Khadeeja from Allah by Gabriel?  
ما الرسالة التي أرسلها الله إلي خديجة مع جبريل؟  
سوف تمتلك قصرأ جميلاً في الجنة.  
She will have a splendid home in Paradise.
32. What was the reaction of Muhammad when Lady Khadeeja died?  
ماذا كان رد فعل محمد بعد وفاة السيدة خديجة؟  
حزن حزناً شديداً ولم ينساها أبداً.  
He grieved deeply and never forgot her.  
كان دائماً يتحدث عنها بحب واحترام.  
He always spoke of her with love and respect.



33. What title was Khalid known by?  
 He was known as the Sword of Allah.  
 ما اللقب الذي كان خالد معروفاً به؟  
 كان معروفاً بسيف الله.
34. How did Khalid Ibnul-Waleed become a powerful and brilliant warrior?  
 He spent his days riding, racing and practicing the arts of fighting and wrestling.  
 قضى أيامه في ركوب الخيل والسباق بالخيول وممارسة فنون القتال والمصارعة.
35. What was Muslim archers' fatal mistake at the Battle of Uhud?  
 They left their positions to collect the spoils.  
 ماذا كان الخطأ القاتل للرماة المسلمين في غزوة أحد؟  
 تركوا مواقعهم لكي يجمعوا الغنائم.
36. How were the Muslims defeated in the battle of Uhud?  
 Khalid attacked the Muslims from behind.  
 كيف انهزم المسلمون في غزوة أحد؟  
 هاجم خالد المسلمين من الخلف.
37. What drew the Prophet's attention to Khalid Ibnul-Waleed?  
 Khalid's courage and tact.  
 ما الذي جذب انتباه النبي لخالد بن الوليد؟  
 شجاعة خالد وبراعته.
38. What did Khalid Ibnul-Waleed see in the wonderful vision?  
 He was wandering in a desolate land.  
 ما الذي رآه خالد بن الوليد في الرؤية العجيبة؟  
 كان يتجول في أرض جدياء.
- Suddenly he left that barren desert and entered a green land full of vegetation and fruit.  
 فجأة ترك تلك الصحراء القاحلة ودخل إلى أرض خضراء مليئة بالخضرة والفاكهة.
39. What was the interpretation of Khalid Ibnul-Waleed's vision?  
 Faith would soon fill his heart and replace the darkness of disbelief.  
 ماذا كان تفسير رؤية خالد بن الوليد؟  
 سيدخل الإيمان قلبه قريباً بدلاً من ظلام الكفر.
40. What made Allah's Seal prophet and Apostle Muhammad appoint Khalid the leader of one of the four armies that conquered Mecca?  
 Khalid's military skill and tact.  
 ما الذي جعل نبي الله الخاتم ورسوله (ﷺ) يعين خالد قائداً لأحد الجيوش الأربعة التي فتحت مكة؟  
 مهارة خالد وبراعته العسكرية.
41. Which leading part did Khalid play after Prophet Muhammad's death?  
 He fought the renegades and those who claimed to be prophets such as Musyilima.  
 ما الدور الريادي الذي لعبه خالد بعد وفاة النبي؟  
 حارب المرتدين وأولئك الذين ادعوا النبوة مثل مسيلمة.
- He helped the army heading for Iraq and won several battles against the Persian army.  
 ساعد الجيش المتجه إلى العراق وفاز بمعارك عديدة ضد جيش الفرس.
42. What was the result of the battle of Yarmouk?  
 The Muslim troops achieved victory over the Roman army.  
 ماذا كانت نتيجة معركة اليرموك؟  
 حقق جيش المسلمين النصر على جيش الروم.
43. What did Khalid Ibnul-Waleed prove in the Battle of Yarmouk?  
 The most powerful weapon was the deep faith of the fighters.  
 ما الذي أثبتته خالد بن الوليد في معركة اليرموك؟  
 كان أقوى سلاح هو الإيمان العميق للمؤاتلين.
44. What did Omar send to Abu-Ubayda Ibnul-Jarrah during the Battle of Yarmouk?  
 He sent him a message to replace Khalid in the leadership of the Muslim army.  
 ما الذي أرسله عمر إلى عبيدة بن الجراح خلال معركة اليرموك؟  
 أرسل له رسالة لكي يحل محل خالد في قيادة جيش المسلمين.
45. What did Khalid do when he learnt about the Caliph's order?  
 He submitted to the Caliph's order.  
 ماذا فعل خالد عندما علم عن أمر الخليفة؟  
 أذعن لأمر الخليفة.
- He continued to serve as a soldier under Abu-Ubayda's command.  
 استمر في الخدمة كجندي تحت قيادة أبو عبيدة.
46. Which example did Khalid set during the battle of Yarmouk?  
 He set an example of obedience, self-denial and loyalty.  
 ما المثال الذي ضربه خالد خلال معركة اليرموك؟  
 ضرب مثال للطاعة وإنكار الذات والإخلاص.
47. What was the first great battle in the history of Islam?  
 The battle of Badr.  
 ماذا كانت أول غزوة عظيمة في تاريخ الإسلام؟  
 معركة بدر.
48. Why had the unbelievers hurt Muslim immigrants severely?  
 Because of their faith.  
 لماذا أذى الكفار المهاجرين المسلمين بقسوة؟  
 بسبب إيمانهم.
49. What did the Muslims do when the unbelievers hurt them severely?  
 They left their homes and properties in Mecca and immigrated to Medina.  
 ماذا فعل المسلمون عندما أذاهم الكفار بقسوة؟  
 تركوا منازلهم وممتلكاتهم في مكة وهاجروا إلى المدينة.
50. Why were Muslims forced to leave Mecca?  
 Because the unbelievers hurt them severely because of their faith.  
 لماذا أجبر المسلمون على الرحيل من مكة؟  
 لأن الكفار أذاهم بقسوة بسبب إيمانهم.
51. What do the principles of Islam and the concepts of Faith care for?  
 Right, justice and Muslims' properties.  
 ما الذي تراعيه مبادئ الإسلام ومفاهيم الإيمان؟  
 الحق والعدل وممتلكات المسلمين.



52. What did the Muslims decide to do when they heard of the richly-laden caravan?  
ماذا قرر المسلمون فعله عندما سمعوا عن القافلة المحملة؟  
They wanted to seize the riches the caravan carried.  
قرروا السيطرة علي ما تحمله القافلة.
53. What were Muslims fully aware of in the battle of Badr?  
ما الذي كان المسلمون علي وعي تام به في غزوة بدر؟  
They were aware of the principles of Islam and the concepts of Faith.  
كانوا علي وعي بمبادئ الإسلام ومفاهيم الإيمان.
54. What was Abu Sufian able to do?  
ما الذي تمكن ابو سفيان من فعله؟  
He was able to take his caravan safely to Mecca.  
استطاع أن يأخذ القافلة بأمان إلي مكة.
55. What did Abu-Jahl do after that?  
ماذا فعل أبو جهل بعد ذلك؟  
He led a large force from Mecca to the plain of Badr.  
قاد قوة كبيرة من مكة إلي سهل بدر.
56. Why did Abu-Jahl lead a large force from Mecca to the plain of Badr?  
لماذا قاد أبو جهل قوة كبيرة من مكة إلي سهل بدر؟  
To show the Muslims that they were stronger than them.  
لكي يبينوا للمسلمين أنهم أقوي منهم.
57. What did the Muslim fighters feel at the battle of Badr?  
ما الذي شعر به المحاربون المسلمون في غزوة بدر؟  
They felt that they were going to fight for faith and right.  
شعروا أنهم سيحاربون من أجل الإيمان والحق.
58. How many men did the Muslims' force consist of?  
كم كان عدد الرجال الذين تكون منهم جيش المسلمين؟  
Three hundred and thirteen men.  
ثلاثمائة وثلاث عشر رجل.
59. Who led the Muslims' force at the battle of Badr?  
من قاد جيش المسلمين في غزوة بدر؟  
Prophet Muhammad (PBUH).  
النبي محمد (ص).
60. How many men did the unbelievers' army consist of?  
كم كان عدد جيش الكفار؟  
Over one thousand men.  
ما يزيد علي ألف رجل.
61. How were the men of unbelievers' army during the battle of Badr?  
كيف كان رجال جيش الكفار خلال غزوة بدر؟  
They were well armed.  
كانوا مسلحين جيداً.
62. Who was among the leaders of unbelievers' army?  
من كان بين قادة جيش الكفار؟  
Some of the most experienced warriors of Arabia under the leadership of Abu-Jahl.  
بعض من أكثر المحاربين خبرة في الجزيرة العربية تحت قيادة أبو جهل.
63. How did the Muslims win Almighty Allah's Aid (Support) (Power)?  
كيف فاز المسلمون بمساعدة (قوة) الله؟  
Through their firm Faith and controlled discipline.  
خلال إيمانهم القوي ونظامهم المحكم.
64. What happened to many of the enemy leaders in Badr?  
ماذا حدث لمعظم قادة العدو في بدر؟  
Many of them were killed including Abu-Jahl.  
قُتل أغلبهم ومن بينهم أبو جهل.
65. What must true, pious and faithful Muslims always have?  
ما الذي يجب علي المسلمون الصادقين الأتقياء المخلصين أن يتحلو به علي الدوام؟  
Faith that Allah will help them realize their rightful aims.  
الإيمان بأن الله سيساعدهم علي تحقيق أهدافهم المشروعة.
66. Who will provide Muslims with his Help, Support, Power and Guidance?  
من الذي سيمد المسلمين بعونه وتأييده وقوته وهدايته؟  
Almighty Allah.  
الله سبحانه وتعالى.
67. How did Muslims face difficulties during the battle of Badr?  
كيف استطاع المسلمون مواجهة الصعاب في غزوة بدر؟  
With truthful adherence to pillars of Islam, cornerstones of Faith and concepts of piousness and righteousness.  
بالالتزام الصادق بلوكان الإسلام وأسس الإيمان ومفاهيم التقوي والبر.
68. What calls for right, justice, steadfastness, courage and fearlessness?  
ما الذي يدعو إلى الحق والعدل والثبات والشجاعة وعدم الخوف؟  
Pillars of Islam.  
أركان الإسلام.
69. What did the Muslims immigrants leave in Mecca?  
ماذا ترك المهاجرين المسلمين في مكة؟  
They left their homes and properties.  
تركوا منازلهم وممتلكاتهم.
70. Where does Badr lie? / Where is Badr?  
أين تقع بدر؟  
90 miles south west of Medina.  
تسعون ميلاً جنوب غرب المدينة.



## أسئلة اختيار من متعدد هامة على منهج المختارات الإسلامية

1. What did prophet Muhammad pray to Allah to do in the early days of Islam?
  - a. **To make Omar worship idols.**
  - b. **To make Omar immigrate.**
  - c. **To guide Omar to Islam.**
  - d. **To make Omar strong and firm.**
2. What bad news did the man, who met Omar Ibnul-Khattab on his way to kill Muhammad, tell Omar?
  - a. **The Prophet wanted him to be Muslim.**
  - b. **His brother in law would kill him.**
  - c. **The Prophet didn't like him.**
  - d. **His sister Fatima adopted Islam.**
3. Omar Ibnul-Khattab was face to face with the new religion of Islam when .....
  - a. **he read the verses of the Holy Quran.**
  - b. **his sister and her husband embraced it.**
  - c. **his sister asked him to wash.**
  - d. **his brother in law had a fight with him.**
4. When did Omar's sister give him the sheet she had been reading?
  - a. **When Omar beat her.**
  - b. **When the guest ran away.**
  - c. **When Omar washed and purified.**
  - d. **When Omar threatened her.**
5. Why did Omar go to "House of Al-Arqam"?
  - a. **To fight with the Prophet's companions.**
  - b. **To declare that he hated the Prophet.**
  - c. **To kill the Prophet.**
  - d. **To announce that he adopted Islam.**
6. Omar turned from a raging lion into a meek lamb when .....
  - a. **he faced his sister's courage.**
  - b. **his sister asked him to purify.**
  - c. **the Prophet sent for him.**
  - d. **he held the Holy Quran in his hand.**
7. What did Omar's adoption of Islam save him from?
  - a. **Guidance and Truthfulness.**
  - b. **Monotheism and Belief.**
  - c. **Goodness and illumination.**
  - d. **Polytheism and disbelief.**
8. Omar gained ..... by adopting Islam.
  - a. **guidance and illumination**
  - b. **wealth and power**
  - c. **love and adultery**
  - d. **disbelief and delusion**
9. How is Lady Khadeeja Bint-khuwaylid known in history?
  - a. **Mother of all women.**
  - b. **Mother of Heavens.**
  - c. **Mother of the believers.**
  - d. **Mother of atheists.**
10. Lady Khadeeja Bint-Khuwaylid had .....
  - a. **a small farm in Mecca.**
  - b. **a big palace in Iraq.**
  - c. **a field for growing cotton.**
  - d. **a large trade with Syria.**
11. How did Muhammad win Lady Khadeeja's confidence and respect?
  - a. **He was much handsome.**
  - b. **He loved her very much.**
  - c. **He managed her trade honestly.**
  - d. **He dominated her business for himself.**
12. Where did Muhammad spend much of his time?
  - a. **In the Cave of Hira.**
  - b. **In the tomb of the dead.**
  - c. **In his own farmland.**
  - d. **In his uncle's house.**
13. The right path is based on .....
  - a. **disbelief**
  - b. **atheism**
  - c. **monopoly**
  - d. **monotheism**
14. How did Muhammad spend much of his time in the Cave of Hira?
  - a. **Writing novels.**
  - b. **Hunting animals.**
  - c. **Thinking and contemplating.**
  - d. **Sleeping or eating food.**
15. What did Waraqa Ibn-Nawfal do when Lady Khadeeja accompanied Muhammad to him?
  - a. **He asked Muhammed not to visit the Cave.**
  - b. **He expected Muhammad would be a fighter.**
  - c. **He said Muhammad would be a Prophet.**
  - d. **He said he had no idea about the situation.**
16. How will Allah reward Lady Khadeeja for her efforts with Muhammad?
  - a. **She will have a great wealth**
  - b. **She will live longer than expected**
  - c. **She will have a splendid home in Paradise**
  - d. **She will have a great trade with Syria**



17. Khalid Ibnul-Walid didn't have to learn a trade like other young men because .....  
 a. **he was a lazy man.** b. **his father ordered him not to do.**  
 c. **he was disabled.** d. **his father was a wealthy man.**
18. When did Khalid Ibnul-Waleed come to be known as a prominent fighter?  
 a. **At the Battle of Uhud.** b. **At the Battle of Badr.**  
 c. **At the Battle of Yarmouk.** d. **At the Battle of Khandak.**
19. How did Khalid Ibnul-Waleed trick the Muslims at the Battle of Uhud?  
 a. **He paid them a lot of money.** b. **He was stationed behind them.**  
 c. **He ordered them to leave their positions.** d. **He made most of them blind.**
20. What did the green land in Khalid Ibnul-Waleed's vision represent?  
 a. **He would soon have a big garden.** b. **Faith would soon fill his heart.**  
 c. **He would soon inherit a lot of money.** d. **He would be a prominent fighter.**
21. What does the spread of Islam in Iraq owe a great deal to?  
 a. **The bravery of Omar Ibnul-Khattab.** b. **The wealth of Lady Khadeeja.**  
 c. **The belief of Omar's sister.** d. **The skill of Khalid Ibnul-Waleed.**
22. What was the most powerful weapon for Muslims in the battle of Yarmouk?  
 a. **The deep faith of the fighters.** b. **The great wealth of the warriors.**  
 c. **The large amounts of food.** d. **The big money they had.**
23. What was the first great victory in the history of Islam?  
 a. **The Battle of Uhud.** b. **The Battle of Yarmouk.**  
 c. **The Battle of Badr.** d. **The Battle of Mecca.**
24. What had the unbelievers forced Muslims to do?  
 a. **To marry maids.** b. **To fight the Prophet.**  
 c. **To kill Omar.** d. **To leave Mecca.**
25. The richly laden caravan going from Syria to Mecca was led by .....  
 a. **Amr Ibn Hisham** b. **Omar** c. **Khalid** d. **Abu Sufian**
26. Why did the Muslims decide to attack the caravan and to seize the riches it carried?  
 a. **To kill lore women and children.** b. **To make up for their lost properties.**  
 c. **To take revenge on the Prophet.** d. **To kill more people and have fun.**
27. How was Abu-Sufian able to take his caravan safely to Mecca?  
 a. **By asking the Muslims for forgiveness.** b. **By killing all the Muslim army.**  
 c. **Buy tempting the Muslim fighters.** d. **By following a different route.**
28. What does the Battle of Badr show?  
 a. **Money can make miracles.** b. **Faith can work wonders.**  
 c. **Wealth is better than health.** d. **Disbelief can achieve everything.**
29. What do pillars of Islam, cornerstones of Faith and concepts of piousness and righteousness call for?  
 a. **Steadfastness and fearlessness.** b. **Love and romance.**  
 c. **Dishonesty and greed.** d. **Injustice and oppression.**
30. How could the Muslim force defeat the large enemy force in Badr?  
 a. **By having a greater army than them.** b. **With Allah's aid and support.**  
 c. **By blackmailing the disbelievers.** d. **By leaving their positions.**
31. What did Omar ask his sister Fatima to do?  
 a. **To let him wash and purify.** b. **To allow him to kill her husband.**  
 c. **To go out of the house immediately.** d. **To hand him the sheet she had been reading.**
32. Lady Khadeeja preferred to marry Prophet Muhammad because .....  
 a. **he was handsome.** b. **he was wealthy.**  
 c. **he was honest.** d. **he was intelligent.**



## A

## Vocabulary and Structure

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10 Marks)**

1. It is best to ..... the dried fish in water before you cook it.  
a. sink                      b. seek                      c. soak                      d. save
2. Before there was a bus to her village, Mona and her brother ..... to school.  
a. had always walked      b. were walking      c. have always walked      d. walk
3. You can't talk to Tarek because he ..... out.  
a. used to go                      b. had gone                      c. has just gone                      d. goes
4. My father said that his teacher was very ..... My father couldn't talk in his lessons!  
a. enthusiastic                      b. strict                      c. fatherly                      d. kind
5. The mechanic ..... repairing your car by the end of the week.  
a. will finish                      b. will have finished      c. will be finishing      d. is finishing
6. London has a/an ..... of 557 mm of rain each year.  
a. average                      b. number                      c. ability                      d. water
7. Tanta is the city ..... my grandparents were born.  
a. which                      b. where                      c. who                      d. when
8. We walked a really long way to get to the shop, but it was in ..... It had already closed.  
a. veil                      b. vein                      c. vain                      d. view
9. Lina has two brothers, but they are not good at basketball because ..... tall.  
a. either is                      b. each are                      c. neither is                      d. neither are
10. This is ..... an exciting book that I don't want to stop reading it!  
a. such                      b. enough                      c. so                      d. too
11. I told my little brother to read this book because it is ..... for young children.  
a. suitable                      b. employable                      c. reliable                      d. impossible
12. Mustafa is always very ..... and likes to talk to everyone!  
a. social                      b. sociable                      c. socially                      d. sociably
13. Wait there and I'll ..... Yasser to help you with those bags.  
a. have                      b. get                      c. let                      d. make
14. The teacher asked us to discuss the pros and ..... of artificial intelligence.  
a. benefits                      b. cons                      c. advantages                      d. content
15. Khaled told me that he ..... basketball the day before.  
a. plays                      b. had played                      c. has played                      d. was played
16. Fatma is very ..... She always does her homework carefully and on time.  
a. unconscious                      b. conscientious                      c. conservative                      d. convinced
17. Hala asked Ola ..... the following Monday.  
a. what will she do                      b. what would she do      c. what she would do                      d. what she will do
18. The time that it gets dark ..... on the time of year.  
a. concentrates                      b. depends                      c. blames                      d. designs
19. Shaimaa stopped ..... children's books when she went to secondary school.  
a. reading                      b. to read                      c. read                      d. to reading
20. It's very hot today. I wish it ..... cooler.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. will be                      d. had been



## B

## Reading Comprehension

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (8 Marks)

How would you feel about travelling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometres from earth? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return? That is what is planned for people who are going on the Mars One mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200,000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they know that they will never see earth again.

The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or the thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or disease. They also knew that their new lives would be difficult, and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have been chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get the people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they can expect on Mars.

The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special *settlement* will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life: there will be very little water, they will have to grow their own food and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, for some fearless pioneers, it is a challenge they cannot refuse.

**A: Answer the following questions:**

1. How did the people who wanted to travel to Mars describe their mission?
2. Do you think that many people will live on Mars in the future? Why/Why not?
3. How many applicants applied to join the mission?
4. How would you feel if someone told you that you could never return to earth?

**B: Choose the correct answer:**

5. Why did the people decide to travel to Mars?
  - a. They want to see if they can survive there.
  - b. They want to see the dust storms.
  - c. Scientists made them go there.
  - d. They don't like earth.
6. What is the main idea of the text?
  - a. One day, we will all live on Mars.
  - b. Life on Mars will be very difficult.
  - c. The people who go to Mars will be famous.
  - d. Life on Mars will never be possible.
7. What does the word *settlement* mean?
  - a. a farm
  - b. a place where a group of people live
  - c. a factory
  - d. a rocket
8. What does the underlined it refer to?
  - a. an offer to go to Mars.
  - b. a six-month journey into space.
  - c. time spent with three other people.
  - d. an offer to send in an application.

## C

## The Novel

3

A. Choose the correct answer. (3 Marks)

1. How did Rupert Hentzau justify يبرر betraying Michael?
  - a. Michael loved Antoinette de Mauban.
  - b. Michael didn't give him good salary.
  - c. Michael always made him angry.
  - d. Michael wanted to become King.
2. Rassendyll asked the innkeeper's daughter to .....
  - a. work as a spy for him.
  - b. bring Johann to Tarlenheim.
  - c. open the gate of the city.
  - d. give a letter to Antoinette de Mauban.



3. Rose blamed Rassendyll because .....
- he refused to marry.
  - he didn't take opportunities.
  - he lived at his brother's house.
  - he didn't do any useful work.

**B. Answer the following questions: (4 Marks)**

- What made Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere?
- Why was Sapt worried about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
- Why did the poor people support the Duke?
- What plan did Rupert Hentzau suggest to help Rassendyll remain King?

**D Writing**

**4 Finish the following dialogue. (4 Marks)**

*Mariam and Rawia are discussing musical instruments.*

**Mariam:** Which musical instrument should we learn?

**Rawia :** ..... (1)?

**Mariam:** I'm not sure about that. Drums are too noisy. I like the piano. .... (2).

**Rawia :** ..... (3). I'd like to play the piano.

**Mariam:** Do you think we should have piano lessons every day?

**Rawia :** ..... (4).

I think one lesson a week is probably enough.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (5 Marks)**

- Reading literature improves your education.
- The advantages and disadvantages of artificial intelligence.

**6 A. Translate into Arabic. (4 Marks)**

- We should honour great writers and thinkers, especially those who have published distinguished works.
- People who are interested in space holidays are worried about the horrible side effects.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English. (2 Marks)**

- التكنولوجيا الحديثة سلاح ذو حدين لذا يجب أن تُستعمل بحرص.
- يستطيع رواد الفضاء ممارسة رياضة انعدام الوزن أثناء مهمتهم في الكواكب.

امتحان ثانوية أزهرية (للقسم الأدبي)

**A Vocabulary and Structure**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (25 Marks)**

- The red team ..... the blue team 2-0.
  - won
  - lost
  - defeated
  - beaten
- My mother warned me ..... the plate because it was very hot.
  - don't touch
  - not touch
  - not touching
  - not to touch
- I regret ..... that we can't go to the science museum next week. There are no more tickets.
  - saying
  - said
  - to say
  - have said
- I feel ill. I wish I ..... so many sweets.
  - didn't eat
  - don't eat
  - hadn't eaten
  - won't eat



5. We ..... hurry. It only takes ten minutes to the station and we have an hour before the train goes.  
a. **mustn't**                      b. **needn't**                      c. **ought not to**                      d. **shouldn't**
6. If I went to Australia, I ..... my cousins.  
a. **will see**                      b. **saw**                      c. **would see**                      d. **had seen**
7. Mother says we can watch TV on ..... that we do our homework first.  
a. **condition**                      b. **provided**                      c. **long as**                      d. **if**
8. The beach has been ..... since they opened the hotel there. It used to be quiet but now it is always busy.  
a. **transformed**                      b. **transferred**                      c. **translated**                      d. **transplanted**
9. Maysa asked Mona and me to the park this afternoon, but ..... of us can go. We are shopping.  
a. **both**                      b. **either**                      c. **neither**                      d. **all**
10. The sign by the lake says that the water is ..... to drink.  
a. **too dirty**                      b. **dirty enough**                      c. **so dirty**                      d. **such dirty**
11. The statue was ..... in the park where many people could see it.  
a. **taken**                      b. **transported**                      c. **positioned**                      d. **pointed**
12. Many ..... travel to work in Cairo on the metro.  
a. **communities**                      b. **communications**                      c. **companies**                      d. **commuters**
13. Ali is not on this train. He ..... caught a later train. We can wait for him.  
a. **might have**                      b. **can have**                      c. **needn't have**                      d. **ought to**
14. The metro line goes through a ..... under the river.  
a. **way**                      b. **road**                      c. **bridge**                      d. **tunnel**
15. It was hard to climb the mountain, but it was ..... The views from the top were amazing!  
a. **worthwhile**                      b. **worth**                      c. **while**                      d. **worthless**
16. It's Kholoud's first day studying science at university, so she needs to find the science .....  
a. **development**                      b. **department**                      c. **employment**                      d. **enjoyment**
17. I didn't understand the homework so I ..... my friend to help me.  
a. **had**                      b. **got**                      c. **was having**                      d. **was had**
18. I can't talk to you now because I am ..... to go out.  
a. **about**                      b. **off**                      c. **over**                      d. **away**
19. The police said that the windows ..... before the thieves went into the building.  
a. **broke**                      b. **had broken**                      c. **have being broken**                      d. **had been broken**
20. Yunis was ill last year and had to take a lot of time ..... work.  
a. **from**                      b. **in**                      c. **on**                      d. **off**
21. The palace is very ..... It has more than 30 rooms!  
a. **impressed**                      b. **impressive**                      c. **improved**                      d. **industrial**
22. Our school is ..... kilometre from my house.  
a. **half of**                      b. **half a**                      c. **half of a**                      d. **half**
23. Omar, ..... mother is a scientist, always does well in the science tests.  
a. **whose**                      b. **who**                      c. **who's**                      d. **for whom**
24. The head teacher believes that ..... is very important in the classroom.  
a. **discipline**                      b. **indifference**                      c. **violence**                      d. **noise**
25. It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It ..... very hot today.  
a. **was**                      b. **is going to be**                      c. **is being**                      d. **will be being**



## B

## Reading Comprehension

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

The Chinese invented paper, and they were also the first to use paper bank notes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

People in Europe only started to use paper bank notes in the seventeenth century. In England, the King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the bearer the sum of ... " and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to hand write notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed.

The paper used for bank notes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most bank notes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes in 1983. However, the first plastic notes in England were not very successful because the ink came off the notes onto people's hands! Five years later, in 1988, Australia successfully used plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

**A: Answer the following questions:**

1. When and where were paper bank notes first used?
2. Why was there a hole in the metal coins invented by the Chinese?
3. Do you think people will continue to use paper bank notes in the future or will there be a different way of exchanging money? **Explain.**
4. Do you think that more countries will use plastic notes in the future? Why/Why not?
5. Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins?

**B: Choose the correct answer:**

6. Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them?
  - a. **The King needed money to fight a war.**
  - b. **People preferred notes to coins.**
  - c. **People wanted their money to be safe.**
  - d. **Banks opened for the first time**
7. Why were notes handwritten until 1853?
  - a. **It was cheaper this way.**
  - b. **It was faster this way.**
  - c. **There was not any technology to print them before this time.**
  - d. **It was hard to copy the handwriting.**
8. What is the main idea of the text?
  - a. **Why we use money.**
  - b. **Why we use banks.**
  - c. **The history of paper bank notes.**
  - d. **The history of trade.**
9. What does the underlined word them refer to?
  - a. **the King's men**
  - b. **the men in France.**
  - c. **the people who had the money**
  - d. **the banks.**
10. What does the word bearer mean?
  - a. **someone who works in a bank**
  - b. **a Chinese trader**
  - c. **someone who carries something**
  - d. **someone who works for the King**



## C Islamic Selections

## 3 A. Choose the correct answer. (5 Marks)

- What was Khalid Ibnul-Walid called?
  - The Sword of Islam.
  - The Sword of Allah.
  - The Guard of Islam.
  - The Young Master.
- What did Omar Ibnul-Khattab do out of his hatred to the Prophet?
  - He sought to kill Fatima.
  - He sought to kill the Prophet.
  - He adopted Islam.
  - He killed Amr Ibn Hisham.
- What did Fatima do out of her courage?
  - She admitted hating her brother.
  - She admitted marrying a Muslim.
  - She admitted embracing Islam.
  - She admitted worshipping idols.
- What was the first great battle in the history of Islam?
  - The battle of Uhud.
  - The battle of Yarmouk.
  - The battle of Qadisiya.
  - The battle of Badr.
- What did the green land in Khalid Ibnul-Waleed's vision represent?
  - Khalid would marry a good woman.
  - Khalid would own a big palace.
  - Khalid would grow more plants.
  - Khalid would be filled with faith soon.

## B. Answer the following questions: (5 Marks)

- Omar Ibnul-Khattab was a great Muslim. Why?
- How did Khalid Ibnul-Waleed trick (deceive) the Muslims at the Battle of Uhud?
- What were Muslims fully aware of in the battle of Badr?
- Why were Muslims forced to leave Mecca?
- Why is Lady Khadeeja always given the highest esteem (position) (rank)?

## D Writing

## 4 Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks)

Hazem and Imad are talking about revising.

Hazem : I've heard that you always revise at night. .... (1)?

Imad : Yes, that's right.

Hazem : ..... (2)?

Imad : One advantage is that it is much quieter at night.

Hazem : Yes, you're quiet right. It is quieter then. .... (3)?

Imad : A negative side is that I feel tired the next day.

Hazem : Yes, I'm sure you feel tired. It's harder to remember things at night, isn't it?

Imad : I disagree. I remember things better then.

Hazem : Well, we all have different ways to revise!

Imad : ..... (4).

## 5 Write an e-mail to a friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (5 Marks)

Your name is Reda. Your friend's name is Essmat. His/Her address is [Essmat@newmail.com](mailto:Essmat@newmail.com).

- What you think of science fiction.
- Describing a building that you like and why you like it.

## 6 A. Translate into Arabic. (4 Marks)

- Social networking websites are a double-edged weapon, so we should use them wisely.
- Egyptian women have always played a vital role in development projects.

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

- تساعد الكباري العلوية في حل مشكلة المرور في المدن الكبيرة.
- نحن نعلم الآن أن الزروع والأشجار تستمدان غذائهما من الهواء والتربة.



## General Exam (1)



## Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1. Those who ..... the law must be severely **بقسوة** punished.  
a. follow                      b. break                      c. smash                      d. crack
2. When she was younger, she ..... tennis every Friday.  
a. was playing              b. has played              c. plays                      d. played
3. She was ..... to go out when her friend arrived.  
a. round                      b. off                      c. about                      d. away
4. He asked me why ..... late the night before.  
a. I had come              b. had I come              c. I have come              d. have I come
5. No amount of money can make ..... the death of a child.  
a. up                      b. down on              c. up for                      d. out of
6. The man denied ..... any money from the little child.  
a. take                      b. to take                      c. taking                      d. had taken
7. My publisher insists ..... I send him everything I write as an email attachment.  
a. in                      b. if                      c. on                      d. that
8. We ..... go to school today because it is a holiday.  
a. needn't                      b. mustn't                      c. don't have                      d. shouldn't
9. The more people want to do something, the ..... it will become.  
a. cheap                      b. cheaper                      c. cheapest                      d. most cheap
10. The teacher asked me ..... well before the exam.  
a. to revise                      b. revise                      c. if to revise                      d. revising
11. He has been asked about his ..... to take part in the competition.  
a. avail                      b. availability                      c. available                      d. unavailable
12. He ..... the bus to work. His car is still in the garage.  
a. must have taken              b. can have taken              c. mustn't have taken              d. can't have taken
13. The bad news he brought us ..... our fun.  
a. spoilt                      b. spilt                      c. spelt                      d. split
14. She ..... that she had visited her aunt twice that week.  
a. reminded                      b. said                      c. wondered                      d. told
15. This book is a ..... one that requires careful reading.  
a. challenging                      b. chanting                      c. changing                      d. chancing
16. Someone knocked at the door while I ..... my dinner.  
a. had had                      b. was having                      c. had                      d. had been had
17. Inside a spacecraft in orbit round the Earth an ..... could float weightless.  
a. astronomer                      b. astrologer                      c. archaeologist                      d. astronaut
18. .... I in your position, I would not accept that offer.  
a. In case of                      b. Were                      c. Had                      d. Provided that
19. She wasn't worried about her wound after the doctor said it was .....  
a. impatient                      b. uninfected                      c. impolite                      d. inaccurate
20. The television ..... when my uncle came home last night.  
a. was been repaired              b. was repairing                      c. repaired                      d. was being repaired



21. His previous employer describes him as honest, hard-working and .....  
 a. **applauding**      b. **ambiguous**      c. **conscientious**      d. **controversial**
22. The boss had all the employees ..... some extra work yesterday.  
 a. **did**      b. **do**      c. **to do**      d. **had done**
23. My sister ..... form medical school last year.  
 a. **graded**      b. **allocated**      c. **graduated**      d. **guaranteed**
24. I never eat food which ..... in unlicensed restaurants.  
 a. **is serving**      b. **is served**      c. **serves**      d. **served**
25. A/An ..... is someone who believes he will not succeed.  
 a. **opportunist**      b. **defeatist**      c. **diplomat**      d. **lecturer**
26. She was ..... tired that she couldn't go out for a walk.  
 a. **too**      b. **such**      c. **so**      d. **enough**
27. You shouldn't have thrown ..... the receipt. Now you won't be able to return the shirt.  
 a. **on**      b. **into**      c. **away**      d. **down**
28. .... student in class was given a project to do last week.  
 a. **All**      b. **Half**      c. **Every**      d. **Each of**
29. Storm ..... are people who study and follow storms.  
 a. **closers**      b. **chasers**      c. **dealers**      d. **millers**
30. Do you like the people ..... on holiday?  
 a. **that you met them**      b. **whom you met them**      c. **you met them**      d. **you met**

## B

## Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

A big number of students find university life very different from school life. One of the biggest differences is that students of universities are expected to do much self study and manage their time themselves. Although staff will help, it's the responsibility of students to be in the right place at the right time. The students have to hand their homework in on time. Therefore, most of the students become more self-dependent over time. The way teaching is organised in universities is also very different from school. At university, lecturers teach classes that may last for two or three hours give or take. These classes can include more than five hundred students. There are usually other smaller classes where students can discuss the subjects they find difficult, and from time to time, lecturers spend time with individual students, talking about the work they have done or the work that they are expected to do. If students are not living at home while they are at university, there are many ordinary things that they may be obliged to do for themselves such as cooking, cleaning and making the beds.

Other differences between school and university are as follows: Students are responsible for making their own class schedules and following them conscientiously. Familiarity with library resources and effective use of libraries is essential. Student progress and attendance is not generally closely monitored by instructors. Classes may have a lab or tutorial session located in a different room or building, and may be facilitated by a teaching assistant. Course textbooks or required readings are not provided by the University; they must be purchased from a bookstore or borrowed from a library. Group projects are often required so students need to work well with others.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. How do university students get their textbooks?  
 a. **The university provides them.**      b. **The library borrows them.**  
 c. **Students purchase them.**      d. **Students steal them.**



2. When students go to university, they have to be prepared to .....  
**a. find jobs                      b. read more books      c. seek others' help              d. be more organised**
3. Which of the following is TRUE?  
**a. Schools require that students organize things by themselves.**  
**b. Schools teach students nothing related to life.**  
**c. University students are responsible more for their learning.**  
**d. School life gives more chances for self-study than university life.**
4. What do university group projects indicate?  
**a. That students work individually.                      b. That lecturers treat students well.**  
**c. That students cooperate more.                      d. That students behave well.**
5. The idiom "give or take" means .....  
**a. nearly                      b. precisely                      c. exactly                      d. perfectly**
6. The underlined word "they" refers to .....  
**a. professors                      b. lecturers                      c. students                      d. classes**
7. What two kind of classes can be in universities?
8. Which two places that the passage compare?
9. What makes it necessary to sometimes have smaller classes at university?
10. Which makes students more independent, school or university life? Why?

### The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

#### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1. Antoinette de Mauban called for help ..... (SB)  
**a. at the appointed time.                      b. two hours earlier than expected.**  
**c. half an hour later than expected.                      d. an hour before the appointed time.**
2. .... put an end to the lives of the three foreigners.  
**a. Max                      b. Rassendyll                      c. Sapt                      d. The Marshal**
3. Why did Antoinette send a letter to Flavia?  
**a. To ask her to marry Rassendyll.                      b. To ask her to visit the castle.**  
**c. To ask her to marry Michael.                      d. To warn her against Michael.**
4. Rassendyll greatly desired to avenge **ينتقم من** Rupert because .....  
**a. Rupert stabbed him.                      b. Rupert attacked Antoinette.**  
**c. Rupert was rude to him.                      d. Rupert had killed Michael.**

#### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. Do you think Michael could have killed the King? Justify your answer.
2. Why do you think Rassendyll chose Tarlenheim to stay in?
3. Why do you think Rupert entered Antoinette's room to punish her?

### C Writing

#### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

Between a shop assistant and a customer in a mobile-phone shop.

- Assistant : ..... (1)?  
 Customer: Yes, ..... (2).  
 Assistant : I regret to tell you that ..... (3).  
 Customer: No problem. .... (4)?  
 Assistant : Of course, we have a good variety of mobiles and they are all as good as Galaxy.



Customer: ..... (5)?

Assistant : Here they are, sir.

Customer: ..... (6)?

Assistant : This black one is Nokia and it is the same price as the Galaxy.

Customer: OK, I'll buy it.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)**

- The importance of practising sports.
- Globalization.

**6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

- Scientists play a vital role in modern life; they help make it easier and more comfortable for all people.
- The national projects carried out all over Egypt show that the state spares no effort to solve the problems facing the Egyptian citizen.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

- يستطيع رواد وسياح الفضاء ممارسة الرياضات عديمة الوزن في ظل حالة انعدام الجاذبية.
- استضافة مصر للبطولات الرياضية الكبرى مثل كأس الأمم الأفريقية تؤكد على عظمتها ومكانتها الهامة بين الدول.

## General Exam (2)

**A**

### Vocabulary and Structure

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

- The teacher gave the students a ten ..... break before they went on to do the next task.  
a. **minutes**      b. **minute**      c. **minute's**      d. **minutes'**
- The captain ..... down until all the passengers had left the boat.  
a. **hadn't sat**      b. **wasn't sat**      c. **won't sit**      d. **didn't sit**
- The astronauts are ..... on an important space mission next month.  
a. **making**      b. **doing**      c. **going**      d. **building**
- I won't attend the party ..... I feel better.  
a. **provided**      b. **but for**      c. **in case of**      d. **unless**
- The doctor advised him to ..... the amount of time he watches TV so as to keep his sight healthy.  
a. **merit**      b. **erect**      c. **limit**      d. **produce**
- I ..... take the bus to work because my car was not working.  
a. **have to**      b. **had to**      c. **must**      d. **must have**
- My grandfather died last year, ..... 81.  
a. **aged**      b. **age**      c. **at of age**      d. **in the age**
- I wish I ..... well for yesterday's exam.  
a. **would revise**      b. **revised**      c. **could revise**      d. **had revised**
- Have you ..... any arrangements for your wedding party yet?  
a. **done**      b. **arrange**      c. **given**      d. **made**
- Ali offered ..... me repair my broken bike.  
a. **helping**      b. **help**      c. **to help**      d. **would help**
- It ..... my heart when my best friend died in an accident last year.  
a. **stock**      b. **received**      c. **chatted**      d. **broke**



12. We will ..... at the mechanic's.  
a. **repair our car**    b. **have repaired our car**    c. **get repaired our car**    d. **get our car repaired**
13. This massive radiator gives ..... too much heat.  
a. **down**    b. **up**    c. **off**    d. **away**
14. He asked me where ..... on holiday the following year.  
a. **I would go**    b. **I will go**    c. **would I go**    d. **will I go**
15. His sports career took ..... after he won the competition.  
a. **out**    b. **up**    c. **off**    d. **in**
16. My brother ..... in the Central Bank for many years. He no longer works there.  
a. **is working**    b. **worked**    c. **has worked**    d. **has been working**
17. Temperatures in the desert can ..... 50 C.  
a. **get**    b. **reach**    c. **arrive**    d. **do**
18. The policeman instructed the drivers ..... so fast.  
a. **whether not drive**    b. **not to drive**    c. **not drive**    d. **don't drive**
19. My brother is a football ..... He always watches matches on TV.  
a. **enthusiasm**    b. **enthusiastic**    c. **enthusiastically**    d. **enthusiast**
20. These broken toys must ..... back to the shop.  
a. **be taken**    b. **have taken**    c. **take**    d. **be taking**
21. The boy is ..... that he is not to blame for breaking the window.  
a. **insistent**    b. **content**    c. **determine**    d. **influential**
22. My plane ..... at 9:30 tomorrow morning.  
a. **is leaving**    b. **leaves**    c. **will leave**    d. **is going to leave**
23. My teacher trusts me a lot and always puts me in ..... of organizing important school projects.  
a. **change**    b. **charge**    c. **responsible**    d. **response**
24. It was ..... a boring film that I didn't complete watching it.  
a. **enough**    b. **such**    c. **too**    d. **so**
25. This medicine is safe. It has no .....  
a. **effects**    b. **affects**    c. **fictions**    d. **side effects**
26. She is satisfied with her lifestyle and always says she enjoys ..... moment of it.  
a. **every**    b. **either**    c. **both**    d. **all**
27. The chapters of the book are ..... according to their importance.  
a. **ground**    b. **graded**    c. **guided**    d. **graduated**
28. While mother was making lunch, I ..... after my baby sister.  
a. **was looking**    b. **had looked**    c. **was looked**    d. **looked**
29. The shirt you want is available in ..... colours.  
a. **varies**    b. **various**    c. **variety**    d. **variation**
30. Last week, we had a meeting, ..... we found out about next year's school trip.  
a. **at which**    b. **on which**    c. **for which**    d. **by which**

**B**

**Reading Comprehension**

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)**

We all are nervous sometimes, but what if you have a constant feeling of nervousness? You cannot relax and your heart beats much faster than it usually does. This has consequences on your work, on your relationship, and even on your sleeping habits. But when are we too nervous, and how do we notice that we cannot relax?



You are nervous when you start sweating without physical exertion. Your pupils widen and your heart starts beating faster. Your muscles tense up and your breathing gets shallow. Sometimes, if you have been nervous for a long time, your heart might start to ache, or you experience an ache in your chest. It starts with a short period of stress, but after a while you feel like you simply cannot get rid of the nervous feeling. You constantly feel nervous, even while the reason for the stress might have already disappeared. This can cause you to have problems with being focused, or even cause trouble sleeping. You have a harder time falling asleep or with staying asleep.

Often, stress is the cause of nervousness. There was something going on which caused you to have high levels of stress, and you often feel like you do not really know how to solve it. Because stress often is the cause of a nervous feeling, it is useful to deal with this stress. You will notice that your nervous feeling decreases when you work on your levels of stress. You can consult a specialist who can give you tips to teach you how to handle stressful situations in the future.

**Answer the following questions:**

- As a result of nervousness, people's muscles .....  
a. **get shallow**                      b. **become wide**                      c. **tense up**                      d. **beat faster**
- How does nervousness affect the nervous person?  
a. **He can't walk.**                      b. **He can't relax.**                      c. **He can't eat.**                      d. **He can't swim.**
- What can a specialist do for a nervous person?  
a. **Help him to control stress.**                      b. **Help him to get nervous.**  
c. **Give him tips for a fit body.**                      d. **Create stressful situations for him.**
- When someone is nervous, he feels pain in his .....  
a. **sweat**                      b. **sleep**                      c. **chest**                      d. **stress**
- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?  
a. **nervousness**                      b. **ache**                      c. **heart**                      d. **chest**
- The word "constant" means .....  
a. **happening suddenly**                      b. **never happening**                      c. **happening slowly**                      d. **happening regularly**
- How does a constant feeling of nervousness affect us?
- Mention two of the symptoms of nervousness.
- What two negative effects does nervousness have on sleep?
- How can someone decrease their nervousness?

**The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)**

**3**

**A. Choose the correct answer. (4 Marks)**

- Why didn't Michael allow anyone into the Castle?  
a. **He was having a party there.**                      b. **He was keeping the King a prisoner.**  
c. **He was keeping Antoinette there.**                      d. **He was keeping the Princess there.**
- Flavia proved to be patriotic **محبة للوطن** when she .....  
a. **refused to marry Michael.**                      b. **agreed to visit Zenda.**  
c. **rewarded Rassendyll for his honesty.**                      d. **agreed to become Queen.**
- Johann ..... in the fighting. (SB)  
a. **was seriously injured**                      b. **was killed**                      c. **was not seriously hurt**                      d. **had his arm broken**
- Fritz described the situation in Ruritania as .....  
a. **the strangest ever.**                      b. **a stalemate.**                      c. **a day to remember.**                      d. **a fruitful situation.**

**B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)**

- If you were Rassendyll, would you replace the King? Why / Why not?
- Would you kill Max if you were in Rassendyll's position? Why / Why not?
- How do you think Rassendyll did well as a King?



## C Writing

### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

Two teachers are talking about the new educational system.

Tamer: What do you think of the new educational system applied in Egypt currently?

Samir : ..... (1).

Tamer: Why do you think so?

Samir : ..... (2).

Tamer: I agree with you. Depending on technology has become a necessity. What benefits will students get?

Samir : ..... (3).

Tamer: How will this fairness be guaranteed in exams?

Samir : ..... (4).

Tamer: Will the tablet system be able to correct essay questions?

Samir : No, these ..... (5).

Tamer: Oh, I understand now. Then they can compare the marks given by each teacher.

Samir : Exactly.

Tamer: How will the teacher and the student get the needed information?

Samir : ..... (6).

Tamer: What's the EKB?

Samir : The Egyptian Knowledge Bank. Everyone can register to it online.

Tamer: That will be fruitful and beneficial.

Samir : I hope so.

### 5 Write an e-mail to a friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Your name is Walaa. Your friend's name is Reda. His/Her address is Reda@yahoo.com.

- a. Persuade him/her not to join a university abroad.      b. Your favourite kind of music.

### 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

- Throughout history, many Egyptians have rendered great services to humanity in different fields.
- Everyone should be given the right to proper education regardless of their gender, colour or religion.

### B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

- نشب حريق هائل في محطة قطار القاهرة ونتج عنه وفاة عشرات الضحايا بسبب إهمال جسيم استوجب تغيير في منظومة النقل.
- يُعد تشييد مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة خطوة هامة نحو تخفيف الضغط على القاهرة وحل مشكلات التكدس وتعطل المرور.

## General Exam (3)

### A Vocabulary and Structure

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

- The attitude they showed towards the idea was ..... We couldn't know if they would agree or not.  
a. **puzzled**                      b. **puzzle**                      c. **puzzling**                      d. **puzzles**
- Mona ..... to Luxor all tomorrow morning.  
a. **will be travelling**                      b. **will travel**                      c. **will have travelled**                      d. **will be travelled**



3. Please, put ..... your cigarette or you will pay a fine. This is a non-smoking area.  
a. **off**                                      b. **down**                                      c. **on**                                      d. **out**
4. .... he enough money, he would buy the present.  
a. **Should**                                      b. **Had**                                      c. **Were**                                      d. **In case**
5. Next Saturday, there will be a total ..... of the sun.  
a. **collapse**                                      b. **glimpse**                                      c. **eclipse**                                      d. **escape**
6. I wish I ..... how to operate this machine.  
a. **knew**                                      b. **know**                                      c. **have known**                                      d. **to know**
7. Yesterday the winds increased to gale force and a ..... reduced visibility to 400 m.  
a. **sand dune**                                      b. **sun cream**                                      c. **sandstorm**                                      d. **briefcase**
8. Metals rust if ..... into the air.  
a. **are left**                                      b. **left**                                      c. **are leaving**                                      d. **they leave**
9. Cutting ..... rainforests is very harmful to the environment.  
a. **out**                                      b. **off**                                      c. **down**                                      d. **up**
10. Ali ..... have travelled abroad. I have no idea about what really happened.  
a. **must**                                      b. **might**                                      c. **can't**                                      d. **would**
11. During the storm, we could hear the rumble of ..... in the distance.  
a. **thunder**                                      b. **lightning**                                      c. **phenomena**                                      d. **occurrence**
12. Do you ..... leave now?  
a. **have to**                                      b. **ought to**                                      c. **must**                                      d. **need**
13. A good teacher should be ..... and simple with his students.  
a. **mature**                                      b. **natural**                                      c. **abnormal**                                      d. **social**
14. My sister ..... twenty one next month.  
a. **will be**                                      b. **is being**                                      c. **is going to be**                                      d. **has been**
15. Who is responsible ..... the project at the current time?  
a. **on**                                      b. **for**                                      c. **at**                                      d. **with**
16. I regret ..... you that your proposal hasn't been accepted.  
a. **told**                                      b. **tell**                                      c. **to tell**                                      d. **telling**
17. .... level you reach, you should never stop training.  
a. **However**                                      b. **Whatever**                                      c. **Whoever**                                      d. **Whomever**
18. He suggested that ..... a plan before starting work.  
a. **draw**                                      b. **drawing**                                      c. **we draw**                                      d. **to draw**
19. Om Kolthoum ..... of as the best Arab singer ever.  
a. **still is thought**                                      b. **is still thought**                                      c. **still is thinking**                                      d. **is still thinking**
20. My friend ..... me to have an extra piece of the cake she had made.  
a. **warned**                                      b. **said**                                      c. **asked**                                      d. **threatened**
21. You can ..... a copy from that program for free on the internet.  
a. **silence**                                      b. **discipline**                                      c. **download**                                      d. **conclude**
22. Mum asked me ..... I had finished doing my homework.  
a. **if**                                      b. **that**                                      c. **which**                                      d. **weather**
23. .... people should have the same rights and choices as everyone else.  
a. **Disabled**                                      b. **Unable**                                      c. **Inability**                                      d. **Disability**
24. The boy explained that he ..... an exciting book then.  
a. **is reading**                                      b. **has read**                                      c. **was reading**                                      d. **been reading**
25. Many health ..... are campaigning for a complete ban on tobacco advertising.  
a. **collections**                                      b. **associations**                                      c. **encyclopedias**                                      d. **references**



26. I always ..... my clothes cleaned at the laundry.  
**a. do** **b. make** **c. have** **d. allow**
27. We modernized our kitchen to make it ..... to our needs.  
**a. sociable** **b. suitable** **c. detached** **d. representative**
28. .... my sisters watches cartoons.  
**a. Each** **b. Both** **c. Neither of** **d. Every**
29. The human rights activists complained about the bad ..... of the prisoners.  
**a. treaty** **b. threat** **c. treatment** **d. deal**
30. .... tried snorkeling?  
**a. Have you never** **b. Did you never** **c. Have you ever** **d. You ever**

**B** Reading Comprehension

**2** Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

The sun was high in the sky and the rays shone directly on a bare piece of ground in the forest. In the centre of this bare spot there was something that looked like a large stone; it was a tiger. The tiger lay quite still. It was no longer able to attack the deer that were so easy to kill when it was young. They moved too quickly for it now. In order that it might live, it found itself forced to hunt the weakest animal of all, namely man. In other words, the tiger became a man-eater. It would wait impatiently near the stream until some unfortunate woman came near enough for it. When the men of the village arrived at the scene of the killing, the tiger was far away. Of course, the tiger realised that women were more vulnerable than men.

The story of the tiger spread like fire in the wild after it had managed to end the lives of two innocent women and a third fortunate woman was able to resist. People began to talk about it. Some of them made efforts to find it, but in vain. The tiger's habit of never going to the same place where it had once killed made it very difficult to know where it was. Tricks of all kinds were tried. Traps were cleverly laid but the tiger escaped them all. One morning the people of the village were surprised. They found the tiger lying dead near the lake. The villagers discovered that the old tiger had a fight at night with a big buffalo.

Answer the following questions:

- Which of the following is TRUE?  
**a. The tiger killed three women.** **b. The tiger killed one woman.**  
**c. The tiger attacked three women.** **d. The tiger attacked two women.**
- "They moved too quickly for it now" means .....  
**a. the tiger moved very quickly** **b. the tiger was strong**  
**c. the tiger was a fast runner** **d. the tiger could not hunt the deer.**  
**a. either** **b. all** **c. every** **d. half**
- The villagers were ..... when they found the tiger dead.  
**a. patient** **b. clever** **c. afraid** **d. amazed**
- The expression "spread like fire in the wild" means .....  
**a. spread in the fire** **b. spread everywhere** **c. spread in the forest** **d. spread in the wild**
- The tiger was able to .....  
**a. kill the deer** **b. escape the fire** **c. escape the traps** **d. kill some men**
- Where did the fight at night take place?  
**a. Near the lake** **b. In a villager's house** **c. In the den of the deer** **d. In the tiger's house**



7. What did the old tiger hunt? 8. How was the third woman rescued?  
9. Why was it difficult for the villagers to kill the tiger? 10. How was the old tiger killed at last?

### The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

#### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1. When Rassendyll entered the prison, ..... were there. (SB)  
a. **De Gautet and Hentzau** b. **Rupert and the doctor**  
c. **Bersonin and Detchard** d. **Detchard and Michael**
2. Detchard looked like .....  
a. **a good imposter but a bad fighter** b. **a good fighter but a bad character.**  
c. **well-educated but arrogant.** d. **well-behaved but nervous.**
3. The Duke was known to be .....  
a. **stupid and arrogant.** b. **having a royal mother.**  
c. **in love with Johann's mother.** d. **his father's favourite son.**
4. Rupert killed Michael thinking that .....  
a. **he would be rewarded** b. **he would be crowned**  
c. **he would marry Flavia** d. **he would be honoured**

#### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. Do you think Rassendyll's pretending as the King was a success? Why / Why not?  
2. Why was the Marshal not surprised when the King asked him to protect Flavia from the Duke?  
3. Antoinette had a sense of bravery. Do you agree? Why / Why not?

### C Writing

#### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

Between two friends who haven't met for a long time.

- Ahmed: I haven't seen you for long. .... (1)?  
Sameh : ..... (2).  
Ahmed: Paris! ..... (3)?  
Sameh : On holiday.  
Ahmed: ..... (4).  
Sameh : With my cousins.  
Ahmed: ..... (5).  
Sameh : We went sightseeing and saw most of Paris's landmarks. In fact it was great.  
Ahmed: I wish ..... (6).  
Sameh : I hope you will be able to.

#### 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

- a. The importance of conserving energy. b. How to solve the problem of over-population.

#### 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. Great efforts are exerted all the time by scientists and researchers to fight chronic and fatal diseases.  
2. It is essential that we bring up a powerful generation who are aware of their society's problems and can create solutions to them.

#### B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. ينجح في الحياة من يتصفون بالمثابرة والتحدى وسرعة البديهة والطموح والمخاطرة والمبادرة.  
2. الفساد آفة تصيب المجتمع وتعوق تقدمه ونموه لذا ينبغي محاربته في كافة المؤسسات الحكومية وغير الحكومية.



## General Exam (4)

## A

## Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1. My father is a/an ..... speaker of English.  
a. **fluent**                      b. **fluency**                      c. **influence**                      d. **affluent**
2. My father always advises me ..... harder.  
a. **work**                      b. **to work**                      c. **worked**                      d. **working**
3. Your research isn't complete, so these figures أرقام / إحصاءات are somewhat .....  
a. **inaccurate**                      b. **intolerant**                      c. **intelligent**                      d. **uninjured**
4. Mona, ..... father is a well-known politician, is my best friend at school.  
a. **who's**                      b. **whom**                      c. **which**                      d. **whose**
5. With the telescope we can see details of the planet's surface that are ordinarily .....  
a. **illiterate**                      b. **illegal**                      c. **invisible**                      d. **illogical**
6. By next summer, my elder brother ..... from the faculty of medicine.  
a. **will have graduated**                      b. **will be graduated**                      c. **will graduate**                      d. **will be graduating**
7. Yesterday, my friends and I played games in the evening for .....  
a. **inclusion**                      b. **entertainment**                      c. **attachment**                      d. **confirmation**
8. The farmer gets his horses ..... by the vet every year.  
a. **checked**                      b. **are checked**                      c. **check**                      d. **checking**
9. I think it is ..... to ignore the threats.  
a. **responsible**                      b. **irresponsible**                      c. **responsive**                      d. **responsibility**
10. He talks ..... that I can't understand him.  
a. **such quickly**                      b. **so quickly**                      c. **too quickly**                      d. **quickly too**
11. The underground makes travelling around Cairo easier especially for .....  
a. **comments**                      b. **commuters**                      c. **commentators**                      d. **commandos**
12. Dr. Aisha Abdelrahman ..... as Bint El-Shatei.  
a. **knows**                      b. **has known**                      c. **was knowing**                      d. **was known**
13. My friend and I haven't ..... since he immigrated.  
a. **responded**                      b. **corresponded**                      c. **written**                      d. **depressed**
14. I have two brothers. .... them are engineers.  
a. **Every of**                      b. **Each of**                      c. **Either**                      d. **Both of**
15. They gave a ..... report about the company's bad performance.  
a. **stingy**                      b. **stinging**                      c. **sting**                      d. **stung**
16. I've just read the weather report. It ..... sunny.  
a. **would be**                      b. **is being**                      c. **will have**                      d. **is going to be**
17. Sitting on the computer for a long time usually ..... me a headache.  
a. **makes**                      b. **does**                      c. **gives**                      d. **reasons**
18. I didn't hear the phone because I ..... a shower.  
a. **had had**                      b. **am having**                      c. **was having**                      d. **have had**
19. Magda was very happy after she had ..... well in the final exam.  
a. **made**                      b. **done**                      c. **given**                      d. **taken**
20. Hany is ..... to answer the difficult questions.  
a. **clever enough**                      b. **enough clever**                      c. **too clever**                      d. **so clever**



21. I'm sure Ali will come because I know he never ..... a promise.  
 a. keeps                      b. aches                      c. shocks                      d. breaks
22. You can borrow my pen ..... you give it back.  
 a. in case of                      b. condition                      c. provided that                      d. as long
23. It was kind of them to give ..... some of their clothes to the charity.  
 a. away                      b. off                      c. down                      d. up
24. I wish I ..... tall enough to play basketball, but unfortunately I'm short.  
 a. were                      b. had been                      c. would                      d. have been
25. My house and yours are ..... in size.  
 a. same                      b. comparable                      c. available                      d. believable
26. My brother went to Cairo university, ..... he studied engineering.  
 a. when                      b. where                      c. which                      d. that
27. Yehia Haqqi was born in a small ..... in Cairo.  
 a. abstract                      b. district                      c. distinct                      d. dialect
28. If I read in bed, I ..... asleep. It's a habit.  
 a. will fall                      b. fall                      c. would fall                      d. am falling
29. You have to finish this research soon or you will miss the .....  
 a. deadline                      b. death rate                      c. limestone                      d. airline
30. She hasn't contacted me since she ..... Cairo.  
 a. had left                      b. left                      c. was left                      d. leaving

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

Pollution occurs when pollutants contaminate the natural surroundings; which brings about changes that affect our normal lifestyles adversely. Pollutants are the key elements or components of pollution which are generally waste materials of different forms. Pollution disturbs our ecosystem and the balance in the environment. With modernization and development in our lives pollution has reached its peak; giving rise to global warming and human illness.

Pollution occurs in different forms; air, water, soil, radioactive, noise, heat and light. Air pollution is the most prominent and dangerous form of pollution. Excessive burning of fuel releases a huge amount of chemical substances in the air everyday; these pollute the air. Release of such hazardous gases into the air causes global warming and acid rain; which in turn have increased temperatures, erratic rains and droughts worldwide; making it tough for the animals to survive.

Water pollution occurs due to several factors; the industrial wastes dumped into the rivers and other water bodies cause an imbalance in the water leading to its severe contamination and death of aquatic species. If you suspect that nearby water sources have been contaminated by a corporation then it might be a good idea to hire an expert to see your options. Soil pollution occurs due to incorporation of unwanted chemicals in the soil due to human activities. Use of insecticides and pesticides absorbs the nitrogen compounds from the soil making it unfit for plants to derive nutrition from. Release of industrial waste, mining and deforestation also exploits the soil. Since plants can't grow properly, they can't hold the soil and this leads to soil erosion. Noise pollution is caused when noise which is an unpleasant sound affects our ears and leads to psychological problems like stress, hypertension, hearing impairment, etc. It is caused by machines in industries, loud music, etc.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the most dangerous kind of pollution?  
 a. Light pollution                      b. Noise pollution                      c. Heat pollution                      d. Air pollution







6

**A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

1. There must be great propaganda for our monuments in all countries so that we can attract tourists.
2. Egyptians should buy locally-made products to cut out imports and raise the standard of living.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

1. ينبغي على الفرد أن يحقق نوع من التوازن بين الحياة العملية والحياة الأسرية حتى يعم الحب والود داخل المنزل.
2. لقد برهنت مصر للعالم كله أنها دولة محبة للسلام القائم على العدل والاحترام المتبادل.

**General Exam (5)**

A

**Vocabulary and Structure**

1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

1. He felt ..... after he knew he had failed the exam.  
a. depress      b. depressive      c. depresses      d. depressed
2. .... your hard training, you would have lost that match.  
a. If it weren't for      b. In case of      c. Provided that      d. Without
3. Deep rooted trees don't fall ..... in strong winds.  
a. out      b. over      c. off      d. away
4. I went to the barber to .....  
a. cut my hair      b. have cut my hair      c. have my hair cut      d. have my hair is cut
5. The mother insisted that he daughter ..... the washing-up.  
a. give      b. allow      c. make      d. do
6. Ola said a moment ago that she ..... for tomorrow's test.  
a. was revising      b. is revising      c. had revised      d. revising
7. The plane to Amsterdam took ..... half an hour ago.  
a. down      b. up      c. in      d. off
8. My friend said to me, "..... any special thing after school tomorrow?"  
a. You doing      b. What doing      c. Are you doing      d. You are doing
9. After the festival, food and drinks are given ..... to poor people.  
a. in      b. up      c. off      d. out
10. She is ..... employee that you can depend on her.  
a. such a good      b. so good      c. such good      d. good such
11. The rays of the ..... sun illuminate the statue of Ramses The Second.  
a. arising      b. rising      c. raising      d. arousing
12. Half of the players in the team ..... under twenty.  
a. have      b. are      c. has      d. is
13. The ..... of the tree protects its living parts.  
a. root      b. branch      c. bark      d. ring
14. On my way home, I stopped ..... a newspaper.  
a. buying      b. to buy      c. bought      d. buy
15. The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to keep raiders .....  
a. down      b. into      c. out      d. about
16. Most people avoid ..... into the city during the rush hour.  
a. driving      b. to driving      c. to drive      d. drove



17. She wrote many successful books, ..... stories for children.  
a. **including**                      b. **include**                      c. **included**                      d. **includes**
18. You ..... park here. It is not allowed.  
a. **don't have to**                      b. **mustn't**                      c. **needn't**                      d. **might not**
19. The city is going to ..... the road so that one more car can find a space on it.  
a. **width**                      b. **wide**                      c. **wider**                      d. **widen**
20. Most of the goods ..... in China are cheap.  
a. **which made**                      b. **they making**                      c. **are made**                      d. **made**
21. My parents have been the most ..... people in my life. They have taught me many things.  
a. **influential**                      b. **affluence**                      c. **influenced**                      d. **fluent**
22. I ..... any bread yesterday, but I forgot that and bought some.  
a. **needn't have bought**                      b. **mustn't have bought**  
c. **don't have to buy**                      d. **can't have bought**
23. The manager praised the employees for their dedication and .....  
a. **discipline**                      b. **carelessness**                      c. **negligence**                      d. **appreciative**
24. One of the children ..... digging a sand canal on the beach.  
a. **suggested**                      b. **offered**                      c. **asked**                      d. **invited**
25. My English teacher has a strong ..... in the importance of education and science.  
a. **belief**                      b. **believes**                      c. **believer**                      d. **believe**
26. You ..... eat healthy food. That's my advice.  
a. **should**                      b. **need**                      c. **ought**                      d. **might**
27. The program was fruitful as it got the participants involved in ..... activities.  
a. **worthwhile**                      b. **downside**                      c. **emergent**                      d. **worthless**
28. The tree would die if its bark .....  
a. **destroyed**                      b. **have destroyed**                      c. **was destroyed**                      d. **is destroyed**
29. The teacher blamed the student, sitting in the last row, for ..... his name into the desk.  
a. **curing**                      b. **shaving**                      c. **curving**                      d. **carving**
30. I wish I ..... a famous doctor one day.  
a. **will be**                      b. **would be**                      c. **have been**                      d. **could be**

**B**

**Reading Comprehension**

**2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)**

Successful marriage is the most effective form of social support; it relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health. While many studies have shown the great importance of social support, it is still clear exactly what this means. Most likely it consists of being a sympathetic listener or offering helpful advice; providing emotional support and social acceptance; giving actual help or financial help, and simply doing ordinary things together, like eating and drinking. Husbands seem to benefit much more from marriage than wives do. Married women are in better physical and mental health, and are happier than single women, but these effects are nearly twice as great for men. Various explanations have been considered, but the most plausible is that wives provide more social support than husbands. Perhaps men need it more? They are more exposed to stresses at work, and have worse health, and die earlier than women.

For a husband and wife to lead a successful joint life, understanding is the main key. Marriage is the toughest exam, one must know how to handle themselves not to complain silly things to parents/in-laws. Either of the partners must be knowing each other's likes and dislikes. Fights happen in all



families but one must overcome them by understanding. A partner should spend more time with their partner to understand each other. Partners can find happiness in small things rather than big things. They should be like friends rather than a husband and wife. Calling each other by names brings closeness between them. They should add smiles to their relationship rather than sobbing most of the time.

**Answer the following questions:**

- What is the most important thing for a happy life between a husband and wife?  
a. **Happiness**                      b. **Understanding**                      c. **Money**                      d. **Health**
- A husband should know the ..... of his wife.  
a. **relatives and cousins**                      b. **likes and dislikes**  
c. **fights and quarrels**                      d. **name and job**
- What are partners advised to do?  
a. **To complain to parents in law.**                      b. **To complain to their own parents.**  
c. **To ask neighbours for help.**                      d. **To spend more time together.**
- Successful marriage is useful for .....  
a. **financial support**                      b. **mental and physical health**  
c. **plausible support**                      d. **social acceptance**
- Understanding helps partners get over .....  
a. **relations**                      b. **fights**                      c. **support**                      d. **closeness**
- The underlined word "plausible" is closet in meaning to .....  
a. **untrue**                      b. **ambiguous**                      c. **reasonable**                      d. **vague**
- In what aspect did married women excel single ones?
- Why are men in need of more social support than women?
- How effective is successful marriage from the social point of view?
- How can a husband and a wife become closer to each other?

### The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

#### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

- Rassendyll thought that for rescuing the King, they needed a .....  
a. **sword**                      b. **knife**                      c. **miracle**                      d. **ladder**
- The King and Rassendyll had the same .....  
a. **skills**                      b. **appearance**                      c. **personality**                      d. **nature**
- When Bernenstein was shot, he was in .....  
a. **the country house**                      b. **Tarlenheim**                      c. **the summer house**                      d. **the woods**
- Rassendyll promised Rose to .....  
a. **write his autobiography.**                      b. **take the job.**  
c. **look for adventure.**                      d. **enjoy himself more.**

#### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

- How do you think Rassendyll's injured finger helped him?
- Rudolf the Fifth was not a careful leader. Prove this.
- How do you think killing De Gautet was very useful for the rescue of the King?

### C Writing

#### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

Amin is asking his friend Salim's advice.

Amin: I need to improve my English. .... (1)?



- Salim: ..... (2).
- Amin: Where can I do such a course?
- Salim: Either ..... or ..... (3).
- Amin: Which way do you prefer?
- Salim: ..... (4).
- Amin: Why?
- Salim: ..... (5).
- Amin: If attending classes in a centre gives me that chance, then I will enroll on one.
- Salim: I hope you will benefit much from it.
- Amin: ..... (6)?
- Salim: I don't prefer a certain language centre, but I will ask a friend who know better about them for recommendation. Then I'll tell you.
- Amin: Thanks very much.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)**

- a. How to reduce road accidents.      b. The disastrous accident that took place in Cairo Train Station.

**6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

- The state is making urgent plans every now and then to get out of the current crises that face it.
- Surfing the internet satisfies man's desire to have up to date information about what is happening all over the world.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

- المواطن الصالح هو الذى يكون على استعداد للتضحية بوقته ونفسه لخدمة بلده وقتما تحتاج اليه.
- بذلت مصر جهود مضنية لحل الأزمة مع دول حوض النيل ومحاولة سلب حق مصر في الحصول على نصيبها وفقا لاتفاقيات سابقة.

**General Exam (6)**

**A Vocabulary and Structure**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

- The Prisoner of Zenda takes ..... in a fictional country.  
a. **part**      b. **the place**      c. **place**      d. **replace**
- You can go to the park ..... you are home by six.  
a. **in case of**      b. **as long as**      c. **provides**      d. **condition**
- The man presented his son ..... a new mobile phone on the occasion of his success.  
a. **at**      b. **for**      c. **with**      d. **on**
- I wish I ..... an engineer when I grow up.  
a. **can be**      b. **could be**      c. **were**      d. **would be**
- The story describes some important ..... events.  
a. **historian**      b. **historical**      c. **historic**      d. **historically**
- ..... heavily, we wouldn't have had floods.  
a. **Had it not rained**      b. **Should I not rain**      c. **If it didn't rain**      d. **Unless it rained**
- The tunnel is eight metres .....  
a. **width**      b. **widen**      c. **in diameter**      d. **in wide**



8. They are going home as soon as they have finished .....  
 a. **working**                      b. **to work**                      c. **to be working**                      d. **be working**
9. The Nile is narrow towards the ..... of Egypt.  
 a. **north**                      b. **northern**                      c. **northerly**                      d. **north's**
10. She asked me ..... a pen.  
 a. **did I have**                      b. **if I had**                      c. **have I had**                      d. **do you have**
11. The advertisement said that interested people must apply ..... writing to the company.  
 a. **to**                      b. **in**                      c. **for**                      d. **with**
12. That coin is ..... to be in a museum.  
 a. **enough old**                      b. **old enough**                      c. **enough age**                      d. **age enough**
13. Most employers nowadays seek highly ..... employees.  
 a. **qualified**                      b. **qualification**                      c. **quality**                      d. **qualify**
14. The tour guide gave ..... tourist a ticket to enter the museum.  
 a. **all**                      b. **each**                      c. **every of**                      d. **both**
15. In China, the beginning of the New Year depends on the ..... of the moon.  
 a. **position**                      b. **equipment**                      c. **instrument**                      d. **location**
16. The doctor ..... the nurse give the patient an injection.  
 a. **had**                      b. **allowed**                      c. **caused**                      d. **got**
17. I sent the e-mail with three ..... They were all educational certificates of mine.  
 a. **attractions**                      b. **attachments**                      c. **agreements**                      d. **appliances**
18. The book, ..... last week, is really interesting.  
 a. **which I bought**                      b. **whom I bought**                      c. **I bought it**                      d. **that I bought it**
19. My father works for the ..... of agriculture.  
 a. **ministry**                      b. **majority**                      c. **minority**                      d. **maturity**
20. When I reached the station, the train ..... I missed it.  
 a. **left**                      b. **has left**                      c. **was left**                      d. **had left**
21. Carpenters have special ..... for decorating pieces of furniture.  
 a. **garments**                      b. **gadgets**                      c. **hawks**                      d. **readers**
22. I ..... a reply to my e-mail yet.  
 a. **haven't received**                      b. **don't receive**                      c. **didn't receive**                      d. **not receiving**
23. I'm totally ..... Could you explain that again, please?  
 a. **condemned**                      b. **commuted**                      c. **convicted**                      d. **confused**
24. The basketball team ..... two games next week.  
 a. **will be played**                      b. **are playing**                      c. **going to play**                      d. **are played**
25. My father is a ..... teacher at the school. All of his students love and appreciate him.  
 a. **respected**                      b. **distinction**                      c. **respective**                      d. **dimensional**
26. .... took a test. All of the students passed.  
 a. **All us**                      b. **We all**                      c. **All we**                      d. **All of we**
27. All the people watching the film cried in the end because it was a ..... one.  
 a. **movable**                      b. **moving**                      c. **removable**                      d. **remover**
28. The children ..... their pocket money by their father every morning.  
 a. **have given**                      b. **are giving**                      c. **given**                      d. **are given**
29. .... shouldn't be given to young children because they can be very dangerous.  
 a. **Celebrations**                      b. **Fireworks**                      c. **Celebrities**                      d. **Festivals**
30. .... arriving home, I found out that the house had been robbed.  
 a. **On**                      b. **Having**                      c. **During**                      d. **While I**



## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

Old Margret was a very strange woman. The fine house in which she lived overlooked a wonderful river, but she never went out of the house. Though a servant looked after her, her only real companions were two little dogs. For a long time she had refused to see any of her relations as she thought all that they were interested in was her money. In this she was right.

After her death, the few relations she had, gathered at the house to hear her lawyer read the will of the dead woman. They were all sure that Margret had left a great fortune and they all demanded a share in it. This led to violent arguments between them while they were waiting for the lawyer to arrive. In particular, they quarreled about the house. Margret's nephew felt that it should go to him as he was one of the few people who used to visit his old aunt before she cut off from her relations. Margret's cousin objected and there was an angry scene in the living room while they waited for the lawyer to arrive. Then a niece of the late woman started a quarrel with her own sister over a diamond necklace Margret had always worn around her neck before her death. Tired of quarrels and arguments, they agreed that it was better to wait for the lawyer and ask his advice on the way the inheritance should be divided among them. When the lawyer entered, the nephew said jokingly that his aunt had probably left hundreds of debts. The lawyer didn't even smile at this and asked them all to sit down. They all sat in silence listening to him reading the will in a solemn رسمي / جاد voice. The shock came like thunder when the lawyer announced that Margret had left the whole of her fortune to her two dogs.

Answer the following questions:

- "She cut off from her relations" means that .....  
 a. **she kept in touch with them**                      b. **she invited them to her villa**  
 c. **she admired their sincerity**                      d. **she kept herself away from them**
- A solemn voice is a ..... one.  
 a. **happy**                      b. **ridiculous**                      c. **serious**                      d. **commanding**
- The two nieces quarreled over .....  
 a. **the necklace**                      b. **the house**                      c. **the dogs**                      d. **the lawyer**
- The relatives all demanded a share in the .....  
 a. **dogs**                      b. **house**                      c. **wealth**                      d. **body**
- Why did the nephew think he deserved the house?  
 a. **His aunt loved him more than others.**                      b. **He loved his aunt more.**  
 c. **He visited his aunt more.**                      d. **He lived with his aunt.**
- The underlined word "this" refers to .....  
 a. **Margret's debts**                      b. **Margret's dogs**                      c. **Margret's relations**                      d. **Margret's wealth**
- How did the will, Margret left, astonish the relatives?                      8. Who took care of Margret?
- What was so strange about old Margret?                      10. What do you think of Margret's relatives? Why?

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

- The Prisoner of Zenda took place in .....  
 a. **the United States.**                      b. **the capital of England.**  
 c. **the French capital.**                      d. **a fictional country.**
- When he congratulated Rassendyll, Michael was .....  
 a. **very angry**                      b. **greatly interested**                      c. **extremely happy**                      d. **pale and tired**



3. Rassendyll killed the man guarding the boat because .....  
 a. **the man was asleep.** b. **the man tried to kill him.**  
 c. **it was obligatory to do that.** d. **the man was breathing heavily.**
4. Rupert accused Johann of .....  
 a. **falling in love with Flavia.** b. **helping Antoinette against Michael.**  
 c. **messaging Rassendyll.** d. **spying for Rassendyll.**

**B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)**

- Why do you think the Duke was more popular than the King?
- Why do you think Michael insisted on defending Antoinette against Rupert?
- Do you think the Duke really loved the poor and wanted to help them? Why / Why not?

**C Writing**

**4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)**

Between a waiter and a customer in a restaurant.

Waiter : What can I get for you?

Customer: ..... (1).

Waiter : How would you like the fish?

Customer: ..... (2).

Waiter : ..... (3).

Customer: Green salad and rice.

Waiter : ..... (4).

Customer: Pepsi. .... (5)?

Waiter : For dessert, we have ice cream and chocolate cake. .... (6)?

Customer: The chocolate cake, please.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)**

- The great role scientists play in life.
- The benefits of space exploration.

**6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

- We must make the best use of our natural and human resources to make great achievements.
- The tourist industry employs a huge number of Egyptians such as travel agents, tour guides and staff.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

- يتدرب الكثير من الشباب هذه الأيام لاكتساب مهارات التعامل مع الانترنت وبرامجه المختلفة كي يصبحوا أهلا للتوظيف.
- تولى الدولة اهتماما كبيرا بالطفل وصحته وتعليمه لأنه يمثل أمل الأمة ومستقبلها واستثمارها البشري.

**General Exam (7)**

**A Vocabulary and Structure**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

- Detectives spend a lot of time ..... mysteries of crimes.  
 a. **depending on** b. **cutting down** c. **clearing up** d. **taking in**
- ..... he fit, he would play the match.  
 a. **Had** b. **Were** c. **Provided** d. **Should**



3. Sham El-Nassim ..... the beginning of spring in Egypt.  
 a. **traces**                      b. **corrects**                      c. **signs**                      d. **marks**
4. I wish I ..... to do such a lot of work today. I'm very tired.  
 a. **didn't have**                      b. **won't have**                      c. **don't have**                      d. **wouldn't have**
5. My brother is a ..... journalist. He is not employed by a certain newspaper.  
 a. **freelance**                      b. **respected**                      c. **correspondent**                      d. **sociable**
6. If I watch TV for too long, I usually ..... a headache.  
 a. **will get**                      b. **would get**                      c. **get**                      d. **am getting**
7. She is fortunate in having the face and figure to look good in very ..... clothes  
 a. **vulnerable**                      b. **fashionable**                      c. **conventional**                      d. **secretary**
8. He doesn't speak Arabic. He ..... be Egyptian.  
 a. **must**                      b. **mustn't**                      c. **should**                      d. **can't**
9. There was a ..... in the petrol tank, so the car stopped.  
 a. **lack**                      b. **lock**                      c. **leak**                      d. **luck**
10. You ..... all this food. Two guests only will come for dinner.  
 a. **had to buy**                      b. **mustn't have bought**  
 c. **needn't have bought**                      d. **can't have bought**
11. My uncle is one of the most famous film ..... in Egypt.  
 a. **directors**                      b. **physicians**                      c. **physicists**                      d. **representatives**
12. Conceited مغرور people never stop ..... about themselves. I find them uninteresting.  
 a. **talked**                      b. **to talking**                      c. **to talk**                      d. **talking**
13. Prices of oil ..... from a country to another.  
 a. **vary**                      b. **very**                      c. **verily**                      d. **various**
14. It's no use ..... We've missed the train.  
 a. **to hurry**                      b. **hurrying**                      c. **hurries**                      d. **hurried**
15. We are thinking about ..... a new phone system in our home.  
 a. **insulating**                      b. **installing**                      c. **instilling**                      d. **isolating**
16. The teacher frequently asked them ..... speak during the lesson.  
 a. **that**                      b. **not to**                      c. **if**                      d. **whether**
17. Singing and music sometimes help people to get ..... their day's work.  
 a. **together**                      b. **though**                      c. **gather**                      d. **through**
18. He asked me if I knew that ..... ill.  
 a. **has he been**                      b. **he had been**                      c. **he has been**                      d. **had he been**
19. Trees' leaves take ..... light from the sun.  
 a. **up**                      b. **out**                      c. **in**                      d. **over**
20. She told the teacher that she ..... the following lesson.  
 a. **hadn't attended**                      b. **won't attend**                      c. **wouldn't attend**                      d. **didn't attend**
21. Due to doing her work efficiently, she was given a well-deserved .....  
 a. **promotion**                      b. **department**                      c. **brochure**                      d. **procedure**
22. His hair looks different. I think he's .....  
 a. **been cut**                      b. **had it cut**                      c. **cut it**                      d. **cut**
23. The lawyer spoke clearly and logically ..... the court session.  
 a. **though**                      b. **throughout**                      c. **thorough**                      d. **throw away**
24. The play is suggested to ..... because the leading actor is ill.  
 a. **be cancelled**                      b. **cancel**                      c. **have cancelled**                      d. **being cancelled**



25. Dr. Aisha Abdel Rahman sought to ..... women's position in society.  
 a. **prove**                      b. **approve**                      c. **improve**                      d. **deprive**
26. The tourist asked for help when he .....  
 a. **lost**                      b. **has lost**                      c. **had lost**                      d. **got lost**
27. I understand the text but the diagrams are ..... me.  
 a. **consulting**                      b. **commuting**                      c. **confusing**                      d. **committing**
28. I'm ..... busy to take my family out this Friday.  
 a. **so**                      b. **enough**                      c. **too**                      d. **such**
29. It is very painful to be ..... by an insect.  
 a. **stung**                      b. **swung**                      c. **sung**                      d. **smuggled**
30. Neither of us spoke. We .....  
 a. **neither spoke**                      b. **either spoke**                      c. **both didn't speak**                      d. **also didn't speak**

## B

## Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

It seems that the desire for money is part of human nature, though this desire varies from one person to another, one social group to another. However, in every society, it is thought that the more money a person has, the more prestige he is likely to acquire. Money plays a different role in every stage of our life. To a child at school age, it is a means of buying things he likes (sweets for example). His school mates who can't do this, look upon him with admiration and respect. To the teenager, it means independence and helps him gain a marked social status. He learns that popularity and leadership can be obtained through money. The young man or woman also derives respect, admiration and prestige from money. Should he/she have money, it will be easy to join a good university and start a respectable career. An adult realizes the value of money as the breadwinner of the family. Satisfaction of the family needs brings him happiness. On the other hand, it is also associated with fear, worry and anxiety. Finally, at the age of retirement, money is the main source of security to a person. Money certainly affects many of our feelings and opinions.

However, two important things must be put into consideration when it comes to earning money or spending it. The first is that money must be legally earned. It mustn't be stolen or taken by force or trickery. The second is that people should be moderate in spending money. They shouldn't be stingy or wasteful. In other words, money must benefit its holder not spoil him.

Answer the following questions:

1. The desire for money .....  
 a. **is the same for all people**                      b. **varies between people**  
 c. **is related to adults**                      d. **is related to breadwinners**
2. For teenagers, money helps them gain .....  
 a. **dependence**                      b. **status**                      c. **wisdom**                      d. **love**
3. The word "stingy" means .....  
 a. **miser**                      b. **extravagant**                      c. **helpful**                      d. **meaningful**
4. The main topic of the passage is .....  
 a. **prestige**                      b. **popularity**                      c. **money**                      d. **anxiety**
5. For a retired person, money secures .....  
 a. **worry**                      b. **poverty**                      c. **fear**                      d. **protection**
6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?  
 a. **the need of the family**                      b. **the satisfaction of the needs**  
 c. **the value of money**                      d. **the happiness that is felt**



7. How does the breadwinner of the family feel when he satisfies the needs of his family?
8. For what purpose does a person at pension need money?
9. How must people earn money?
10. How do you think people should act when it comes to spending money?

### The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

#### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1. To save the throne, Sapt planned to .....  
 a. **collect a big army and attack the castle**      b. **ask the Marshal for help.**  
 c. **make Rassendyll replace the King**      d. **attack Michael at the coronation**
2. The poor people had painting of .....  
 a. **the King**      b. **the late King**      c. **the Princess**      d. **the Duke**
3. "All's well" meant that .....  
 a. **the King was killed.**      b. **the King was kidnapped.**  
 c. **the King was injured.**      d. **the King was drugged.**
4. While sleeping in the forest, Rassendyll dreamed about .....  
 a. **marrying the inn owner.**      b. **living in the castle.**  
 c. **meeting the King.**      d. **attending the coronation.**

#### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. Would Michael be a good ruler if he took the throne? Why / Why not?
2. Do you think Michael was worried about the King's life when he became ill? Why or why not?
3. Why do you think Rassendyll and his men returned to Tarlenheim with heavy hearts?

### C Writing

#### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

Hany and his friend Ayman are talking on the phone.

- Hany : Hello, Ayman. I'm calling to ..... (1).  
 Ayman : Your birthday party. Great! ..... (2)?  
 Hany : Next Thursday at eight o'clock. .... (3)?  
 Ayman : Of course, I'm free and I will surely come. .... (4)?  
 Hany : Yes, I have invited them all.  
 Ayman : Fantastic. I will be there on time.  
 Hany : But ..... (5).  
 Ayman : No, problem. I will come to your house two hours earlier to help.  
 Hany : Thanks. .... (6)?  
 Ayman : It's Ok. I'll bring it. Photos are necessary on such occasions.

#### 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

- a. The important role teachers play in society.
- b. The skills that make someone employable.

#### 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. Deforestation leads to the extinction of several rare animals and plants so it is a must to stop it.
2. Parents are responsible for instilling values and morals in the spirits of their children so that they can become good citizens when they grow up.

#### B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. التدريس من أهم المهن في المجتمع لذا تقدر الدولة دور المعلم جيدا وتسعى جاهدة لرفع دخله وتنمية قدراته.
2. نجحت حملة (خليها تصدى) في اجبار وكلاء وتجار السيارات على خفض أسعارها وجعلها في متناول الجميع.



## General Exam (8)

## A

## Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1. Women associations argue for a more positive ..... for women in society.  
a. base                      b. rule                      c. role                      d. roll
2. Ali has two sisters, ..... of them are older than him.  
a. both                      b. every                      c. each                      d. half
3. I have to finish my project today in order to ..... the deadline.  
a. ache                      b. meet                      c. demand                      d. face
4. No sooner ..... the noise than we rushed to see what happened.  
a. had we heard                      b. we heard                      c. we had heard                      d. we were hearing
5. The ..... caused serious damage to the crops.  
a. draught                      b. drought                      c. draft                      d. default
6. I ..... my own car for three years now.  
a. has had                      b. had had                      c. had                      d. have had
7. The wind ..... here in a southerly direction.  
a. falls                      b. blows                      c. pours                      d. shows
8. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I ..... my homework.  
a. would be doing                      b. may do                      c. will be doing                      d. would do
9. Storms can ..... at any time and in any place.  
a. occur                      b. accuse                      c. oppose                      d. omit
10. By 2040, the internet ..... by everyone.  
a. will have been used                      b. will have used                      c. would be used                      d. will be using
11. Astronauts can ..... weightless sports in space.  
a. do                      b. give                      c. make                      d. take
12. This is the girl with ..... to school.  
a. whom do I go                      b. who do I go                      c. who I go                      d. whom I go
13. ...., which is used as a paint remover, is made from the sap of trees.  
a. Turbine                      b. Toothpaste                      c. Turpentine                      d. Turmoil
14. I prefer food ..... at home.  
a. which made                      b. made                      c. is made                      d. making
15. Trees help to ..... carbon dioxide from the atmosphere.  
a. remove                      b. recycle                      c. download                      d. overload
16. She doesn't like ..... of the dresses.  
a. either                      b. neither                      c. every                      d. none
17. The teacher sent the student who was ..... the noise out of class.  
a. doing                      b. giving                      c. hitting                      d. making
18. You'd rather collect some data about the subject, .....?  
a. don't you                      b. hadn't you                      c. wouldn't you                      d. didn't you
19. After the sandstorm, everything was covered by a thin ..... of sand.  
a. category                      b. class                      c. sect                      d. layer
20. He works ..... long hours that he doesn't have any time to himself.  
a. so                      b. enough                      c. such                      d. too



21. You should ..... the cream from the milk before you add it to the cake.  
 a. **separate**                      b. **balance**                      c. **situate**                      d. **invade**
22. The kids were made ..... early.  
 a. **sleeping**                      b. **sleeps**                      c. **to sleep**                      d. **sleep**
23. Our science teacher usually treats us .....  
 a. **in a fatherly way**                      b. **father**                      c. **a father**                      d. **fatherly**
24. I ..... to swim when I was seven.  
 a. **have learned**                      b. **was learned**                      c. **learned**                      d. **will learn**
25. When there's a/an ....., ambulances drive very fast.  
 a. **fluency**                      b. **efficiency**                      c. **emergency**                      d. **odyssey**
26. John Steinbeck's books have ..... into other languages.  
 a. **been translated**                      b. **translated**                      c. **been translating**                      d. **had translated**
27. I tried the puzzle but gave ....., as it was too difficult.  
 a. **up**                      b. **off**                      c. **away**                      d. **out**
28. She ..... out by the dentist.  
 a. **pulled her bad tooth**                      b. **had pulled her bad tooth**  
 c. **had her bad tooth pulled**                      d. **had her bad tooth was pulled**
29. Doctors and nurses belong to the medical .....  
 a. **job**                      b. **profession**                      c. **position**                      d. **location**
30. At the ceremony, the honoured scientist said ..... the best day of his life.  
 a. **that day had**                      b. **that day was**                      c. **yesterday had**                      d. **today was**

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

It is known that plants can make their own food. They do this through a process known as photosynthesis. Photosynthesis is a chemical process that converts carbon dioxide into organic compounds, especially sugars, using the energy from sunlight. It occurs in plants and many species of bacteria. Photosynthetic organisms can create their own food. In plants, photosynthesis uses carbon dioxide and water, releasing oxygen as a waste product. In addition to maintaining normal levels of oxygen in the atmosphere, photosynthesis is the source of energy for nearly all life on earth, either directly, through primary production, or indirectly, as the ultimate source of the energy in their food. The rate of energy captured by photosynthesis is immense, approximately 100 terawatts which is about six times larger than the power consumption of human civilization. As well as energy, photosynthesis is also the source of the carbon in all the organic compounds within organisms' bodies. The process always begins when energy from light is absorbed by proteins called photosynthetic reaction centers that contain chlorophylls. The rest of the energy is used to remove electrons from a substance such as water.

Requirements for food, materials, and energy in a world where human population is rapidly growing have created a need to increase both the amount of photosynthesis and the efficiency of converting photosynthetic output into products useful to people. One response to those needs—the so-called Green Revolution, begun in the mid-20th century—achieved enormous improvements in agricultural yield through the use of chemical fertilizers, pest and plant-disease control, plant breeding, and mechanized tilling, harvesting, and crop processing. This effort limited severe famines to a few areas of the world despite rapid population growth, but it did not eliminate widespread malnutrition.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Photosynthesis ..... occurs in plants.  
 a. **only**                      b. **rarely**                      c. **mostly**                      d. **never**



2. Photosynthesis helps plants .....
  - a. **get oxygen from other plants.**
  - b. **release carbon dioxide.**
  - c. **take in oxygen.**
  - d. **make their own food.**
3. It has been necessary to increase the amount of photosynthesis to meet the increasing .....
  - a. **pollution**
  - b. **requirements**
  - c. **energy**
  - d. **food**
4. What do plants release in photosynthesis?
  - a. **Carbon**
  - b. **Oxygen**
  - c. **Water**
  - d. **Food**
5. The word “approximately” means .....
  - a. **exactly**
  - b. **totally**
  - c. **partially**
  - d. **nearly**
6. What does the underlined word “It” refer to?
  - a. **Photosynthesis**
  - b. **Energy**
  - c. **Sunlight**
  - d. **Carbon dioxide**
7. Mention two achievements the Green Revolution made.
8. What is the first step in the process of photosynthesis?
9. Mention three main things that we get from photosynthesis?
10. How big is the energy produced from photosynthesis?

### The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

#### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1. If the King didn't come back, the Marshal was to .....
  - a. **marry Flavia to Michael.**
  - b. **make the Princess Queen.**
  - c. **ask Michael to be crowned.**
  - d. **kill the Duke of Strelsau.**
2. After he had been rescued, the real King was moved to .....
  - a. **the palace**
  - b. **the castle**
  - c. **the mansion**
  - d. **the forest**
3. According to Rassendyll, how should Flavia have responded to Michael's invitation?
  - a. **She would accept it.**
  - b. **She would pretend to be ill.**
  - c. **She would go to Zenda.**
  - d. **She would escape.**
4. Rassendyll reached the capital by train .....
  - a. **an hour later than expected.**
  - b. **an hour earlier than expected.**
  - c. **a day earlier than expected.**
  - d. **a day later than expected.**

#### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. Why do you think the King asked Detchard why his brother didn't kill him?
2. Was it right for the Duke to wish to become King? Give a reason.
3. Give an example showing that Sapt cared much for the King.

### Writing

#### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

Hamid and Sobhy are talking about the book Sobhy is reading.

Hamid: What is this book about?

Sobhy : ..... (1).

Hamid: What is she called?

Sobhy : Emily Dickenson.

Hamid: ..... (2)?

Sobhy : The book is explaining her style of writing poems.

Hamid: ..... (3)?



Sobhy : It is a distinctive one.

Hamid: Why is that?

Sobhy : ..... (4).

Hamid: Is it good if a poet breaks rhythm or poetry rules?

Sobhy : Yes, all modern poems are written in such a style. Emily wrote many successful poems.

Hamid: ..... (5).

Sobhy : The most famous is "If I can stop".

Hamid: What was it about?

Sobhy : ..... (6).

Hamid: Do her other poems convey such important messages?

Sobhy : I fact, they are.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)**

a. Lifelong learning is a necessity.

b. Social networking sites; merits and demerits.

**6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

1. We have to provide tourists with all services and facilities so that they want to visit Egypt more.

2. Economic and social stability can't be achieved without cooperation between the government and all individuals.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

1. ينبغي أن تقلل نسبة التلوث البيئي لأنه يمثل خطر كبير على حياة الإنسان والنبات والحيوان.
2. البطالة مشكلة خطيرة تحتاج تنسيق وتكاتف بين القطاعين العام والخاص من أجل التغلب عليها وتوفير فرص عمل للخريجين.

## General Exam (9)

### A Vocabulary and Structure

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

1. They couldn't resist the ..... of the compressed air inside the chamber **الغرفة**.  
a. **treasure**                      b. **pleasure**                      c. **process**                      d. **pressure**
2. I asked him ..... he was doing anything special the next day.  
a. **except**                      b. **without**                      c. **whether**                      d. **unless**
3. The new skills you are going to learn here will make you more .....  
a. **unintelligent**                      b. **employable**                      c. **deployable**                      d. **ignorant**
4. The mother asked her son ..... late.  
a. **if does he come**                      b. **why did he come**                      c. **why would he come**                      d. **why he came**
5. A lot of businesses closed during last year's terrible .....  
a. **oppression**                      b. **depression**                      c. **compression**                      d. **nutrition**
6. One of my friends ..... me to retrain for another job.  
a. **said**                      b. **advised**                      c. **wondered**                      d. **said to**
7. .... learning students can study online.  
a. **Distance**                      b. **Consistence**                      c. **Coherence**                      d. **Convenience**
8. The teacher asked the students ..... noise.  
a. **not to make**                      b. **not make**                      c. **don't make**                      d. **no make**



9. He spent three ..... time recuperating after the accident.  
a. **month**                      b. **month's**                      c. **months**                      d. **months'**
10. I still remember ..... a prize for drawing when I was ten.  
a. **to give**                      b. **to be given**                      c. **being given**                      d. **giving**
11. I've always wanted to speak English fluently, that's why I've ..... on a fluency course.  
a. **joined**                      b. **shared**                      c. **entered**                      d. **enrolled**
12. Smokers are always advised ..... up smoking.  
a. **give**                      b. **giving**                      c. **to give**                      d. **given**
13. This poem is wonderful. It is written in a very simple .....  
a. **style**                      b. **pioneer**                      c. **collection**                      d. **custom**
14. In the past, people didn't have e-mails so they ..... write letters.  
a. **must**                      b. **had to**                      c. **should**                      d. **have to**
15. The headmaster of our school is very ..... about punctuality الانضباط.  
a. **strict**                      b. **discipline**                      c. **silent**                      d. **semicircle**
16. Riders of motorcycles ..... wear helmets.  
a. **must**                      b. **may**                      c. **ought**                      d. **need**
17. I'm really ..... about the coming holiday. I can't wait for it to come.  
a. **enthusiastic**                      b. **available**                      c. **promoted**                      d. **comparable**
18. No seats remained. You ..... booked the tickets at least two days before.  
a. **must have**                      b. **might have**                      c. **should have**                      d. **must be**
19. It was a great football match. Both teams played .....  
a. **positively**                      b. **negatively**                      c. **worthwhile**                      d. **rewarding**
20. If you face a problem, ..... the police.  
a. **can call**                      b. **call**                      c. **would call**                      d. **will call**
21. Astronauts are ..... in space, so they find it difficult to stand still.  
a. **determined**                      b. **weightless**                      c. **missionary**                      d. **voluntary**
22. If the money he had, ..... enough, he would have donated a sum of it for the charity.  
a. **had to**                      b. **been**                      c. **had been**                      d. **had had**
23. You should not attempt these exercises without first ..... your doctor.  
a. **assaulting**                      b. **insulting**                      c. **advising**                      d. **consulting**
24. I wish I ..... in a quieter place next year.  
a. **had lived**                      b. **could live**                      c. **will live**                      d. **lived**
25. We're not sure if we'll have the picnic. It ..... on the weather.  
a. **consults**                      b. **clears**                      c. **takes**                      d. **depends**
26. You'll fail your exams ..... you work harder.  
a. **provided that**                      b. **unless**                      c. **on condition that**                      d. **as long as**
27. Don't worry. I share your ..... about these problems.  
a. **concern**                      b. **concert**                      c. **concrete**                      d. **content**
28. .... coming in time, he'll catch the train.  
a. **In case of**                      b. **Unless**                      c. **Provided**                      d. **If**
29. The criminal ..... several shots at the police.  
a. **flew**                      b. **poured**                      c. **fired**                      d. **rose**
30. Sorry, the parcel won't ..... by next week.  
a. **have delivered**                      b. **be delivered**                      c. **be delivering**                      d. **have been delivered**



## B

## Reading Comprehension

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

During the last fifty years, psychologists have made us believe that differences between men and women are mainly due to the way we are brought up. According to this theory, women can be trained to do jobs that men traditionally do, and men can and should become more domesticated. They should be more communicative and emotional.

But two new books say that, according to recent scientific research, gender differences exist because men's and women's brains work completely differently and their biological differences mean that they can never think or behave in the same way.

Because the two sides of a woman's brain are better connected, women are generally more talkative and more fluent than men. Women solve problems by talking about them, and in a crisis, they usually want to discuss the situation and their feelings, while men tend to interrupt and offer solutions, which isn't what women want at all. Men themselves don't like asking for advice or discussing their problems – they try to solve their problems themselves by thinking about them silently. This fundamental difference is one of the main causes of conflict in male – female relationships.

Although some jobs today are still dominated by one or the other sex, it is not because of sexual distinction, but basically because men and women are attracted to different jobs. It is logical that men are attracted to careers where spatial skills are vital, such as engineering, architecture, construction and flying. Also men are far more attracted than women to jobs which involve risk, such as the stock market or racing. On the other hand, women's superior verbal skills explain why interpreters and foreign language teachers are mainly women. They are attracted to professions that require verbal ability, e.g. writing, acting, journalism and counseling. They also excel in jobs that require good organizational skills.

Answer the following questions:

- What do women discuss while trying to overcome a crisis?
  - The situation not their feelings**
  - The situation and their feelings**
  - The situation only**
  - Their feelings only**
- Some jobs are dominated by either men or women because they both have different .....
  - sexes**
  - genders**
  - attractions**
  - bodies**
- Which of the following requires verbal ability?
  - Journalism**
  - Architecture**
  - Engineering**
  - Racing**
- Women are better with words because .....
  - they are biologically prepared to do that**
  - they speak less than men**
  - this is the way they are brought up**
  - they like talking**
- The underlined word "domesticated" means .....
  - to do work in the home**
  - dominant**
  - taming an animal**
  - be a pet**
- What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
  - Men**
  - Women**
  - Skills**
  - Problems**
- State one of the main causes of conflict between men and women.
- Why do men like stock market and racing more than women do?
- Why do men and women behave differently?
- How do men solve their problems?



## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

3

## A. Choose the correct answer. (4 Marks)

- How did the adventure change Rassendyll?
  - He became sociable.
  - He became responsible.
  - He became natural.
  - He became healthy.
- What favour did Mauban do for Rassendyll?
  - She defended him.
  - She helped him.
  - She married him.
  - She loved him.
- The mother of ..... was royal.
  - Sapt
  - Michael
  - Rudolf
  - Fritz
- Rassendyll delayed the Police Chief's mission to have time to .....
  - look for the missing man
  - marry the Princes and secure himself
  - kill the real King
  - end the game he was playing

## B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

- If you were in Rassendyll's position, would you agree to work in Ruritania? Why/Why not?
- Why do you think Rassendyll chose Johann in particular to work as a spy?
- Did Rassendyll wish the Princess to have to become Queen? Why?

## C Writing

4

## Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

A TV presenter is interviewing a player whose team won the final Cup.

Presenter: ..... (1).

Player : Thank you very much.

Presenter: How do you feel about winning the championship?

Player : ..... (2).

Presenter: ..... (3)?

Player : In fact, I was. Because I have confidence in the ability of my team.

Presenter: That's great! ..... (4)?

Player : I want to ask them to continue doing will to win more cups.

Presenter: ..... (5)?

Player : I present it for our supporters who are always there behind our success.

Presenter: ..... (6).

Player : You're welcome.

5

## Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

- How reduce (family) crimes.
- The new technology-based educational system.

6

## A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

- Peace gives nations golden chances to develop and establish projects while wars make that difficult.
- Garbage disposal is a serious issue that scientists are trying to find solutions for all the time.

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

- تتسبب الزيادة السكانية في خلق مشكلات أخرى كالبطالة والامية ونقص الطعام لذا على جميع المواطنين تبني سياسة تحديد النسل.
- ينبغي على الانسان ألا يتوقف عن التعليم حتى الممات وهناك برامج تتيح له تعلم مهارات مختلفة طوال حياته وفي أي عمر.



## General Exam (10)



## Vocabulary and Structure

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

1. A/An ..... is a hole in the earth from which hot water can rise.  
 a. **geyser**                      b. **thunder**                      c. **illusion**                      d. **delusion**
2. I wish the children ..... arguing. They are very annoying.  
 a. **will stop**                      b. **stop**                      c. **would stop**                      d. **stops**
3. The ..... sent the newspaper an interesting report about the revolution.  
 a. **correspondent**                      b. **ancestor**                      c. **descendent**                      d. **oculist**
4. Call the police ..... danger.  
 a. **in case of**                      b. **in case**                      c. **provided**                      d. **as long as**
5. The ..... are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.  
 a. **branches**                      b. **rings**                      c. **leaves**                      d. **roots**
6. You ..... wear a helmet if you are going to go on the motorbike.  
 a. **might**                      b. **need**                      c. **have to**                      d. **may**
7. The streets were ..... with strings of coloured lights.  
 a. **illustrated**                      b. **illuminated**                      c. **positioned**                      d. **carved**
8. Mona looks sad. She ..... have passed the test.  
 a. **shouldn't**                      b. **mustn't**                      c. **might not**                      d. **needn't**
9. The team never loses! It is .....  
 a. **uninjured**                      b. **undefeated**                      c. **undetermined**                      d. **undeleated**
10. He asked me ..... my parents knew I was there.  
 a. **whether**                      b. **whither**                      c. **wherever**                      d. **weather**
11. The company sells a ..... of gardening products.  
 a. **various**                      b. **vary**                      c. **variable**                      d. **variety**
12. What do you plan ..... in the summer?  
 a. **doing**                      b. **done**                      c. **to do**                      d. **for done**
13. The Golden Gate Bridge is a famous ..... in San Francisco.  
 a. **landmark**                      b. **landlord**                      c. **landslide**                      d. **trademark**
14. They said that they ..... to run to catch the bus.  
 a. **have**                      b. **will**                      c. **had**                      d. **would**
15. Most students start looking for ..... before they leave university.  
 a. **department**                      b. **government**                      c. **employment**                      d. **involvement**
16. I'll ..... the children to tidy their bedrooms.  
 a. **get**                      b. **have**                      c. **make**                      d. **let**
17. All the poor workers were made ..... after the factory closed.  
 a. **attendant**                      b. **redundant**                      c. **attentive**                      d. **detergent**
18. The lunch ..... before we returned home.  
 a. **was preparing**                      b. **has been prepared**  
 c. **had been prepared**                      d. **had prepared**
19. I want to ..... more time with my family during the holiday.  
 a. **take**                      b. **live**                      c. **spend**                      d. **relax**



20. I recommend that ..... this wonderful book.  
 a. **reading**                      b. **you to read**                      c. **you read**                      d. **to read**
21. My friend is more ..... than me. He gets on with everyone he meets.  
 a. **enthusiastic**                      b. **organised**                      c. **worthwhile**                      d. **sociable**
22. It was ..... that not many people passed.  
 a. **such difficult test**                      b. **such as difficult test**  
 c. **such difficult a test**                      d. **such a difficult test**
23. Children grow fast and ..... a lot of weight in their teenage years.  
 a. **win**                      b. **earn**                      c. **make**                      d. **gain**
24. I play ..... football nor tennis.  
 a. **either**                      b. **both**                      c. **all**                      d. **neither**
25. The ..... for this game don't work. Can I try yours?  
 a. **pressures**                      b. **convicts**                      c. **commuters**                      d. **controls**
26. She wrote an article ..... she described some of the problems facing the poor.  
 a. **which**                      b. **on which**                      c. **for which**                      d. **in which**
27. There was no hope of ..... the damage so she had to buy a new car.  
 a. **repairing**                      b. **appearing**                      c. **blackmailing**                      d. **remaining**
28. You ..... touch the objects in the museum. It is forbidden.  
 a. **mustn't**                      b. **needn't**                      c. **oughtn't**                      d. **don't have to**
29. The tourists left the boat and went ..... for the afternoon.  
 a. **shore**                      b. **a shore**                      c. **assure**                      d. **ashore**
30. If you heat ice, it .....  
 a. **will melt**                      b. **melts**                      c. **would melt**                      d. **is melting**

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

Charles Dickens was born in 1812. His father was careless with money. When he was 12, he had to leave school to work in a shoe-dye factory in London because his father had been imprisoned for debt. This experience deeply shamed and frightened the young boy, and those feelings were later expressed in his writing, particularly in his descriptions of the working conditions of the poor Victorian factories. When his father came into inheritance, young Dickens could return to his school, but the family's fortunes were never very secure.

Dickens' success as a writer began when he started writing the Pickwick Papers in 1836. These were originally intended as a humorous narrative to accompany a series of drawings. Dickens' early life had clearly enabled him to write about the poor and dispossessed with understanding and compassion. This compassion also made itself to be felt in practical ways. He helped to establish a home for destitute women, and encouraged slum clearance and developments in sanitary provisions.

Dickens has a very distinctive writing style; he writes in a poetic way and uses a lot of satire and consequently humor. Since he started off his literary career, most of his stories are in an episodic form. He is a master using this method in his stories, using cliff hanger endings he was able to keep his readers interested in his stories. Sometimes Dickens uses idealized characters in his books, which is a bad thing because an idealized character does not have any room to grow throughout the course of the book. However Dickens does not make all of his characters perfect, rather he uses his idealized characters to contrast the ugly side of life that he so often portrays.



**Answer the following questions:**

- Although Dickens' father came to an inheritance, the family's fortunes were .....  
a. **safe**                      b. **mature**                      c. **pure**                      d. **insecure**
- This passage speaks about Dickens as a ..... more than a writer.  
a. **humanitarian**                      b. **social reformer**                      c. **decision maker**                      d. **social worker**
- What did Dickens use in his writing?  
a. **poems**                      b. **satire**                      c. **poverty**                      d. **characters**
- When did young Dickens return to his school?  
a. **When his father died.**                      b. **When his father went to prison.**  
c. **When his father came into inheritance.**                      d. **When his father begged him to do so.**
- What made Dickens use idealized characters?  
a. **To make conflict.**                      b. **To make writing simple.**  
c. **To make writing perfect.**                      d. **To make contrast.**
- What does the underlined word "destitute" mean?  
a. **greedy**                      b. **deprived**                      c. **astonished**                      d. **impressed**
- Why is using idealized characters a bad thing?
- How do we prove that Dickens's father was careless?
- How did the carelessness of the father affect the son?
- How did Dickens write about the poor?

**The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)****3****A. Choose the correct answer. (4 Marks)**

- Michael rushed out of his room when .....  
a. **Rassendyll killed De Gautet.**                      b. **Antoinette called for help.**  
c. **Sapt entered the castle.**                      d. **Johann opened the front door.**
- The King asked Detchard why .....  
a. **his brother didn't kill him.**                      b. **his brother didn't marry Flavia.**  
c. **his brother didn't set him free.**                      d. **his brother didn't return to the capital.**
- Flavia was surprised when Rassendyll spoke well of Michael because .....  
a. **she knew Michael loved her.**                      b. **she knew Michael was evil.**  
c. **she knew Michael loved the King.**                      d. **she knew Rassendyll was not the King.**
- Sapt wanted Rassendyll not to visit the summer house because .....  
a. **he didn't trust Antoinette.**                      b. **he thought Antoinette would help them.**  
c. **he knew Detchard would be there.**                      d. **he knew Rassendyll was weak and cowardly.**

**B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)**

- Were the people of Ruritania right to support the Duke? Why / Why not?
- What do you think of Rose's character?
- Why might the Police Chief's visit have caused a problem?

**C Writing****4****Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)**

Between a customer and an assistant in a car agency.

Assistant : How can I help you?

Customer: ..... (1).



Assistant : ..... (2)?

Customer: Mercedes, please. .... (3)?

Assistant : I recommend Mercedes AMG F1.

Customer: ..... (4)?

Assistant : It has all the comfortable accessories.

Customer: ..... (5).

Assistant : It is a smart one which can check traffic and tell you the best routes.

Customer: Great! How much is it?

Assistant : 600 thousand pounds.

Customer: Wow! That's too much. .... (6)?

Assistant : Ok. We offer 10% discount.

Customer: Ok, I'll take it.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)**

- Eating healthy food is essential.
- Encouraging investment improves the economy.

**6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

- In recent years, the Egyptians are keen on restoring their glories to keep pace with progress in the developed countries.
- People who have no goals are seldom successful because they lack planning and determination.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

1. يخشى الكثيرون من معارضى العولمة ان يكون لها تأثير سلبي على الهوية القومية والثقافة والقيم المجتمعية.
2. سوف تتطور سياحة الفضاء بشكل هائل في المستقبل القريب ومن المتوقع أن يصطف الناس في طوابير لحجز رحلات الفضاء.

# أسرة كتاب

## (My new friend)

### نتمنى للجميع

### النجاح والتوفيق



## Exercises on Vocabulary, derivatives, prepositions, expressions and notes

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1	a ( <b>average</b> )	2	b ( <b>confusing</b> )
3	a ( <b>confusion</b> )	4	b ( <b>insist</b> )
5	d ( <b>routine</b> )	6	c ( <b>old-fashioned</b> )
7	a ( <b>publisher</b> )	8	c ( <b>midday</b> )
9	a ( <b>publisher</b> )	10	a ( <b>established</b> )
11	c ( <b>law</b> )	12	a ( <b>pioneer</b> )
13	a ( <b>custom</b> )	14	b ( <b>collection</b> )
15	c ( <b>believer</b> )	16	b ( <b>disability</b> )
17	a ( <b>did</b> )	18	a ( <b>importance</b> )
19	a ( <b>cultural</b> )	20	a ( <b>influenced</b> )
21	d ( <b>lectures</b> )	22	b ( <b>responsible</b> )
23	b ( <b>semicircle</b> )	24	a ( <b>serious</b> )
25	a ( <b>silence</b> )	26	d ( <b>ache</b> )
27	a ( <b>faced</b> )	28	a ( <b>demand</b> )
29	c ( <b>button</b> )	30	c ( <b>available</b> )
31	a ( <b>enthusiasm</b> )	32	b ( <b>unavailable</b> )
33	c ( <b>replacement</b> )	34	a ( <b>reduction</b> )
35	c ( <b>replace</b> )	36	d ( <b>bleach</b> )
37	c ( <b>soaked</b> )	38	b ( <b>mixture</b> )
39	b ( <b>trade</b> )	40	b ( <b>encyclopedia</b> )
41	a ( <b>rollers</b> )	42	b ( <b>rolled</b> )
43	c ( <b>mark</b> )	44	b ( <b>convince</b> )
45	a ( <b>intend</b> )	46	a ( <b>lecture</b> )
47	b ( <b>awarded</b> )	48	a ( <b>positive</b> )
49	b ( <b>role</b> )	50	c ( <b>appreciate</b> )
51	b ( <b>appreciative</b> )	52	d ( <b>respectful</b> )
53	b ( <b>respectable</b> )	54	a ( <b>governed</b> )
55	a ( <b>appreciatively</b> )	56	b ( <b>solo</b> )
57	b ( <b>licence</b> )	58	c ( <b>career</b> )
59	b ( <b>staff</b> )	60	b ( <b>impressive</b> )
61	a ( <b>suitability</b> )	62	a ( <b>licensed</b> )
63	b ( <b>impressed</b> )	64	a ( <b>alive</b> )
65	b ( <b>aching</b> )	66	c ( <b>faint</b> )
67	c ( <b>in vain</b> )	68	c ( <b>ease</b> )
69	c ( <b>asleep</b> )	70	d ( <b>along</b> )
71	a ( <b>ahead</b> )	72	a ( <b>accounts</b> )



هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

73	a ( <b>regular</b> )	74	a ( <b>on</b> )
75	a ( <b>organisation</b> )	76	b ( <b>make</b> )
77	a ( <b>stressful</b> )	78	b ( <b>balance</b> )
79	c ( <b>suffer</b> )	80	a ( <b>task</b> )
81	b ( <b>lack</b> )	82	a ( <b>limit</b> )
83	c ( <b>training</b> )	84	d ( <b>remind</b> )
85	b ( <b>off</b> )	86	a ( <b>off</b> )
87	b ( <b>from</b> )	88	a ( <b>stress</b> )
89	a ( <b>tips</b> )	90	d ( <b>politician</b> )
91	d ( <b>degree</b> )	92	b ( <b>hopeful</b> )
93	b ( <b>unconscious</b> )	94	d ( <b>build</b> )
95	d ( <b>anniversary</b> )	96	a ( <b>walk</b> )
97	b ( <b>launched</b> )	98	b ( <b>gravity</b> )
99	d ( <b>mission</b> )	100	c ( <b>distance</b> )
101	d ( <b>queuing</b> )	102	c ( <b>space</b> )
103	b ( <b>examined</b> )	104	d ( <b>exploration</b> )
105	b ( <b>invasion</b> )	106	a ( <b>secret</b> )
107	a ( <b>system</b> )	108	b ( <b>reach</b> )
109	a ( <b>spin</b> )	110	a ( <b>painless</b> )
111	c ( <b>powerful</b> )	112	a ( <b>consultant</b> )
113	b ( <b>radar</b> )	114	b ( <b>technician</b> )
115	c ( <b>physics</b> )	116	b ( <b>technical</b> )
117	d ( <b>physicist</b> )	118	a ( <b>horrified</b> )
119	c ( <b>interrupt</b> )	120	a ( <b>threatened</b> )
121	d ( <b>threatening</b> )	122	a ( <b>emergent</b> )
123	a ( <b>cause</b> )	124	a ( <b>link</b> )
125	a ( <b>illness</b> )	126	b ( <b>mast</b> )
127	a ( <b>caused</b> )	128	a ( <b>signal</b> )
129	a ( <b>installation</b> )	130	b ( <b>pole</b> )
131	b. <b>invisible</b>	132	b. <b>release</b>
133	b. <b>process</b>	134	b. <b>removal</b>
135	a. <b>intolerant</b>	136	d. <b>tasteless</b>
137	d. <b>survive</b>	138	d. <b>failed</b>
139	d. <b>explored</b>	140	a. <b>giant</b>
141	b. <b>cons</b>	142	c. <b>voluntary</b>
143	d. <b>downside</b>	144	d. <b>ambitious</b>
145	b. <b>conscientious</b>	146	a. <b>skills</b>
147	d. <b>applicants</b>	148	d. <b>established</b>
149	c. <b>reputation</b>	150	a. <b>pharmacy</b>
151	a. <b>assist</b>	152	b. <b>qualify</b>
153	b. <b>possesses</b>	154	a. <b>achieved</b>
155	c. <b>achievement</b>	156	b. <b>candidate</b>



157	<b>b. choir</b>	158	<b>a. grade</b>
159	<b>b. neighbourhood</b>	160	<b>a. neighbourly</b>
161	<b>c. fluently</b>	162	<b>a. Fluency</b>
163	<b>a. ambassador</b>	164	<b>c. will</b>
165	<b>b. translate</b>	166	<b>b. toiled</b>
167	<b>c. fellow</b>	168	<b>c. grains</b>
169	<b>b. toiled</b>	170	<b>c. risen</b>
171	<b>b. falls</b>	172	<b>c. Creative</b>
173	<b>a. retaining</b>	174	<b>b. maturity</b>
175	<b>a. receptionist</b>	176	<b>b. creativity</b>
177	<b>a. enrollment</b>	178	<b>d. department</b>
179	<b>d. unemployed</b>	180	<b>b. employ</b>
181	<b>a. promote</b>	182	<b>c. employer</b>
183	<b>b. employees</b>	184	<b>d. qualifications</b>
185	<b>a. Watch</b>	186	<b>d. abbreviation</b>
187	<b>d. gale</b>	188	<b>d. make up</b>
189	<b>a. retirement</b>	190	<b>d. influence</b>
191	<b>a. enjoyment</b>	192	<b>c. update</b>
193	<b>c. terrific</b>	194	<b>d. appointment</b>
195	<b>b. product</b>	196	<b>a. downpour</b>
197	<b>a. harvests</b>	198	<b>d. sculptures</b>
199	<b>d. distinctive</b>	200	<b>c. procession</b>
201	<b>c. position</b>	202	<b>c. evolve</b>
203	<b>a. folk</b>	204	<b>c. responsibility</b>
205	<b>b. regions</b>	206	<b>a. evolution</b>
207	<b>d. distinction</b>	208	<b>d. violinist</b>
209	<b>d. non-fiction</b>	210	<b>a. concentrate</b>
211	<b>c. gap</b>	212	<b>b. transport</b>
213	<b>d. concentration</b>	214	<b>c. transportation</b>
215	<b>a. ruler</b>	216	<b>b. considered</b>
217	<b>d. diameter</b>	218	<b>c. investment</b>
219	<b>a. massive</b>	220	<b>b. drill</b>
221	<b>d. tunnel</b>	222	<b>b. take</b>
223	<b>a. engineered</b>	224	<b>a. positioned</b>
225	<b>b. power cut</b>	226	<b>d. base</b>
227	<b>a. rays</b>	228	<b>d. concrete</b>
229	<b>c. panel</b>	230	<b>c. emission</b>
231	<b>d. transformed</b>	232	<b>a. create</b>
233	<b>b. instrument</b>	234	<b>c. rings</b>
235	<b>c. trunk</b>	236	<b>a. Leaves</b>
237	<b>a. branch</b>	238	<b>a. rings</b>



هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

239	a. harden	240	a. widen
241	b. strengthen	242	c. shorten
243	a. lengthen	244	c. width
245	c. extract	246	a. calculated
247	a. tube	248	d. Sap
249	a. cardboard	250	b. rubber
251	b. toothpaste	252	a. pearl
253	d. force	254	a. celebrity
255	c. publicity	256	c. ancestor
257	d. success	258	a. depressive
259	a. publicize	260	b. forceful
261	a. corresponding	262	a. hide
263	c. tricks	264	b. Merchants
265	d. treat	266	a. offers
267	b. scorpion	268	a. trickery
269	a. merchandise	270	a. greedy
271	a. treatment	272	c. evil
273	b. greed	274	b. absorbs
275	c. Ultraviolet	276	a. centigrade
277	d. directly	278	a. sunburn
279	d. heat	280	c. absorbent
281	d. atmospheric	282	a. phenomenon
283	b. Strong	284	d. phenomena
285	b. rainfall	286	b. violent
287	a. beneath	288	a. behind
289	c. Lightning	290	b. occurrence
291	d. phenomenally	292	d. Heavy
293	a. harmful	294	d. electrical
295	d. hard	296	d. valuable
297	d. sadness	298	c. Tie
299	d. defeat	300	d. personally
301	d. northern	302	b. cliff
303	a. communities	304	b. sales
305	b. charitable	306	b. envy
307	b. colleagues	308	c. on well with
309	a. value	310	b. Press
311	c. argued	312	c. honour
313	a. paperback	314	c. e-book reader
315	b. burdens	316	d. soloist
317	b. found	318	c. worthless
319	d. emit	320	a. impression





## Exercises on The Most Important Grammar Points

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	a. done	2	c. had begun
3	c. going	4	b. had finished
5	d. seemed	6	d. was
7	d. always ate	8	a. had written
9	b. hearing	10	a. Having
11	b. had written	12	c. graduating
13	b. used to go	14	d. were you doing
15	b. During	16	b. going
17	b. had I seen	18	a. had gone
19	d. were doing	20	a. since
21	b. has gone	22	a. has just gone
23	c. yet	24	c. have lost
25	a. has been	26	d. have been reading
27	c. haven't received	28	b. has been
29	d. have ever seen	30	b. has enjoyed
31	a. am doing	32	c. is going to be
33	c. are flying	34	c. will have grown
35	b. will turn	36	a. will be travelling
37	c. is going to be	38	a. will increase
39	d. arrive	40	c. will pass
41	d. will be made	42	a. will have been replaced
43	a. will have been	44	d. by
45	c. am going to	46	b. are getting
47	b. won't leave	48	c. will win
49	b. which	50	d. who
51	d. who appeared	52	a. which
53	d. whose	54	c. which
55	a. which	56	c. I lent
57	d. written	58	b. where
59	d. passing	60	d. whose
61	a. for which	62	a. to which
63	d. what	64	d. every
65	d. either	66	c. half a
67	b. All	68	b. every
69	b. each	70	b. both
71	c. Both	72	a. neither
73	c. Each	74	c. Neither



75	b. neglect	76	c. us all
77	c. Each of	78	b. Both
79	a. was	80	a. Half
81	c. Neither of	82	c. big enough
83	a. such a	84	d. such
85	a. so	86	a. too expensive
87	d. rich enough	88	b. such an
89	b. so	90	b. to go
91	b. such a	92	b. careful enough
93	d. had been opened	94	b. is being repaired
95	c. by	96	c. is still thought
97	a. has been written	98	b. to be repaired
99	a. was solved	100	b. been repaired
101	c. to have happened	102	a. to be
103	d. to be sent	104	b. being laughed
105	b. hasn't been	106	d. is expected
107	d. to have suffered	108	d. He is
109	b. burn	110	b. being invited
111	b. had disappeared	112	c. have
113	a. make	114	d. let
115	a. had my teeth checked	116	d. typed
117	b. have my meal prepared	118	c. had
119	a. to help	120	a. help
121	d. will be	122	d. are going
123	d. would phone	124	b. was
125	d. would	126	c. is
127	b. will	128	a. tell
129	c. is reading	130	c. had been
131	d. I had gone	132	d. I had
133	b. I had been	134	d. he is
135	d. whether	136	c. asked
137	d. your parents think	138	b. would join
139	b. will leave	140	c. visited
141	c. to keep	142	d. said
143	b. reminded	144	b. will visit
145	c. was watching	146	c. have you been
147	d. why	148	c. that you book
149	b. do	150	d. not to drive
151	b. advised	152	b. do
153	b. is	154	d. inquired
155	d. to give	156	a. threatened



157	<b>c. told</b>	158	<b>c. complained</b>
159	<b>a. had passed</b>	160	<b>a. wanted to know</b>
161	<b>a. ordered</b>	162	<b>b. not to waste</b>
163	<b>c. to build</b>	164	<b>c. to ask</b>
165	<b>a. to pass</b>	166	<b>d. going</b>
167	<b>b. speaking</b>	168	<b>c. leaving</b>
169	<b>a. smoking</b>	170	<b>c. to visit</b>
171	<b>c. to be seen</b>	172	<b>d. to stay</b>
173	<b>c. smoking</b>	174	<b>a. flying</b>
175	<b>c. to do</b>	176	<b>b. to answer</b>
177	<b>d. to meet</b>	178	<b>a. to win</b>
179	<b>c. being lied</b>	180	<b>c. speaking</b>
181	<b>d. to tell</b>	182	<b>d. going</b>
183	<b>a. to phone</b>	184	<b>d. meeting</b>
185	<b>d. taking</b>	186	<b>b. to turn</b>
187	<b>c. taking</b>	188	<b>c. to eat</b>
189	<b>c. to look</b>	190	<b>b. being chased</b>
191	<b>b. must</b>	192	<b>b. had to</b>
193	<b>c. have to</b>	194	<b>b. might</b>
195	<b>a. must have been</b>	196	<b>c. must have made</b>
197	<b>c. might have left</b>	198	<b>c. can't</b>
199	<b>a. can't have locked</b>	200	<b>c. must</b>
201	<b>c. could have travelled</b>	202	<b>c. shouldn't</b>
203	<b>c. must</b>	204	<b>d. needn't</b>
205	<b>b. have to</b>	206	<b>c. ought</b>
207	<b>a. might be</b>	208	<b>c. needn't</b>
209	<b>c. shouldn't</b>	210	<b>a. mustn't</b>
211	<b>b. must</b>	212	<b>a. ought not</b>
213	<b>a. didn't have to revise</b>	214	<b>b. shouldn't</b>
215	<b>d. shouldn't have</b>	216	<b>b. might</b>
217	<b>a. didn't need to</b>	218	<b>a. have to</b>
219	<b>c. mustn't</b>	220	<b>b. must</b>
221	<b>c. might be</b>	222	<b>a. ought to</b>
223	<b>a. don't have to</b>	224	<b>b. needn't</b>
225	<b>b. had to go</b>	226	<b>b. have to</b>
227	<b>c. have to</b>	228	<b>b. needn't have</b>
229	<b>b. should</b>	230	<b>c. expands</b>
231	<b>d. get</b>	232	<b>b. grows</b>
233	<b>b. had helped</b>	234	<b>a. would have happened</b>
235	<b>a. Would</b>	236	<b>a. were</b>
237	<b>b. would</b>	238	<b>d. hadn't rained</b>



239	c. would be allowed	240	c. will look
241	c. feel	242	b. hadn't wasted
243	b. hadn't	244	b. knew
245	b. could	246	a. wish
247	d. had listened	248	d. were
249	d. would stop	250	c. would have had
251	d. Unless it stops	252	a. In case of
253	d. to tell	254	a. Had
255	b. Should	256	d. Had
257	d. Were	258	b. Unless
259	b. Without	260	d. Unless
261	b. provided that	262	a. in case of
263	a. Imagine	264	a. on condition
265	b. as long	266	d. booking
267	c. without	268	c. Were he to ask
269	c. in case of	270	a. in case of

### Test yourself (Comprehension Passages)

#### 1. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1	b. do not read or practise hobbies	2	c. the most suitable form of amusement
3	b. hinders imagination	4	b. eats while watching TV
5	a. negative	6	c. Watching online movies

7. A viewer just presses a button and does some adjustments to the set.  
 8. Because they can see the best of the old and new films on TV.  
 9. a) furnishes.                      b) viewing.  
 10. It has taken the place of reading or practising useful hobbies. It has caused youths to have limited general knowledge.

#### 2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1	c. It is a chemical that causes pain.	2	a. Through reducing neurokinin.
3	c. Migraine attacks women more than men.	4	c. part of the head
5	c. aspirin	6	a. reduce

7. Migraine and cluster pain.  
 8. Blood vessels in the brain becoming too full of blood.  
 9. He might cry out in pain, walk restlessly up and down or become unable to concentrate on work, study or pleasure.  
 10. When we know the causes of headaches.

#### 3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1	b. the matter will be worse	2	a. to find different kinds of power
3	d. needs	4	c. To fulfill his desires
5	c. has several needs	6	a. imposes many challenges on man



7. To fulfill his needs.
8. To feed and clothe himself.
9. a) for example.      b) energy
10. It has become severer and more intense.

**4. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

1	<b>d. To discuss Buck's influence on the cultures of the East and the West.</b>	2	<b>c. poetry</b>
3	<b>b. The Newberry Medal</b>	4	<b>a. She wrote extensively about a very different culture.</b>
5	<b>d. Buck connected two cultures together.</b>	6	<b>b. skillful</b>

7. Because she was the product of two cultures.
8. He admires and respects her.
9. A wife and mother, an internationally famous writer and a humanitarian and philanthropist.
10. The Nobel Prize.

**5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

1	<b>a. people travelling around their own country.</b>	2	<b>d. provide efficient and friendly service.</b>
3	<b>b. It makes them feel better.</b>	4	<b>a. lowering hotel prices</b>
5	<b>b. ordinary</b>	6	<b>d. set up</b>

7. It is tourism where ill tourists can find a good climate to recover.
8. Because it could help increase the national income and provide youth with more work opportunities.
9. They have to treat tourists in a friendly and polite way and give them as much help as they can.
10. A tourist needs clean comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices.

**Test yourself (The Prisoner of Zenda)**



**\* Answer the following questions:**

1. I think Robert Rassendyll because he knew his position in society had responsibilities.
2. No, she wasn't, because he was wicked and greedy.
3. Because Rassendyll looked exactly like the King of Ruritania.
4. He ate very much and ate the cakes hungrily as if they were the first thing he had eaten all day.
5. Because there were two Kings, a pretend King and a real King.
6. No, I don't because when Sapt and Rassendyll returned to the palace, Fritz was fast asleep.
7. So that he could prevent Michael from killing the King.
8. Michael would have taken the throne so easily.
9. Because they were distant relatives **أقرباء من بعيد** as Amelia Rassendyll married one of the Ruritians.
10. Because Fritz was not so wise and Sapt was a veteran **رجل محنك** who knew more than him.
11. Yes, because that was the best way to prepare him as a future diplomat to get into politics.
12. He didn't punish her when he knew she had helped Rassendyll in the summer house.
13. Because she was beautiful, fashionably dressed and ambitious.
14. I think she wanted to warn people against Michael's evil intentions because she was a good woman.



15. I think she would keep the King's secret because she was patriotic and kind.
16. The Innkeeper loved Michael and wanted him to be crowned but her daughter didn't like him.
17. Because Detchard was a better swordsman than he was and he knew all the tricks.
18. Because the King pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body and this made him lose balance.
19. Yes, because they were evil and shared in Michael's evil plans to take the throne.
20. Because there would be confusion if people saw the King and Rassendyll together.
21. Because the Marshal was obedient and trustworthy and he was an important man in government.
22. I think Rassendyll would have punished him for that.
23. That showed that the King had a weak character and didn't have his own opinions.
24. I agree because she proved out to be one of Michael's spies.
25. So that he could carry out his evil plans there.
26. I think the people would have known that Michael tried to take the throne illegally.
27. Yes, it was because it would help him get rid of four men easily and take the throne.
28. Because they knew that Michael was greedy for power.
29. No, because he should have been loyal to the King.
30. Because he had evil plans which needed such evil men to carry out.
31. So that no one could see him and discover the game.
32. Yes, because if he hadn't been greedy for food, he wouldn't have been poisoned.  
He should have known that his brother was evil.
33. Because if Fritz had not come, Rassendyll would have been killed. Rupert also didn't have a gun.
34. He managed to escape from Rassendyll and his men in the woods and also managed to escape from Antoinette de Mauban when she pointed a gun at him.
35. So that no one would know that someone else took the King's place.
36. Because the city gates were closed at that time and no one got out without a permit.
37. I think he was thinking of the plan he and Rassendyll had agreed upon and the reward he would have.
38. Because they needed their king to look after them and their interests.
39. Because they loved Princess Flavia very much.
40. Because he didn't like him. Rassendyll also offered him a big reward.
41. Yes, because if she had told people he wasn't the King, there would have been danger.
42. Michael's men.
43. Because he knew that she and Johann were friends. Michael's men would not suspect her.
44. So that he could remind Rupert that he was strong and could defeat his friend.
45. Yes, so that she wouldn't discover his identity. He also wanted her not to say everything she felt to him because he wasn't the man she meant.
46. To show Rassendyll that he understood what he meant to say.
47. No, because he didn't help Rassendyll in the fight at the lodge but he ran away.
48. Because Rassendyll wasn't the real King.
49. I think he did so to make new plans after his men failed to kill Rassendyll.
50. I think it was usual for someone seeing the King for the first time to do so.  
(or) Perhaps she knew Michael's plan to kidnap the King and didn't expect the King to come.
51. I think because she was a woman of good nature who hated to see people being killed.
52. So that he would threaten Michael not to try to hurt him again.
53. Yes, because if Rassendyll disappeared, the game would be over. He wanted to protect Rassendyll from Michael's dangerous men.
54. No, because this was for my good and safety. / Yes, because he could protect himself.



55. Because he thought most of what happened wasn't very important to the future of Ruritania.
56. I think she sensed that Michael wanted to harm him.  
She didn't explain because she didn't want to be a cause of hatred between the two brothers.
57. Yes, because he spoke a lot about his rich family and was proud of not needing to work.
58. Fate made the King meet Rassendyll who replaced him and saved the throne.
59. He managed to persuade Rassendyll to complete the game and gave him rational reasons أسباب منطقية for not needing to get worried.
60. I think it was a good and sensible thing to do because that increased the King's popularity.

ثالثاً: أهم أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد بالقصة كاملة

1	b. There will be a new King.	2	c. He is the King's half brother.
3	a. They are both officers for a King or Queen.	4	b. They both have an easy life.
5	a. Because he comes from an important family.	6	a. work with an ambassador
7	d. He wants to be the ambassador to Ruritania.	8	b. the King
9	d. They did not want to eat much before the important coronation.	10	a. They wanted things to change.
11	a. they don't want people to know that he was ill.	12	b. nobody knows that he pretended to be the King.
13	c. He did not eat as many cakes as the King.	14	b. He feels nervous.
15	c. It was a mixture of old and new buildings.	16	a. Because he thought that she might recognise him.
17	b. the body of Josef.	18	a. Because the real King has been kidnapped.
19	b. Because then Rassendyll stays as the King.	20	c. Strelsau and continue with the game.
21	a. He wanted to ride through the old town alone.	22	b. She thought that he had changed.
23	c. through a secret passage.	24	c. They are the Duke's special soldiers.
25	b. The drawbridge to the castle was always up.	26	c. Michael told her to write it.
27	a. Michael's plan to become King.	28	d. this would stop Michael from becoming King.
29	a. He was growing in popularity.	30	b. They were guarding the King.
31	c. they had had a big argument.	32	b. a metal table.
33	b. he wanted to become King legally.	34	c. He stabbed him in the shoulder.
35	b. in a room next to the castle moat	36	a. kill the King and hide the body.
37	a. He said that the Duke had a dangerous illness.	38	b. People would know that he had kidnapped the King.
39	b. make a move against Michael.	40	c. Max Holf
41	a. The King was ill and might die.	42	d. He listened from the moat.
43	c. He escaped.	44	c. the King
45	b. the King and Detchard.	46	c. Because the Duke cannot trust her.
47	a. what a real King should be.	48	b. Rupert
49	b. As Countess Amelia married one of the Elphbergs.	50	d. To work with Sir Jacob Borrodaile.
51	b. She loved him more than his brother.	52	c. In Europe in the 19 <sup>th</sup> century.
53	b. He didn't need to work.	54	a. To see the castle and meet the King.



هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمي وطلاب مصر

55	b. He would go to the Alps.	56	a. Because they were distant cousins.
57	c. Her family were less important than the Rassendylls.	58	b. Sapt and Fritz.
59	c. The King ate poisonous cakes.	60	b. She might recognize him.
61	b. On the same day but later.	62	c. The King was poisoned.
63	a. Not to eat too much.	64	d. To be crowned instead of him.
65	d. The mother of Johann.	66	b. They sent word to the palace.
67	b. So that Michael's men wouldn't catch them.	68	a. They had arrived at the station an hour earlier.
69	b. They locked her with the King.	70	b. He had always lived abroad.
71	d. a little different from the King's face.	72	d. To eat with him in the lodge.
73	c. Michael Elphberg	74	d. Two of the King's loyal men.
75	c. Rudolf Elphberg and the old woman.	76	c. say that Rassendyll was pretending to be the King.
77	c. The King's servant.	78	a. To wake him up.
79	c. The capital of Ruritania.	80	d. Sapt wanted Rassendyll to pretend to be the King.
81	d. The Colonel and the Marshal.	82	c. Sapt.
83	d. a personal servant of the King.	84	d. a place where the Duke had a castle.
85	c. a servant of the Duke.	86	b. To complete his game in Strelsau.
87	d. Sapt's position would be difficult if Rassendyll was killed.	88	b. Sapt copied the King's signature.
89	d. Very poor people.	90	a. really act like a King.
91	c. He didn't expect to see the King.	92	b. Through a secret panel in the wall.
93	a. Michael was controlling the city.	94	d. Josef was dead.
95	c. He insisted on entering the old part alone.	96	d. He had changed a lot.
97	d. He guarded the King's room.	98	d. The way to the castle.
99	c. The way to the lodge.	100	c. For the coronation day only.
101	a. Johann's brother.	102	d. Because the King had been kidnapped.
103	b. The music and the crown.	104	d. Johann's mother was freed.
105	d. The old woman had told Michael's men the truth.	106	d. Some of them looked at him angrily.
107	b. He became more serious.	108	d. Michael's soldiers.
109	a. The Castle of Zenda.	110	c. she thought he was the real King.
111	b. horses coming behind them.	112	a. Sapt and Rassendyll.
113	d. Josef	114	c. Rassendyll would stay King forever.
115	b. To bury Josef.	116	b. Three of them were foreigners and the other three were Ruritians.
117	b. The other three were guarding the King.	118	d. In order to benefit from her popularity.
119	c. He bought a flower from a girl.	120	b. He didn't permit Michael to enter the room.
121	c. He got Michael inside by himself.	122	b. Detchard smiled while they were talking.



123	d. He planned to make himself popular.	124	d. Because the King is royal and higher than him.
125	a. To see how the King was.	126	d. The foreigner Six Men.
127	b. The Marshal.	128	b. Running the country's affairs.
129	d. Rassendyll's pretending to forget rules.	130	a. To save the King.
131	c. Fifty thousand English pounds and safety.	132	c. To visit her in the summer house.
133	c. To protect Rassendyll from Michael's men.	134	d. She was surprised.
135	c. To guard Flavia.	136	d. To cover up his mistakes.
137	d. Madame de Mauban.	138	b. The Duke of Strelsau
139	c. He ordered guards to watch Flavia.	140	d. Antoinette and the Duke.
141	c. The King was kept in the castle.	142	c. He fought the men with an iron table.
143	d. So that Rassendyll would ask the Princess to marry him.	144	a. The Duke's plan to get rid of him.
145	a. He appeared and told Rassendyll that someone wanted to meet him.	146	c. To tell Flavia to marry him.
147	a. The game would be over.	148	b. To visit the summer house alone.
149	a. Rassendyll would stay there forever if he did.	150	b. His men would kill Rassendyll and throw his body in the old town.
151	c. To prevent Michael's men from meeting her.	152	d. Sapt prevented him.
153	c. Antoinette wanted Rassendyll to ask Sapt about her.	154	a. His life would be in danger if he didn't go to the summer house.
155	d. Michael, in order to make a trap for Rassendyll.	156	b. That he was not the real King.
157	d. When Rassendyll threatened to go back to England.	158	d. He stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder.
159	a. Rupert or Michael's permission.	160	a. To protect Flavia.
161	b. He was going to hunt the Duke.	162	d. the Duke had a dangerous illness.
163	b. An offer from the Duke.	164	d. His finger still hurt.
165	b. in Tarlenheim.	166	a. On top of a hill opposite to the Castle.
167	b. The Duke's plans.	168	a. He refused the offer.
169	a. the Princess	170	d. A relative of Fritz.
171	c. They would throw it into the moat.	172	b. His men would kill the King and throw his body down the pipe.
173	c. He was shot in the arm.	174	d. To be the ruler of the country.
175	b. People would not believe it was a real order from the King.	176	d. To find Johann.
177	b. in the forest.	178	a. So that the King's body would be thrown through it.
179	a. The people were worried about the King.	180	d. Three of Sapt's men and two of the Six Men.
181	d. Rupert	182	c. The Duke no longer trusted her.



183	a. It was war.	184	d. To have a look at the pipe and the prison.
185	a. He had sent them there and had not gone to take them.	186	d. The ambassador reported his disappearance.
187	c. Because the doctor would tell the people what the Duke had done.	188	c. So that Michael would go to her room and Sapt could catch him.
189	a. To protect them and their horses.	190	c. Rassendyll would be a King and reward Rupert.
191	b. It was filled with music.	192	c. She asked the Marshal to take her to see him.
193	a. Eleven	194	a. Fifty thousand pieces of gold.
195	d. Rudolf Rassendyll.	196	d. To give a letter to Antoinette and open the door.
197	b. As the police chief was in town.	198	d. So that people would think there was a ball.
199	b. To punish Antoinette.	200	d. She was attacked by Rupert.
201	d. Bersonin	202	d. Detchard and the doctor.
203	c. Rassendyll and the King.	204	a. Because he couldn't fight two men.
205	b. So that the servants wouldn't recognize the King.	206	d. By the drawbridge.
207	a. In order not to make noise.	208	c. The prisoner ran after Rupert in the forest.
209	a. The King rescued the prisoner and killed the Duke.	210	a. By the drawbridge gate.
211	c. A young boy	212	a. He was chained in a corner.
213	d. He pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body.	214	a. So that the Marshal wouldn't know the truth.
215	d. He found them in De Gautet's clothes.	216	c. He told the Princess that the King was behind the tree.
217	a. So that no one would recognize him.	218	d. About duties and responsibilities.
219	c. The doctor and Detchard.	220	b. Because he didn't tell her the truth.
221	c. To thank him for his help.	222	a. What a true King should be.
223	d. Antoinette cried for help.	224	d. Detchard broke free and killed him.
225	b. He swam after him.		

### Test yourself on Dialogues

#### 1. Finish the following dialogue:

1. What's the matter with you?
2. Do you have other complaints?
3. For a week.
4. I was busy at my work.
5. Is it serious?
6. you will have to take some rest and not go to work.



**2. Finish the following dialogue:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Could you help me (do me a favour)?            | 2. What kind of help do you need?             |
| 3. I want you to instruct me to drive well first. | 4. When will we be able to start?             |
| 5. How long will it take?                         | 6. Ok, I will hire a car for these two weeks. |
- .....

**3. Finish the following dialogue:**

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I really enjoyed it.             | 2. what do you think of our team's performance?               |
| 3. didn't we?                       | 4. our striker's level is no longer as good as it used to be. |
| 5. his performance doesn't improve. | 6. Will we watch it together?                                 |
- .....

**4. Finish the following dialogue:**

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I'd like to book a room.  | 2. For how long?              |
| 3. Single, please.           | 4. What about the view?       |
| 5. How much is it per night? | 6. How would you like to pay? |
- .....

**5. Finish the following dialogue:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. What are your qualifications?          | 2. What grade did you get?                              |
| 3. Why do you want to leave that company? | 4. the salary is not quite good.                        |
| 5. we sometimes ask for extra work.       | 6. We will contact you soon to let you know the result. |
- .....

**تمارين ترجمة من الإنجليزية الى العربية**

1. اختيارك للوظيفة المناسبة هام لأنك بحاجة الى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تؤديه بشكل جيد (بشكل سليم).
2. ينبغي أن يتسلح الأطفال بصفات حسنة حتى يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين لديهم روح الانتماء.
3. يقوم بعض الناس بأفعال غير شرعية ويلحقوا الضرر بالآخرين لكي يحققوا طموحاتهم وهذا غير عادل (غير نزيه).
4. من المعتقد أن العولمة تخدم الدول المتقدمة أكثر من الدول النامية.
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي هو العلم الذي يجعل الآلات تؤدي الأنشطة التي تحتاج الى ذكاء بشري.
6. ينبغي أن يشمل الطعام الصحي الفيتامينات والبروتينات كما يجب أن يكون طازج ويحتوي علي القليل من الدهون والملح ويجب أن لا يحتوي على أي إضافات كيميائية ضارة.
7. مسيرة الدول المتقدمة هدف تسعى مصر جاهدة الى تحقيقه.
8. تُعطى القروض للشباب لكي يستطيعوا بدء مشاريعهم الخاصة لحل مشكلة البطالة.
9. ان دفع الإرهاب خارج سيناء وإعادة اعمارها أولوية بالنسبة للحكومة.
10. يؤدي التفاؤل الى النجاح بينما التشاؤم ينتهي بالفشل لذا لا ينبغي أبدا أن تفقد الأمل.
11. الوحدة الوطنية بين المسلمين والأقباط في مصر شيء جلي (مميز) يجعل الحياة سلمية ومستقرة.
12. يتطلب الموقف الحرج في مصر أن يفضل كل المواطنين المصلحة العامة على الخاصة.
13. يقدم الانترنت للناس مدخل الى مصادر متنوعة للمعلومات والأخبار والدراسات.
14. الأجازات أشكال للترفيه تساعد الناس على الاسترخاء وتجديد طاقاتهم.
15. ينبغي تزويد المدارس المصرية بكل الوسائل الحديثة والتسهيلات حتى ينجح النظام التعليمي الجديد ويحصد ثماره.
16. التثخين عادة مميتة تنهى حياة آلاف الناس لذا يحذر الأطباء الناس منها.
17. استصلاح الصحراء أحد الوسائل لتوفير الإسكان والوظائف للخريجين.
18. المدرسون قدوة حسنة ومصادر الهام وتشجيع لطلابهم.
19. سيكون بنك المعرفة المصري واحد من أهم مصادر المعلومات في العالم.



## هدية (My new Friend) لجميع معلمى وطلاب مصر

20. ما يفشل معظم المعلمون في تدريسه داخل فصولهم يمكن بسهولة تعليمه في الملاعب.
21. ينبغي على الوالدين أن يجعلوا أبنائهم يستغلوا وقت فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة لا في القيام بأشياء تافهة.
22. تاريخ مصر الثقافي القوى هو الدرع الذى يحميها من أي غزو ثقافي أجنبي.
23. كل أمة لها ثقافتها وعاداتها وتقاليدها ونوع الموسيقى الخاصين بها.
24. مكافحة الإرهاب مسؤولية مشتركة بين الحكومة والأفراد.
25. لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن زراعة أعضاء الجسم تطورت بشكل كبير في السنوات الأخيرة.
26. يعاني الشباب من ظاهرة حديثة وهى التصاقهم بـ (ادمانهم لـ) هواتفهم الجواله طوال الوقت.
27. كلما زاد عدد العاطلين لدينا في المجتمع، كلما سيزيد عدد الجرائم التي سنضطر الى مواجهتها.
28. اذا دمرنا البيئة لن يتمكن أبنائنا من الاستمتاع بها فثرائنا قيم جدا.
29. ينبغي أن يكون المتقدمين للوظيفة طلقاء في الإنجليزية ومهرة في استخدام الحواسيب والانترنت.
30. من الضروري جذب (استقطاب / تشجيع) رجال الأعمال العرب والأجانب كي يستثمروا أموالهم داخل مصر.
31. الزلازل والبراكين والفيضانات ظواهر طبيعية لكنها جميعا شديدة الخطورة.
32. الحفاظ على الماء أمر ضرورى لأنه في المستقبل معظم حروب العالم ستكون حول الماء.
33. الصديق الحقيقي هو الذى يكون جدير بالثقة ومخلص ومتعاون وكتوم للأسرار.
34. التصنيع هو احد الأسباب الرئيسية لانتشار التلوث في كل مكان.
35. بفضل وسائل الاعلام ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نحن على علم (دراية) بكل الأحداث الهامة التي تحدث في كل مكان عبر العالم.
36. تخريب الممتلكات العامة لا يحل المشكلات انما يجعلها أسوأ.
37. ينبغي أن يتلقى ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة معاملة جيدة حتى يتمكنوا من الاندماج في المجتمع بشكل أكبر.
38. بجانب آثارها المثيرة للإعجاب والرائعة تكتلك مصر طقس رائع في الشتاء.
39. تناول الوجبات السريعة ضار بالصحة لذا يوصى الخبراء في كل مكان بتناول المنتجات العضوية.
40. حوادث الطرق شائعة في المدن الكبرى وهذا لا يعنى أن المشاة والسائقين يمكن اعفائهم من اللوم.

### تمارين ترجمة من العربية الى الإنجليزية

1. Social networking sites often cause the spread of rumours and the creation of chaos in society.
2. The national projects carried out in Egypt currently aim at pushing the wheel of production and reducing the volume of importation from abroad.
3. Giving help to others and sharing their happiness and sadness are of the most sublime qualities that every individual in our society should be marked with.
4. Young people practise different sports and games because they help build up the body and the personality and keep physical fitness.
5. Trees are very important in our life because they give us shade, protect us from rain and help purify the air we breathe.
6. Money can't buy a lot of abstract things like happiness, love, peace of mind, quietness and psychological peace.
7. Civilized peoples can reach with their behaviours and morals for achieving promotion, renaissance, prosperity and progress in all fields.
8. Practising sports helps reinforce values necessary for society like cooperation, honesty, honest competition and teamwork.
9. The biggest problem that faces freelance workers is that they don't get regular work.
10. Youth should listen to the advice of elderly people who have a lot of experience in life.
11. Terrorism has no religion as it kills any human and destroys and burns societies with no distinction so it must be fought everywhere.
12. Mass media play a big role in forming public opinion so they should present meaningful and useful programmes which develop (enhance) the sense of citizenship.



13. The giant national projects like the Suez Canal and the New Administrative Capital will contribute to making the future of Egyptians better.
14. The state should spend more money on developing education and applying the most modern educational theories to cope with world progress.
15. Success in life depends mainly on patience, hard work, self-confidence, and constant pursuit after achieving goals.
16. Graduates need to develop their skills all the time through study and training to remain employable.
17. My brother is a tennis enthusiast as he either practices it or watches it on TV all the time.
18. Illegal immigration is a very dangerous thing which leads to the death of youth and the destruction of their dreams and their families' hopes in them.
19. It is expected that the Egyptian economy will witness a great improvement in the future and that the value of the Pound will rise compared to other currencies.
20. Floods occur in different parts of the world for various reasons and force thousands of people to leave their homes.
21. The state should issue strict laws to cut out terrorism and extremism and violation of others' freedom.
22. Several world countries suffer from the problem of refugees whom conditions of wars and regional (local) conflicts force to leave their homelands.
23. Life is a mixture of hope and despair, success and failure, correctness and incorrectness and happiness and sadness so it is necessary for people to get on with all these.
24. The dialogue between cultures helps unite viewpoints and prevent the clash of civilizations and thus stop wars and bloodshed.
25. In order to face the problem of rising prices and the greed of merchants, the government launches campaigns to arrest (catch) the violators.
26. Charitable voluntary work helps to create a kind of solidarity and interdependence among all categories of society and leads to its coherence.
27. Every year thousands of young people from different nationalities visit Egypt to participate in the events of World Youth Conference.
28. Rebuilding the Egyptian citizen who is able to face challenges is one of the priorities that the state is giving care to at the current time.
29. We should increase the volume of spending on scientific research to help turn the ideas and energies of the creators into facts and projects.
30. Creative people can introduce (come up with) new ideas which help reach more innovations, inventions and discoveries.
31. The possible climate change and global warming are disastrous dangers which require urgent solutions on the international level.
32. Freedom of opinion is guaranteed for all people on condition that they respect the rights of others and do their duties towards their homeland (motherland).
33. Egypt has a combination of impressive old and modern engineering works which make it unique and distinctive.



34. Universities must link the number of graduates to the requirements of the work market so that the number of the unemployed won't increase.
35. It is our duty not to spoil the Nile water or pollute the environment so that we can keep resources for the coming generations.
36. The situation was so complicated that we asked for the aiding of our friends to help us find an exit (a solution) for the crisis.
37. With the presence of distance learning and its availability on the internet, man can continue to learn until death.
38. Wasting time doing useless activities can't help Egypt's youth make self-development or national renaissance.
39. People should deal very carefully with technology because it is a double-edged weapon.
40. Investing human power and developing it is the gate to any progress because humans make civilization.

أسئلة اختيار من متعدد هامة على منهج المختارات الإسلامية

1	<b>c. To guide Omar to Islam.</b>	2	<b>d. His sister Fatima adopted Islam.</b>
3	<b>b. his sister and her husband embraced it.</b>	4	<b>c. When Omar washed and purified.</b>
5	<b>d. To announce that he adopted Islam.</b>	6	<b>a. he faced his sister's courage.</b>
7	<b>d. Polytheism and disbelief.</b>	8	<b>a. guidance and illumination</b>
9	<b>c. Mother of the believers.</b>	10	<b>d. a large trade with Syria.</b>
11	<b>c. He managed her trade honestly.</b>	12	<b>a. In the Cave of Hira.</b>
13	<b>d. monotheism</b>	14	<b>c. Thinking and contemplating.</b>
15	<b>c. He said Muhammad would be a Prophet.</b>	16	<b>c. She will have a splendid home in Paradise</b>
17	<b>d. his father was a wealthy man.</b>	18	<b>a. At the Battle of Uhud.</b>
19	<b>b. He was stationed behind them.</b>	20	<b>b. Faith would soon fill his heart.</b>
21	<b>d. The skill of Khalid Ibnul-Waleed.</b>	22	<b>a. The deep faith of the fighters.</b>
23	<b>c. The Battle of Badr.</b>	24	<b>d. To leave Mecca.</b>
25	<b>d. Abu Sufian</b>	26	<b>b. To make up for their lost properties.</b>
27	<b>d. By following a different route.</b>	28	<b>b. Faith can work wonders.</b>
29	<b>a. Steadfastness and fearlessness.</b>	30	<b>b. With Allah's aid and support.</b>
31	<b>d. To hand him the sheet she had been reading.</b>	32	<b>c. he was honest.</b>

امتحان ثانوية الأزهرية (للقسم العلمي)

A

Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (10 Marks)

1	<b>c. soak</b>	2	<b>a. had always walked</b>
3	<b>c. has just gone</b>	4	<b>b. strict</b>



5	b. will have finished	6	a. average
7	b. where	8	c. vain
9	c. neither is	10	a. such
11	a. suitable	12	b. sociable
13	b. get	14	b. cons
15	b. had played	16	b. conscientious
17	c. what she would do	18	b. depends
19	a. reading	20	b. was

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (8 Marks)

- They said that it was not very different from the first Europeans who went to America, or people who have left their countries because of war or disease.
- I think that life there will be too busy for most people. I think only a few brave scientists will live on Mars in the future.
- 200,000
- I would be frightened and very sad because I would not see my friends and family again.

5	a- They want to see if they can survive there.	6	b- Life on Mars will be very difficult.
7	b- a place where a group of people live	8	a- an offer to go to Mars

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

1	c. Michael always made him angry.	2	b. bring Johann to Tarlenheim.
3	d. he didn't do any useful work.		

### B. Answer the following questions: (4 Marks)

- To protect him from Michael's men.
- Because if Rassendyll had been killed in the old part, Sapt's position would be difficult.
- They wanted things to change and the Duke gave them hope for a better future.
- Killing the King, the Duke, Sapt and Fritz. Then Rassendyll would remain King and reward Rupert.

## C Writing

### Finish the following dialogue. (4 Marks)

- How about learning the drums?
- Personally, I'd prefer to learn the piano.
- I'd go along with that.
- I don't think it's necessary to have lessons every day.

Translate into Arabic.

1. ينبغي أن نكرم العلماء والمفكرين العظماء خاصة أولئك الذين قاموا بنشر أعمال متميزة.
2. الناس المهممين برحلات الفضاء قلقين من الآثار الجانبية الفظيعة.



## Translate into English.

1. Technology is a double-edged weapon so it must be used wisely.
2. Astronauts can do weightless sports during their mission on planets.

## امتحان ثانوية أزهريّة (للقسم الأدبي)

## A

## Vocabulary and Structure

## 1

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (25 Marks)

1	c. defeated	2	d. not to touch
3	c. to say	4	c. hadn't eaten
5	b. needn't	6	c. would see
7	a. condition	8	a. transformed
9	c. neither	10	a. too dirty
11	c. positioned	12	d. commuters
13	a. might have	14	d. tunnel
15	a. worthwhile	16	b. department
17	b. got	18	a. about
19	d. had been broken	20	d. off
21	b. impressive	22	b. half a
23	a. whose	24	a. discipline
25	b. is going to be		

## B

## Reading Comprehension

## 2

## Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1. They were first used in China in the seventh century.
2. There was a hole in the coins so that people could carry them on pieces of material.
3. I think that people will continue to use paper bank notes, but we have a lot of new technology now so I think that people will also pay with direct online payments more often in future.
4. Yes, because plastic notes are stronger, harder to copy and last longer than paper notes.
5. Because the coins were too heavy to carry.

6	a. The King needed money to fight a war.
7	c. There was not any technology to print them before this time.
8	c. The history of paper bank notes.
9	d. the banks
10	c. someone who carries something

## C

## Islamic Selections

## 3

## A. Choose the correct answer. (5 Marks)

1. b. The Sword of Allah.
2. b. He sought to kill the Prophet.
3. c. She admitted embracing Islam.
4. d. The battle of Badr.
5. d. Khalid would be filled with faith soon.



**B. Answer the following questions: (5 Marks)**

1. He was The Second Caliph.  
He was the founder of the greatest state in history.  
He was the builder of the greatest civilization Humanity had ever known.  
He had great values, virtues, concepts, criteria, pure Islam and deep Faith.  
He had peerless Piousness and Righteousness.
2. He was positioned behind them and attacked them from behind.
3. They were aware of the principles of Islam and the concepts of Faith.
4. Because the unbelievers hurt them severely because of their faith.
5. She was the first person to believe in Allah's seal prophet and Islam.

**D Writing**

**4 Finish the following dialogue: (4 Marks)**

1. Is that correct?
2. What are the advantages to that?
3. What is the downside to that?
4. I'd go along with that.

**5 Write an e-mail to a friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (5 Marks)**

Students' own answers

**6 A. Translate into Arabic. (4 Marks)**

1. مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي سلاح ذو حدين لذا ينبغي أن نستخدمها بحكمة.
2. لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دور حيوي في مشروعات التنمية.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

1. Flyovers help to solve the problem of traffic in big cities.
2. We know that plants and trees get their food from the air and the soil.

**General Exam (1)**

**A Vocabulary and Structure**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

1	<b>b. break</b>	2	<b>d. played</b>
3	<b>c. about</b>	4	<b>a. I had come</b>
5	<b>c. up for</b>	6	<b>c. taking</b>
7	<b>d. that</b>	8	<b>a. needn't</b>
9	<b>b. cheaper</b>	10	<b>a. to revise</b>
11	<b>b. availability</b>	12	<b>a. must have taken</b>
13	<b>a. spoilt</b>	14	<b>b. said</b>
15	<b>a. challenging</b>	16	<b>b. was having</b>
17	<b>d. astronaut</b>	18	<b>b. Were</b>
19	<b>b. uninfected</b>	20	<b>a. was been repaired</b>
21	<b>c. conscientious</b>	22	<b>b. do</b>
23	<b>c. graduated</b>	24	<b>b. is served</b>
25	<b>b. defeatist</b>	26	<b>c. so</b>



27	c. away	28	c. Every
29	b. chasers	30	d. you met

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	c. Students purchase them.	2	d. be more organised
3	c. University students are responsible more for their learning.	4	c. That students cooperate more.
5	a. nearly	6	c. students

7. Classes that include more than five hundred students and other smaller classes where students can discuss the subjects they find difficult.
8. School and university.
9. So that students can discuss the subjects they find difficult and lecturers can spend time with individual students, talking about the work they have done or the work that they are expected to do.
10. University life because it requires that students do much self study and manage their time themselves.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	d. an hour before the appointed time.	2	b. Rassendyll
3	d. To warn her against Michael.	4	a. Rupert stabbed him.

### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. No, I don't think so because he knew if he had done so, Rassendyll would have stayed King.
2. So that he would be near to the castle to make a plan to save the King. The house also belonged to a relative of Fritz and it was easy to get his permission to stay in it.
3. I think he did so to make create a reason for attacking and killing Michael.

## C Writing

### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

1. Can I help you?
2. I'd like to buy a Galaxy phone.
3. Galaxy is not available now.
4. Do you have any other good mobiles?
5. Could you show me some of them?
6. What kind is this black one?

### 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

### 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. يلعب العلماء دور حيوى في الحياة الحديثة فهم يساعدون على جعلها أسهل وأكثر راحة للناس جميعا.
2. المشروعات القومية التي تنفذ في كل أنحاء مصر تبين أن الدولة لا تدخر وسعا في حل المشكلات التي تواجه المواطن المصرى

### B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. Astronauts and space tourists can do weightless sports through zero-gravity.
2. Egypt's hosting great sports championships like the African Nations Cup confirms its greatness and important position among countries.



## General Exam (2)

## A Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	b. minute	2	d. didn't sit
3	c. going	4	d. unless
5	c. limit	6	b. had to
7	a. aged	8	d. had revised
9	d. made	10	c. to help
11	d. broke	12	d. get our car repaired
13	c. off	14	a. I would go
15	c. off	16	b. worked
17	b. reach	18	b. not to drive
19	d. enthusiast	20	a. be taken
21	a. insistent	22	b. leaves
23	b. charge	24	b. such
25	d. side effects	26	a. every
27	b. graded	28	a. was looking
29	b. various	30	a. at which

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	c. tense up	2	b. He can't relax.
3	a. Help him to control stress.	4	c. chest
5	a. nervousness	6	d. happening regularly

7. It prevents us from relaxing. It makes our hearts beat much faster. This has consequences on our work, on our relationship, and even on our sleeping habits.
8. Your muscles tense up and your breathing gets shallow.
9. A nervous person has a harder time falling asleep or with staying asleep.
10. By working on their levels of stress to reduce them.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

## 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	b. He was keeping the King a prisoner.	2	d. agreed to become Queen.
3	c. was not seriously hurt	4	b. a stalemate.

## B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

- Yes, I would because the King was in a critical situation. He needed help.
- Yes, I would because it was war.
- He did his job very well as he ran the country well, saved the King and no one recognized him.



## C Writing

## 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

1. I think it is very useful.
2. Because it is based on technology.
3. The system will guarantee fairness.
4. The tablet system will be responsible for giving the marks.
5. will be corrected by more than one teacher.
6. Through the EKB.

## 5 Write an e-mail to a friend of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

## 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. عبر التاريخ قدم الكثير من المصريين خدمات جليلة للبشرية في مختلف المجالات.
2. ينبغي أن يحصل كل فرد على تعليم جيد بغض النظر عن جنسه أو لونه أو دينه.

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. A big fire broke out in Cairo train station and resulted in the death of tens of victims because of a big negligence which required a change in the transportation system.
2. Establishing the project of the new administrative capital is considered to be an important step towards relieving pressure on Cairo and solving the problems of congestion and traffic disruption.

## General Exam (3)

## A Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	c. <b>puzzling</b>	2	a. <b>will be travelling</b>
3	d. <b>out</b>	4	b. <b>Had</b>
5	c. <b>eclipse</b>	6	a. <b>knew</b>
7	c. <b>sandstorm</b>	8	b. <b>left</b>
9	c. <b>down</b>	10	b. <b>might</b>
11	a. <b>thunder</b>	12	a. <b>have to</b>
13	b. <b>natural</b>	14	a. <b>will be</b>
15	b. <b>for</b>	16	c. <b>to tell</b>
17	b. <b>Whatever</b>	18	c. <b>we draw</b>
19	b. <b>is still thought</b>	20	c. <b>asked</b>
21	c. <b>download</b>	22	a. <b>if</b>
23	a. <b>Disabled</b>	24	c. <b>was reading</b>
25	b. <b>associations</b>	26	c. <b>have</b>
27	b. <b>suitable</b>	28	c. <b>Neither of</b>
29	c. <b>treatment</b>	30	c. <b>Have you ever</b>



## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	c. The tiger attacked three women.	2	d. the tiger could not hunt the deer.
3	d. amazed	4	b. spread everywhere
5	c. escape the traps	6	a. Near the lake

7. Deer.

8. She resisted the tiger.

9. The tiger was clever and never went to the place it used to hunt in again.

10. A buffalo killed it in a fight.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	c. Bersonin and Detchard	2	b. a good fighter but a bad character.
3	d. his father's favourite son.	4	a. he would be rewarded

### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

- Yes, I think so because no one recognized him.
- Because the Marshal knew Michael's ambitions.
- Yes, because she was about to take revenge on Rupert but he escaped.

## C Writing

### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

- Where have you been?      2. I have been to Paris.      3. Why did you go there?
- Who did you travel with?      5. How did you spend your time there?      6. I could visit it one day.

### 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

### 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

- يبذل العلماء والباحثون جهود عظيمة طوال الوقت لمحاربة الأمراض المزمنة والمميتة.
- من الضروري أن نربي جيل قوى يكون على دراية بمشكلات مجتمعه ويستطيع ابتكار حلول لها.

### B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

- Those who have perseverance, challenge, quick thinking, ambition, risk and initiative can succeed in life.
- Corruption is a pest which attacks the society and hinders its progress and growth so it must be fought in all governmental and non-governmental establishments.

## General Exam (4)

### A Vocabulary and Structure

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	a. fluent	2	b. to work
3	a. inaccurate	4	d. whose



5	c. invisible	6	a. will have graduated
7	b. entertainment	8	a. checked
9	b. irresponsible	10	b. so quickly
11	b. commuters	12	d. was known
13	b. corresponded	14	d. Both of
15	b. stinging	16	d. is going to be
17	c. gives	18	c. was having
19	b. done	20	a. clever enough
21	d. breaks	22	c. provided that
23	a. away	24	a. were
25	b. comparable	26	b. where
27	b. district	28	b. fall
29	a. deadline	30	b. left

### B Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	d. Air pollution	2	b. animals to survive
3	b. Modernization and development	4	b. Noise pollution
5	b. the death of aquatic creatures	6	a. serious

7. I should hire an expert to see my options.  
 8. Pollution disturbs our ecosystem and the balance in the environment.  
 9. Excessive burning of fuel releases a huge amount of chemical substances in the air everyday.  
 10. Air, water, soil, radioactive, noise, heat and light pollution.

### The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	c. The King of Ruritania.	2	d. was rescuing the prisoner.
3	b. they looked alike.	4	a. some poisonous cakes.

B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. It was a wrong view because he preferred eating to action and thought that good food was more important than sleep.  
 2. No, I think he sent him those offers just to deceive and kill him.  
 3. No, it wasn't because he should have stayed with the injured King. He himself was injured too.  
 Yes, because he should have avenged Rupert. ينتقم من روبرت

### C Writing

4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

1. Why are you late? 2. had an accident.  
 3. Was anybody hurt? 4. the bus broke down.  
 5. you can enter now. 6. Have I missed something important?

5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers



6

**A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

1. يجب أن يكون هناك دعاية لأثارنا في كل الدول حتى نستطيع أن نجذب السياح.
2. ينبغي على المصريين شراء المنتجات المحلية الصنع لكي نقلل الواردات ونرفع مستوى المعيشة.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

1. The individual should achieve some kind of balance between work life and family life so that love and affability spread inside the house.
2. Egypt has proved to the whole world that it is a country which loves peace that is based on justice and mutual respect.

**General Exam (5)**

A

**Vocabulary and Structure**

1

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

1	d. depressed	2	d. Without
3	b. over	4	c. have my hair cut
5	d. do	6	b. is revising
7	d. off	8	c. Are you doing
9	d. out	10	a. such a good
11	b. rising	12	b. are
13	c. bark	14	b. to buy
15	c. out	16	a. driving
17	a. including	18	b. mustn't
19	d. widen	20	d. made
21	a. influential	22	a. needn't have bought
23	a. discipline	24	a. suggested
25	a. belief	26	a. should
27	a. worthwhile	28	c. was destroyed
29	d. carving	30	d. could be

B

**Reading Comprehension**

2

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)**

1	b. Understanding	2	b. likes and dislikes
3	d. To spend more time together.	4	b. mental and physical health
5	b. fights	6	c. reasonable

7. Married women are in better physical and mental health, and are happier than single women.
8. They are more exposed to stresses at work, and have worse health, and die earlier than women.
9. It relieves the effects of stress, and leads to better mental and physical health.
10. Through calling each other by names and spending more time together.



## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

## 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	c. miracle	2	b. appearance
3	d. the woods	4	b. take the job.

## B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. It made him not sign any documents so he was not discovered.
2. He left everything for his assistants. He didn't give care for the poor. He neglected his duties and preferred only hunting and good food.
3. Because when Rassendyll killed him, he found the keys of the prison in his pockets.

## C Writing

## 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

1. What should I do?
2. You should do a course.
3. online / by enrolling on a course in a language centre.
4. I prefer attending a course in a centre.
5. Because there will be more direct contact chances.
6. What language centre do you recommend?

## 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

## 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. تقوم الدولة بعمل خطط عاجلة من حين لآخر لكي تخرج من الأزمات الراهنة التي تواجهها.
2. تصفح الانترنت يشبع رغبة الانسان في امتلاك معلومات حديثة عن ما يجري في كل أنحاء العالم.

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. The good citizen is the one who is ready to sacrifice his time and himself to serve his homeland whenever it needs him.
2. Egypt has made strenuous efforts to solve the crisis with the Nile Basin countries and the attempt to take Egypt's right to get its share according to previous conventions.

## General Exam (6)

## A Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	c. place	2	b. as long as
3	c. with	4	b. could be
5	b. historical	6	a. Had it not rained
7	c. in diameter	8	a. working
9	a. north	10	b. if I had
11	b. in	12	b. old enough
13	a. qualified	14	b. each
15	a. position	16	a. had
17	b. attachments	18	a. which I bought



19	a. ministry	20	d. had left
21	b. gadgets	22	a. haven't received
23	d. confused	24	b. are playing
25	a. respected	26	b. We all
27	b. moving	28	d. are given
29	b. Fireworks	30	a. On

## B Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	d. she kept herself away from them	2	c. serious
3	a. the necklace	4	c. wealth
5	c. He visited his aunt more.	6	a. Margret's debts

- Margret left the whole fortune to her two dogs.
- A servant.
- She never went out of her fine house.
- They were greedy people because they were interested only in money.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

### 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	d. a fictional country.	2	a. very angry
3	c. it was obligatory to do that.	4	d. spying for Rassendyll.

### B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

- Because he cared for the poor and promised them to change their conditions. He also lived in Ruritania with them.
- Because she was his guest and it was bad for his reputation if she was punished by one his men.
- I think he didn't. He just pretended it to gain their support.

## C Writing

### 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

- I'd like to have fish.
- Grilled.
- What would you like to have with the fish?
- What about the drink?
- What do you have for dessert?
- Which of them do you prefer?

### 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

### 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

- ينبغي أن نحسن استغلال مواردنا الطبيعية والبشرية لكي نحقق إنجازات عظيمة.
- تقوم صناعة السياحة بتوظيف عدد كبير من المصريين كوكلاء سفریات ومرشدين سياحيين وعاملين في فنادق.

### B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

- A lot of young people are training nowadays to acquire the skills of dealing with the internet and its different programs so that they will become employable.



2. The state gives due care to the child and his health and education because he represents the hope, future and the human investment of the nation.

## General Exam (7)

A

## Vocabulary and Structure

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	c. clearing up	2	b. Were
3	d. marks	4	a. didn't have
5	a. freelance	6	c. get
7	b. fashionable	8	a. must
9	c. leak	10	c. needn't have bought
11	a. directors	12	d. talking
13	a. vary	14	b. hurrying
15	b. installing	16	b. not to
17	d. through	18	b. he had been
19	c. in	20	c. wouldn't attend
21	a. promotion	22	b. had it cut
23	b. throughout	24	a. be cancelled
25	c. improve	26	d. got lost
27	c. confusing	28	c. too
29	a. stung	30	c. both didn't speak

B

## Reading Comprehension

2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	b. varies between people	2	b. status
3	a. miser	4	c. money
5	d. protection	6	c. the value of money

7. This brings him happiness.  
 8. As a main source for security.  
 9. In a legal way.  
 10. They should be moderate in spending money. They shouldn't be stingy or wasteful.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

3

a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	c. make Rassendyll replace the King	2	d. the Duke
3	b. the King was kidnapped.	4	b. living in the castle.

B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. I think he wouldn't because he was greedy and evil.  
 2. I think he was worried that the King would die before he killed Rassendyll.  
 3. Because three of their men had been killed in the fight in the woods.



## C Writing

## 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

1. invite you to my birthday party.
2. When will it be?
3. Will you be able to come? (Are you free?)
4. Have you invited all our friends?
5. I want you to come earlier to help me in preparing things.
6. Could you bring your camera with you?

## 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

## 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. يؤدي تدمير الغابات الى انقراض العديد من الحيوانات والنباتات النادرة لذا من الضروري التوقف عنه.
2. الوالدين ميثولين عن غرس القيم والأخلاق في نفوس أبنائهم حتى يصبحوا مواطنين صالحين عندما يكبرون.

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. Teaching is one of the most important professions in society so the state appreciates the role of the teacher well and tries hard to raise his income and develop his abilities.
2. "Leave it to rust" campaign has succeeded in forcing agents and traders of cars to reduce their prices and make them available for all.

## General Exam (8)

## A Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	c. role	2	a. both
3	b. meet	4	a. had we heard
5	b. drought	6	d. have had
7	b. blows	8	c. will be doing
9	a. occur	10	a. will have been used
11	a. do	12	d. whom I go
13	c. Turpentine	14	b. made
15	a. remove	16	a. either
17	d. making	18	c. wouldn't you
19	d. layer	20	c. such
21	a. separate	22	c. to sleep
23	a. in a fatherly way	24	c. learned
25	c. emergency	26	a. been translated
27	a. up	28	c. had her bad tooth pulled
29	b. profession	30	b. that day was



## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	c. mostly	2	d. make their own food.
3	b. requirements	4	b. Oxygen
5	d. nearly	6	a. Photosynthesis

- It made improvements in agricultural yield and limited severe famines.
- When energy from light is absorbed by proteins called photosynthetic reaction centers that contain chlorophylls.
- Oxygen, energy and carbon.
- Approximately 100 terawatts which is about six times larger than the power consumption of human civilization.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

## 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	b. make the Princess Queen.	2	c. the mansion
3	b. She would pretend to be ill.	4	b. an hour earlier than expected.

## B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

- The King was desperate and hopeless and wanted to die.
- No, because this was illegal.
- He was very worried when he didn't find the King in the cellar. He planned to save his throne.

## C Writing

## 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

- It is about a poet (poetess).
- What does the book say about her?
- What style did she write in?
- Because she broke all poetry rules of rhythm.
- What was her most famous poem?
- It conveys an important message about helping people.

## 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

## 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

- علينا أن نزود السياح بكل الخدمات والتسهيلات حتى يرغبوا في زيارة مصر مرة أخرى.
- الاستقرار الاقتصادي والاجتماعي لا يمكن أن يتحقق بدون التعاون بين الحكومة والأفراد.

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

- We should reduce the amount of environmental pollution because it represents a big danger to the life of humans, plants and animals.
- Unemployment is a dangerous problem which needs coordination and cooperation between the public and the private sectors to overcome it and provide work opportunities for graduates.



## General Exam (9)

## A Vocabulary and Structure

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)

1	d. pressure	2	c. whether
3	b. employable	4	d. why he came
5	b. depression	6	b. advised
7	a. Distance	8	a. not to make
9	d. months'	10	c. being given
11	d. enrolled	12	c. to give
13	a. style	14	b. had to
15	a. strict	16	a. must
17	a. enthusiastic	18	c. should have
19	a. positively	20	b. call
21	b. weightless	22	c. had been
23	d. consulting	24	b. could live
25	d. depends	26	b. unless
27	a. concern	28	a. In case of
29	c. fired	30	d. have been delivered

## B Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	b. The situation and their feelings	2	c. attractions
3	a. Journalism	4	a. they are biologically prepared to do that
5	a. to do work in the home	6	d. Problems

7. They are different in the way they solve problems.

8. Because men are attracted to risky jobs than women.

9. Because men's and women's brains work completely differently and because of their biological differences.

10. By thinking about them silently.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

## 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	b. He became responsible.	2	b. She helped him.
3	c. Rudolf	4	d. end the game he was playing

## B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. No, because the similarity between him and the King would create problems.

2. Because Johann was weak and had a lot of information about Michael. He was also reachable.

3. No, because that meant the King would die and he himself would be either dead or imprisoned.



**C Writing**

**4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)**

1. Congratulations.
2. I'm over the moon (سعيد جدا).
3. Were you sure of winning?
4. What do you say to your team players?
5. Whom do you present the winning for?
6. Thank you for your time.

**5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)**

Students' own answers

**6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)**

1. السلام يعطى الأمم فرص ذهبية لتطوير وتشبيد المشروعات بينما الحروب تجعل ذلك صعبا.
2. التخلص من القمامة قضية خطيرة يحاول العلماء إيجاد حلول لها طوال الوقت.

**B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)**

1. Overpopulation create other problems like unemployment, illiteracy and food shortage so all citizens should adopt the policy of birth control.
2. The human should not stop learning until death and there are programs that make it possible for him to learn different skills throughout his life and at any age.

**General Exam (10)**

**A Vocabulary and Structure**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (15 Marks)**

1	a. geyser	2	c. would stop
3	a. correspondent	4	a. in case of
5	d. roots	6	c. have to
7	b. illuminated	8	c. might not
9	b. undefeated	10	a. whether
11	d. variety	12	c. to do
13	a. landmark	14	c. had
15	c. employment	16	a. get
17	b. redundant	18	c. had been prepared
19	c. spend	20	c. you read
21	d. sociable	22	d. such a difficult test
23	d. gain	24	d. neither
25	d. controls	26	d. in which
27	a. repairing	28	a. mustn't
29	d. ashore	30	b. melts



## B

## Reading Comprehension

## 2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10 Marks)

1	d. insecure	2	a. humanitarian
3	b. satire	4	c. When his father came into inheritance.
5	d. To make contrast.	6	b. deprived

7. Because an idealized character does not have any room to grow throughout the course of the book.

8. He had been imprisoned for debt.

9. This experience deeply shamed and frightened the young boy.

10. With understanding and compassion.

## The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

## 3 a. Choose the correct answer: (4 Marks)

1	b. Antoinette called for help.	2	a. his brother didn't kill him.
3	b. she knew Michael was evil.	4	a. he didn't trust Antoinette.

## B. Answer TWO (2) of the following questions: (3 Marks)

1. Yes, because he pretended to care for them and their future while the King neglected them.
2. She was a practical and persuasive woman. She wanted Rassendyll to do something useful.
3. Because he might have discovered Rassendyll's game.

## C

## Writing

## 4 Finish the following dialogue: (6 Marks)

1. I'd like to buy a car.
2. What make (kind) do you want?
3. What do you recommend?
4. Why?
5. What else? / What other merits does it have?
6. Can you make a discount, please?

## 5 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (120) words on ONE (1) of the following: (7 Marks)

Students' own answers

## 6 A. Translate into Arabic: (3 Marks)

1. يحرص المصريون في السنوات الأخيرة على استرداد أمجادهم كي يسايروا التقدم في الدول المتقدمة.
2. الناس الذين ليس لديهم أهداف نادرا ما ينجحون لأنهم ينقصهم التخطيط والإصرار (التصميم / العزيمة).

## B. Translate ONE (1) sentence only in English: (2 Marks)

1. A lot of those who oppose globalization fear that it may have a negative effect on national identity, culture and social values.
2. Space tourism will develop greatly in the near future and it is expected that people will be queuing to book space holidays.